



The Journal of Humanities and Linguistics:

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum



Vol. 2, No. 2
Specialis Editio
2025

ISSN: 3030-1718



Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum

Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy

E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

Vol. 2 No. 2 (2025): Specialis Editio 2025

ISSN 3030-1718

The *Journal of Humanities and Linguistics: Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum* is a peer-reviewed, international academic journal registered in Lithuania. It is dedicated to fostering innovative research and interdisciplinary dialogue across the humanities. The journal publishes high-quality articles in the fields of linguistics, literature, philosophy, history, cultural studies, social sciences, and ethics.

Frequency: 4 issues per year

Format: A4

Languages: Submissions are accepted in English and other major academic languages.

Registration: The journal is officially registered and published in Lithuania.

All submissions undergo a rigorous peer-review process to ensure the highest academic standards.

Open Access: All articles are freely available online to promote the global exchange of knowledge.

The editorial board does not take responsibility for the content of the materials published in the journal. By submitting an article, authors confirm the originality of their work and assume full responsibility for any copyright issues.

For further details and submissions, visit <https://egarp.lt/index.php/aghel/index>.

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum

Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy

Executive Secretary: Gerda Urbaite

Salomėjos Neries g. 57, Vilnius, Lithuania

E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

Contents

Contents	3
Explaining the Digital Health Marketing Model in Gaining Health Welfare Support from Nonprofits	4
Decoding Gobekli-tepe: Insights into Prehistoric Rituals and Society	29
Literary-Critical View of the Prominent Azerbaijani Scholar M.F. Akhundzada: the First Systematic Examples of Literary Theory.....	38
The Role of The Teacher in Language Learning and Teaching in the Modern Era	43
The Role of Using Authentic Videos on Learners' Pronunciation	49
Ibn Al-Shjari's Rhetorical Critique in Al-Amali: Uncovering Neglected Dimensions of Al-Mutanabbi's Poetic Syntax.....	58
Review And Status of the Maritime Silk Road; Cultural and Civilizational Opportunities.....	67
The Characteristics of Monarchy as a Form of Government.....	87
Managing and Controlling Innovation in the 21st Century Using Artificial Intelligence.....	97
The Effects of Artificial Intelligence Applications in Natural Resource Management.....	118
The Use of Artificial Intelligence in Judicial Proceedings, the Challenge of Transparency and its Solutions	127
Review and Importance, an Introduction to the Challenges of Artificial Intelligence in the Field of Civil Liability	144
Negotiating Mental Health and Colonial Power: Land, Resistance, and Infrastructure in Gold Coast, 1919–1957..	157
Strategic Advancements in Human Resource Management: Optimizing Workforce Excellence	165
The Impact of Gestures and Facial Expressions in Language Acquisition	174
Specific Aspects of the Motif of Immortality in Literature	186
Studying the Effect of Job Satisfaction on Increasing Employee Productivity	194
Study and Role of The Impact of Information Technology Tools on Knowledge Management Performance in Commercial Banks	209
Strategic Management of E-Commerce.....	221
The Presumption of Innocence in the Context of International Legal Instruments on Human Rights	230
The Impact of Integrating Rhyming Poetry into Vocabulary Instruction Among Primary School Pupils in Ido Local Government, Nigeria.	236
The Language That Rules the World: What's Behind English's Global Power?	246
Translating Idioms and Slang: Problems, Strategies, and Cultural Implications	255
Editorial Team	265

Explaining the Digital Health Marketing Model in Gaining Health Welfare Support from Nonprofits

 Asst. Prof. Dr. Mohammad Ekram Yawar  Mohammad Qurban Hakimi
<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.02500201>

Keywords	Abstract
Digital Health Marketing Charity Advocacy Nonprofit Organizations	<p>Background and Objective: By using digital health marketing as a means of connecting donors and beneficiaries, non-profit organizations can drive their marketing activities to reach more donors and donors and fulfill the benevolent intentions of donors to help people in need. Therefore, the main objective of this study is to present a digital health marketing model for obtaining donor support from non-profit organizations.</p> <p>Method: This study was conducted using a qualitative grounded theory method. For this purpose, experts related to health marketing, including ¹marketing ethics teachers, experts, benefactors, and public participation from a non-profit organization, were used, and the sampling method was purposive, snowball, and purposive until saturation. Data analysis was performed using the Strauss & Corbin (1998) method.</p> <p>The validity of the research findings was assessed using the four criteria of Lincoln & Guba (1985). It was stated that it was measured and confirmed through acceptable tests, transferability, reliability, and confirmability.</p> <p>Ethical considerations: The participants in this study were informed about the topic and method of conducting the research, and their participation was informed, free, and voluntary.</p> <p>Findings: By conducting Interviews with 67 experts, the concept of directly or indirectly related to digital health marketing in gaining good support, has been identified in 18 main categories, based on the data-driven paradigm model, in the form of six dimensions of digital technology development (compatibility, ease of use, usefulness), focal phenomenon or support (informational support, emotional support, social support), strategies or trust-building (trust in institutions, trust in digital technologies, Trust leads to donation), contextual factors (knowledge,</p>

¹ Asst. Prof. Dr. Mohammad Ekram Yawar, Dean of the Faculty of Law, International Science and Technology University, Warsaw, Poland, ekram.yawar@istu.edu.pl, <https://orcid.org/0000-0003-3198-5212>

² Mohammad Qurban Hakimi, Master's degree student in health management, İSTANBUL KENT University, İstanbul, Türkiye, Mail: masihyk2018@gmail.com, <https://orcid.org/0009-0005-6121-5069>



resources, training), intervening or demographic characteristics (age, gender, education) and consequences or trust-building (opportunism, willingness, performance) were constructed.

Conclusion: With the expansion of technology, digital health marketing is the missing link in attracting good support. The set of advantages of digital technologies and the existence of areas for their expansion have led to a tendency to use digital health marketing tools and tactics to gain the support of the public through digital health marketing.

Introduction

Charity has been a concern of all human societies since ancient times. Performing charitable and helpful activities of the same kind is a recommended and recommended thing in all cultures, which in the past was mostly done through face-to-face acquaintance or introduction by a trusted individual.¹

Today, due to the spread of the Internet and the ease of using digital technologies and access to social media, this activity is carried out digitally. Digital health marketing includes tools and activities for marketing products and services in a digital environment. Digital health marketing pursues the same goals as traditional marketing, with the difference that digital health marketing pursues innovation by using new technological tools and methods.²

Attracting the attention of individuals in a kind-hearted way must be done creatively so that public benefit institutions can achieve greater good. A philanthropist is someone who has the ability to support, financially and intellectually support people in society and noble and humanitarian goals.³

Anyone can be interested in charitable works, but with the large number of charitable institutions, it is not possible to support all of them and it is difficult for supporters and benefactors to choose which one to support. For this reason, public benefit institutions should allow people to use digital health marketing tools and tactics. Identify them and provide them with ways to support them.

In drawing up their basic policies, they should place special emphasis on support, cooperation, and humanitarian assistance, and on this basis, they should promote the involvement of philanthropists as a guiding mechanism for humanitarian assistance to the most needy segments of society. Digital health marketing is more than just using the Internet, it enables customer relationship management, business resource planning, and supply chain management, all of which aim to achieve marketing goals using digital technology methods and tools.⁴

Digital health marketing is one of the most exciting marketing areas that has caught the attention of many people these days.⁵ With the advent of web technology and subsequently social media, human interaction

¹ Sargeant,2023.

² Rahimi and Rahimi,2019.

³ Mansoori and Salimian,2019.

⁴ Tien,et,al.2020.

⁵ Omidkhah,et,al.2020.



with global and local communities has taken on a new form.¹ The customer's interaction with the material world has evolved with the advent of digital technology. Their purchasing patterns, product usage, and overall life experience have changed.²

For example, the need to store and share information has moved from floppy disks to CD drives to USB drives to cloud storage. Many of us have also shifted our purchasing behavior from physical shopping in the marketplace to online shopping sites.³

In general, online and offline consumers (customers) are inextricably intertwined and have increasingly complex orientations to and evaluations of their social and commercial environments and institutions.⁴

According to social exchange theory, when an individual receives benefits from others, support It compensates them. In the context of online communities, social networking sites provide a platform for users to support each other.⁵

If a user is supported by friends on a social network, they are required to repay their kindness. The incentive for social support compensation encourages users to share their purchase information, product knowledge, or shopping experience with their friends and to receive similar information from the social network base.⁶

The ease of communication through social media, mobile phone technology, and other forms of digital technology enhances the absorption, integration, or acculturation beyond the users' internal community. The use of digital technologies allows for greater interaction between individuals or groups who have their own views and beliefs, regardless of geographical distance.⁷

Digital health marketing in public benefit organizations can be a draw or a repel for supporters and donors. The concept of "charity" does not only include the actions of a charitable individual in the form of financial donations and cash assistance, but also generous individuals who, by using their intellect and imagination, are able to solve cultural, developmental, and social problems and crises, and are considered "charity."⁸

For this reason, charitable work is not necessarily accompanied by financial assistance from individuals, and sometimes "effective thinking" can be more effective than large sums of money and physical structures.⁹ Charity and benevolent activities that occur in any society, like other phenomena, are influenced by the beliefs, values, culture, and customs of that society.¹⁰

In terms of performing good and pious work, the most important factor is the personal inclination to carry out a public good and an interest in participating in cultural and social spheres from childhood and

¹ Hajli,2014.

² Rahman,et,al.2019.

³ Stephen and Toubia,2010.

⁴ . Kim S,2013.

⁵ Yen DA,2019.

⁶ Hossain,et,al.2019.

⁷ Shukla and Nigam,2018.

⁸ Kang J,2018.

⁹ Mansoori and Salimian,2019.

¹⁰ Rostami and Afshari,2018.



adolescence, as well as commitment to religious beliefs and the implementation of ideals of philanthropy in Community and the feeling of well-being after doing good.¹

Several motivations may drive charitable behavior, including altruistic motivation, reputation management² and the ripple effects of philanthropy, for example, increasing personal satisfaction with public services provided to individuals.³

Demonstrating the effectiveness and positive outcomes of philanthropy in society leads to an increase in and promotion of this practice in society. People are motivated to do so by understanding the benefits that philanthropy has for society in general and for themselves in particular.⁴

Therefore, non-profit organizations can gain the support of as many donors and donors as possible by providing accurate and transparent information about the use of donated funds and by showing the results of their work.⁵ One way to attract donors is to create a sense of trust between donors and non-profit organizations. Trust is often considered a key element in building successful relationships in the online world.⁶

Trust is defined as “a psychological state consisting of an individual’s intention to be vulnerable based on positive expectations of another’s intentions or behavior.” They argue that trust is not a behavior (such as cooperation) or a choice (such as risk-taking), but rather a fundamental state of mind that can lead to Or result from such behaviors and choices.

In a study titled “A Review of Ethical Challenges in Health Technologies (Subject of Study: Digital Health Technologies),” using a literature review of 25 articles, the ethical challenges in digital health technologies were examined by distinguishing between mobile phone-based technologies, electronic health records, telemedicine, e-health, wearable technologies, and big data. Challenges of maintaining privacy, access, determining member responsibilities, changing patient roles, data-related challenges, and ensuring the quality of health information provided are among the ethical challenges found in the reviewed articles in the field of digital health.⁷

Another study has examined the challenges of medical ethics in information societies. The results of this study showed that compliance with medical ethics in information societies and attention to the four important principles presented therein, namely beneficence, discretion, honesty, and justice, during the use of medical information technologies is absolutely necessary to meet these challenges.

Designing and examining ethical challenges in the production, access, dissemination, storage, and use of patient information in electronic environments and developing appropriate and practical approaches can help to promote

¹ Mansoori and Salimian,2019.

² Izuma,2012.

³ . Waytz et, al.2012.

⁴ . Hosseini,et,al.2019.

⁵ . Dashti and Sanayei,2018.

⁶ . Rousseau, et, al.1998.

⁷ Ezzati and Aliahmadi,2018.



medical ethics and support the principles of beneficence, equality, justice, choice, and respect for individual freedoms in information societies.¹ (Other research shows that philanthropic donations are increasingly being made on the line In virtual space, people's opinions influence individual decisions to donate to charity. However, while some decision-makers give more, others withhold or give less, and overall giving does not increase.² Companies should be sensitive to privacy and consumer concerns when developing advertising strategies and building long-term customer relationships.³

A study titled Digital Giving Platforms for Nonprofits and Charities found that Digital giving based on open source technologies simplifies the process of donating goods by social solidarity institutions. The program allows anonymous donations and provides the possibility of monitoring the status of each donation by donors.

In addition, usability is considered a key element in the design of the Qalmdad program.⁴ With the development of Internet infrastructure and a great enthusiasm for product and service innovation, medical financing has become a convenient way to carry out medical charity.

Medical financing allows patients to collect financial contributions from the public online to cover the costs of medical treatments. Compared with traditional medical donation, medical crowdfunding moves all donation activities from offline to online and has the advantages of low cost, low threshold, fast communication and wide contact with the people.

Medical crowdfunding has been considered an alternative to inadequate national health systems in many countries. Studies show that online fundraising platforms in China have published more than 17,000 fundraising projects and received a total of 26.5 billion clicks, likes, and shares. The total amount of donations collected is more than 1.8 billion Chinese yuan.⁵

The research, application and problems of the platform on the medical charity donation line were discussed and it was suggested that this platform should pay close attention to the types of fundraising projects, make a precise classification for different projects such as serious diseases, urgent diseases and chronic diseases, and clearly classify them. The research projects Prioritize and direct serious illnesses and urgent illnesses.

In addition, this platform should also properly raise the threshold for requesting assistance and adjust the goals of collecting financial assistance that does not meet the real needs of the seeker.⁶

Today, with the expansion of electronic and social networks, as well as the development of the web, a more suitable space has been provided for helping those in need, and it is appropriate that institutions active in the field of charity should improve the quality and quantity of their services by familiarizing themselves with and using these new capacities.⁷

¹ Aminpour,2008.

² Collier and Johnson,2021.

³ Mandal,2019.

⁴ Almeida and Cunha,2018.

⁵ Huang,et, al.2021.

⁶ Wang X,2019.

⁷ Hasanzadeh,2018.



One of these new capacities for non-profit organizations to leverage digital health marketing to gain support for a cause is that, if done properly, it can connect non-profit organizations with a small budget to a wide range of audiences and stakeholders. The Internet, social media, mobile apps, and other digital communications have become part of the daily lives of millions of people around the world.¹

The power of digital channels and media has reached such an extent that people search for information related to their daily lives and even their purchases through them. Individuals can quickly access a vast amount of information published on digital media at any time and place through their mobile devices.²

Digital health marketing opens new doors for public benefit organizations to get their message across to the public at low cost and attract their support. The use of digital tools can help nonprofits better promote and market their services and make them more effective.³

It also provides an opportunity to promote and market charitable and philanthropic activities and drive more donations to nonprofits. The proper implementation of digital health marketing techniques can improve the visibility of nonprofits and improve The way to interact with the good will be.⁴

On this basis, public benefit institutions can, by providing transparent information on the use of donated funds and displaying the results of their work, create trust at the level of society and among individuals that public assistance and contributions are spent for good intentions and correctly, which in turn will encourage people to do these things. For this reason, the researcher is interested in answering the following fundamental question: What are the components and relationships between them in a digital health marketing model that is effective in gaining support from public benefit institutions?

Many studies have been conducted on digital health marketing that have analyzed and examined the structure and dimensions of health marketing or digital health marketing. Overall,⁵ the results of these studies have led to approaches aimed at direct financial gain, which has led to a reduction in social responsibility and ethics in health marketing.⁶ On the other hand, there have been few studies in different countries that have directly covered discussions related to digital marketing with health marketing,⁷ or have used a combination of both,⁸ For this reason, according to the search conducted by the researchers, they have not found any research that simultaneously refers to the three areas of health marketing, digital marketing, and ethical marketing, both in Afghanistan and abroad.

In the digital age, large and small, small and large, all members of society must be familiar with digital technologies in order to keep up with progress and evolution. One of the main challenges for public benefit institutions is to gain good support in the field of health, especially in the long term.

¹ Kim S,2013.

² Mansoori and Salimian,2019.

³ Rostami and Afshari,2018.

⁴ Mandal,2019.

⁵ Ezzati and Aliahmadi,2018.

⁶ Almeida and Cunha,2018.

⁷ Waytz et, al.2012.

⁸ Hosseini,et,al.2019.



Success in programs to attract public participation and good presence in the health sector is one of the management concerns of public benefit institutions, and it seems that the informed and correct use of digital health marketing capabilities can be a useful way to respond to this concern. The high potential that digital health marketing has has turned it not only into a necessity, but also into a very great opportunity to gain support.

Supporting the disadvantaged in society is possible with the participation of all members of society, and identifying the ways of participation as well as the obstacles to it is of particular importance. For this reason, public benefit institutions must continuously review their participation system and take steps to identify and implement new approaches. The main objective of the present study is to present a digital health marketing model for obtaining good health support from public benefit institutions.

Method

The present study was conducted with a qualitative approach and a grounded theory approach.¹In this regard, the researcher tries to discover dominant processes in the social context based on the experiences of individuals and does not limit his research to a specific description of the data and units under study.²

According to this method, the data collection method was in-depth interviews and document and evidence review. The Marketing Ethics Teachers' Research Society, All Honorable Experts, Benefactors, and Public Participations is a non-profit organization, and the method of determining the participants for sampling is also purposeful and snowball. The criterion for selecting experts was familiarity with the field of gaining good support in the field of health.

Therefore, accessible and active experts in this field were selected. Accordingly, in this study, by conducting 12 interviews, the concepts related to digital health marketing in obtaining good support in the health sector from public benefit institutions reached a saturation point, which was determined by the conducted surveys, and the adequacy of the interviews was determined.

Qualitative data collection began through in-depth interviews with 12 university lecturers in the field of marketing ethics, honorable experts, benefactors, and public participants of the institution under study. The initial interviews were conducted in a completely open and unstructured manner, and in light of the responses to the questions and the coding of the initial interviews and the discovery of further clues for subsequent questions, the format of the questions changed somewhat, although all questions remained relevant to the topic and within the framework of the main research questions.

Each interview used common general questions and then continued with sub-questions (taken from the answers of the interviewees). The interviews continued until the researchers considered that the identified components had reached saturation.³

Also, after the participant's explanations, the researcher once again expressed the stated subject and his/her own interpretation of it, in order to ensure the accuracy of the stated subject after the interviewee confirmed it. The duration of each interview was between 40 and 70 minutes, based on the agreement of the parties

¹ Corbin and Strauss, 2014.

² Mohammadpour, 2013.

³ Locke, 2000.



and organizational conditions.¹ During the interviews, all participants' comments were recorded and stored, and their comments, along with the researcher's observations and insights, were transcribed into text. The course of each interview was recorded and the interviews were conducted individually.²

After the research interviews were conducted and transcribed, "data analysis" was conducted. Qualitative Research Methodology As mentioned in the qualitative research text, the process of analysis and interviewing is carried out one after the other. In this order, after each interview, analysis begins, and after the analysis, the next interview is conducted. The method of analyzing and analyzing information in the present study uses the method of Strauss & Corbin (1998).³

The coding stages used in this study included open coding, axial coding, and selective coding. After the data was saturated with the comments provided by the interviewees, the initial data was entered into MAXQDA 10 software and initial codes were created.

Given the large number of codes generated, in order to summarize them, the primary codes were converted into secondary codes, which was based on the similarity of the concepts and meanings of the primary codes to each other. Finally, in the open coding process, many themes were obtained, which were reduced to fewer categories during the data analysis process.

In general, qualitative research must be reliable in order to demonstrate accuracy in the process and consistency in the final product. (Lincoln & Guba 1985) propose four criteria for assessing the reliability of qualitative research, which are:

- 1 - Acceptability, which emphasizes the reasonableness and meaning of the findings;
- 2 - Transferability, which is used to apply the findings in other settings;
- 3- Reliability, which allows for scrutiny and review by other researchers;
- 4- Validity, which makes verification and verification a tool for proving the quality of the study. Table 1 shows the validity of this study based on the stated criteria.

Findings

In order to identify and extract digital health marketing factors in obtaining the best support for health services from public benefit institutions, the experiences of the participants were examined. Regarding the conditions for digital health marketing to gain the best support from public interest institutions, based on the participants' perspectives, we identified the categories of compatibility, ease of use, and usefulness and linked them to another broader category called the development of digital technologies.

"Today's modern society is very dynamic, and every day we witness new technologies that can respond to this volume of change. People have to do everything with their phones these days, even shopping, which used to take up a lot of time every day, can be done in just a few minutes. Today, we are witnessing the extent to which new technologies are compatible with all aspects of lifestyle and have come to their aid

¹ . Hesse-Biber, 2010.

² . Kvale, 1994.

³ . Ghorbani and Torabi, 2021.



according to people's lifestyle and work. Charities and public interest issues are no exception to this issue, and we must enter the digital realm to support good health services.

“Therefore, the category of compatibility includes compatibility with all aspects of lifestyle, according to the lifestyle and work of individuals, the acceptance of digital technologies, compatibility with all aspects of current purchasing methods, compatibility with the way products and services are purchased. »

Digital technologies are increasingly becoming part of families. At the beginning of the emergence of information technology, some parts of society were familiar with it, and due to its ease of use, we see that people of all ages and educational levels benefit from it.

Table 1: How to determine data robustness

Evaluation criterion	Acceptability
<p>Acceptable: Over the course of 8 months, we selected and validated the topics by studying the theoretical foundations, experts, research objectives, and sources. Throughout the research, there was continuous interaction and feedback between the data and analysis by the researcher and the group of experts who had sufficient knowledge about the dimensions of the research topic.</p> <p>Transferability: To ensure transferability, a detailed description of the participants' statements was provided and the study ethics were explained.</p>	

Reliability: All stages, research details, and notes from the study of relevant documents have been recorded.

Verifiability: In addition to carefully recording and documenting details at all stages, the findings were discussed with the participants regarding the research findings.

Current technologies are such that they do not require special training and an individual is able to learn them on their own, or if training is needed, people quickly acquire skills in them due to the methods of presentation (gamification) and their attractiveness. Interaction has been an important issue for humans in the past, and with the advent of new technologies, interactions have become easier and more clear.

“Therefore, the category of ease of use includes the ease of learning how to use digital technologies, the clarity of interaction with digital technologies, the ease of using digital technologies, the ease of gaining skills in using digital technologies, and the lack of need for much mental effort in using digital technologies.”

In addition to being attractive and entertaining, digital technology is very useful in many everyday situations. Seeing the time and date, alerts and reminders, online shopping, storing and viewing files, and more are things that have increased people's chances of success.

"So being useful includes finding the benefits of using digital technologies in daily life, increasing the chances of achieving important things using digital technologies, helping to get things done faster using digital technologies, increasing productivity using digital technologies, and saving time using digital technologies."



In relation to the central conditions of digital health marketing in obtaining good support from public benefit institutions, based on the participants' perspectives, the categories of informational, emotional and social support were identified and linked to another broader category called support in obtaining good support from public benefit institutions. The expectation that comes from digital technologies is to increase user information.

These technologies, by their very nature, are always transmitting information. In the field of digital health, it is necessary to attract and succeed in this field by providing useful information to users and receiving suggestions from users to help discover barriers and user suggestions.

Therefore, the category of information support includes providing information to resolve user problems, providing suggestions when requesting help, and trying to discover barriers and providing suggestions.

"The appeal of digital technologies is that they are enjoyable to use for all ages and backgrounds, so the design of their spaces should be such that people can spend time with them and enjoy them." Enjoyment and entertainment are the rewards that digital technologies offer to their users for their acceptance of them.

Therefore, the category of emotional support includes the enjoyment of the navigation process using digital technologies, the experience of enjoyment with access to digital technologies, the entertainment of using digital technologies, the agreeableness of using digital technologies, the entertainment of helping people using digital technologies. It is digital. Digital technologies are widely used among individuals.

Friends, family, colleagues and everyone in society use it, so the success of any type of marketing is somehow tied to its presence in this area. In the field of social support, public interest behaviors can also be attracted by using influential individuals active in digital technologies.

Families are usually very cautious about allowing access to the family due to a negative mindset regarding the consequences of digital technologies, but the presence of public benefit organizations can modify this negative mindset.

Therefore, the category of social support includes the provision of assistance with digital technologies by a large number of people, the use of connected individuals, the presence of individuals who are regularly contacted, the use of the majority of members of the community Digital technologies are used for giving help, peer relationships, use by those who are important to the individual, the presence of people who influence the individual's behavior, the influence of family and friends on individuals' decisions to use digital technologies, the influence of mass media, and the improvement of social conditions through digital technologies.

In the context of the conditions of intervention, digital health marketing is gaining good support from non-profit institutions based on The participants' perspectives on the categories of age, gender, and education were identified and linked to another broader category called demographic characteristics. "People who use digital technologies are mostly young, and older people tend to use traditional methods."

Therefore, in the demographic characteristics dimension, the age category includes the role of people's age in using digital technologies, the tendency of younger people to use digital technologies, and the tendency



of older people to use traditional methods. Gender may also influence the purpose of using digital technologies.

Men are more likely to use these technologies for practical purposes and are attracted to innovation, while women are usually attracted to learning or entertainment. Also, in charitable and charitable behaviors, men usually make decisions logically, and women usually act more emotionally.

Therefore, the category of gender includes the role of individuals' gender in the use of digital technologies, the role of individuals' gender in giving, and the role of individuals' gender in giving through digital technologies.

“People with higher education are more likely to use new technologies, and factors such as younger age have a negative impact on this group. Education may also lead to easier acceptance of charitable donations through digital technologies due to greater analytical power. Also, these charitable works by people with higher education will have a positive modifying effect on other people.”

Therefore, the category of education includes the role of education in the use of digital technologies, the willingness of educated individuals to use digital technologies, and the role of education in providing assistance through digital technologies.

Another factor in the marketing of digital health in obtaining good support from public benefit institutions is the context. From the participants' perspective, this research dimension includes the following categories: knowledge, resources, and education through digital technologies in providing assistance to public benefit institutions. Digital technologies can be used at any time and place, and by providing information through them, the knowledge of members of society can be increased.

Some people think that donating to charities cannot help society, but as people become more aware, they realize how much these institutions prevent absolute poverty and death, so knowledge about non-profit organizations is an important foundation for donating to them. In using new and digital technologies, having knowledge in this regard is one of the most important factors that expand it.

Therefore, after contextual factors, the category of knowledge consists of the concepts of user knowledge regarding new technology and related technologies, user knowledge regarding the services of public benefit institutions, and user knowledge regarding the use of digital technologies to provide assistance.

"Resources are the driving force behind the progress of any program. Digital technology also requires its own resources. The presence of a specialized force in this field and its support, the existence of its infrastructure and access to it are among the resources in this field that can be mentioned. Therefore, the category of resources includes the availability of digital technologies, having the necessary resources and facilities in terms of using digital technologies to provide assistance. The environment is very influential in learning about new technologies.

For example, environments where friends and family constantly share technology news and how to solve problems create more suitable conditions for using digital technologies. This education, in addition to family and friends, can also be provided by the developers of these technologies themselves, and newer examples can be introduced in the public media. «



Therefore, the category of education includes mentoring friends/family members, informing about new technologies, and general awareness on how to provide services through digital technologies. Regarding digital health marketing strategies for gaining good support from non-profit organizations, based on the participants' perspectives, we identified the categories of trust in institutions, trust in digital technologies, and trust leading to giving, and linked them to another broader category called trust-building. Non-profit organizations should be organizations that are fully trusted by the public. Both in terms of appearance and goodwill.

In this regard, qualified individuals should be employed to invite people to participate in public benefit activities. The credibility of these institutions increases with the membership of people who are trustworthy, such as heroes and supporters of the people.

Therefore, in the trust-building dimension, trust in institutions is made up of the concepts of the credibility of public benefit institutions, trust in public benefit institutions, and people's belief in the trustworthiness of public benefit institutions.

"Digital technologies are negative due to people's negative mindset towards issues of fraud and hacking, so the most important strategy for a successful presence in this field is to build trust. Documents and certificates that give credibility to digital technologies can attract people's trust." Therefore, the category of trust in digital technologies includes the credibility of digital technologies, trust in digital technologies, and individuals' belief in the trustworthiness of digital technologies.

"In this context, trust leads to donations to public benefit institutions that are both acceptable to the public and to the public in terms of digital technologies and the institution itself, meaning that people must conclude in their minds that this public benefit institution will deliver public aid to those in real need."

Therefore, the category of trust leading to donations is the credibility of digital technologies for donations, the credibility of institutions Public interest is the trustworthiness of digital technologies for donating to non-profit organizations.

Regarding the impact of digital health marketing on gaining philanthropic support from non-profit organizations, based on the participants' perspectives, the categories of opportunity, intention, and performance were identified and linked to another broader category called philanthropic giving (gaining philanthropic support). The result of using digital technologies in the field of digital health for non-profit organizations is an increase in charitable contributions to these organizations.

The existence of non-profit platforms in digital technologies provides a good opportunity for non-profit organizations to reach out to these issues in these high-traffic conditions. When people see charitable causes available, they think about them more and are more likely to do so." For example, if there is a section in mobile applications for donating to charities, people will be more confident and more likely to donate. Also, with the advent of new digital technologies, new ways of giving (such as the Internet of Things) are emerging that need to be tested.

Therefore, the category of opportunity creation includes providing a good opportunity for giving using digital technologies, increasing the likelihood of helping institutions using digital technologies in the future, and testing new ways of giving using digital technologies.



"By using digital technologies in this direction, people will be more inclined to use these technologies due to their use for health-related issues." Also, with methods of increasing willingness such as moral rewards and increasing the use of these technologies.

Therefore, the category of willingness also includes the willingness to donate using digital tools, the interest in using social networks to donate, and the effort to use applications to donate. Ultimately, the use of digital technologies leads to better performance of public benefit institutions. Donations are collected electronically, with less cost and resources, and in a transparent manner, so by equipping non-profit organizations, efficiency and performance can be increased.

Therefore, the category of performance includes the use of mobile software for donating, donating to non-profit organizations using virtual social networks, and the frequent use of digital tools for donating. The qualitative data obtained from the aforementioned process is presented in Table 2.

Table 2: Criteria and sub-criteria of the digital health marketing model in obtaining the best support from non-profit organizations

Research Dimensions	Category	Concept
Development of digital technologies (prerequisites)	Compatibility	Compatible with all aspects of lifestyle. According to people's lifestyle and work. Embracing digital technologies Compatible with all aspects of current purchasing methods. Compatible with the way products and services are purchased.
	Ease of use	Ease of learning how to use digital technologies. Clarity of interaction with digital Technologies. Ease of using digital Technologies. Ease of gaining skills in using digital technologies
	To be useful	No need for much mental effort in using digital technologies. Benefiting from using digital technologies in daily life. Increasing the chances of achieving important things by using digital technologies. Helping to speed up things by using digital technologies. Increasing productivity by using digital technologies. Saving time by using digital technologies.
Support (central phenomenon)	Information support	Providing suggestions when assistance is requested. Helping to identify obstacles and providing suggestions. Enjoying the navigation process using digital technologies. Experience enjoyment with access to digital technologies.
	Emotional support	Fun using digital technology. Enjoyment of using digital technology.
	Support (core phenomenon)	Engaging in helping people using digital technologies. Giving help with digital technologies by a high number of people. Using connected people. Presence of people who are regularly contacted.



		Using digital technologies by the majority of people in the community to give help.
	Social support	Used by those who are important to the individual. Presence of individuals who influence the individual's behavior. Influence of family/ethnicity on individuals' decisions to use digital technologies. Influence of mass media. Improvement of social status through the use of digital technologies.

Research,Dimensions	Category	Concept
Demographic characteristics (intervening factors)	Age	The role of age in the use of digital technologies. The tendency of younger people to use digital technologies. The tendency of older people to use traditional methods of payment. The role of gender in the use of digital technologies.
	Gender	The role of gender in giving. The role of gender in giving through digital technologies. The role of education in the use of digital technologies
	Education	The role of education in the use of digital technologies. The tendency of educated individuals to use digital technologies. The role of education in giving aid through digital technologies.
Background factors	Knowledge	User knowledge about new and related technologies. User knowledge about the services of public benefit institutions. User knowledge about the use of digital technologies for giving aid.
	Resources	In the availability of digital technologies. In the availability of the necessary resources. Necessary facilities regarding the use of digital technologies for giving aid.
	Education	Guidance from friends/family members. Information on new technologies. Public awareness on how to provide services through digital technologies.
Trust Building (Strategies)	Trust in institutions	Credibility of public benefit institutions. Trust in public benefit institutions. Individuals' belief in the trustworthiness of public benefit institutions.
	Trust in digital technologies	Trustworthiness of digital technologies. Trust in digital technologies. People's belief in the trustworthiness of digital technologies. Trustworthiness of digital technologies for giving aid.
	Trust leads to dedication	Trustworthiness of non-profit organizations for donating.



		People's belief in the trustworthiness of digital technologies for donating to non-profit organizations.
Giving charity (gaining charity support) (consequences)	Opportunity creation	Providing a good opportunity to give using digital technologies. Increasing the likelihood of giving to institutions using digital technologies in the future. Testing new ways of giving using digital technologies. Willingness to give using tools.
	Desire	Willingness to donate using tools. Interest in using social networks to donate. Efforts to use applications to donate.
	Performance	Using mobile apps to donate. Donating to non-profit organizations using social media. Frequent use of digital tools to donate.

In continuation, the coding was carried out based on the criteria of the Digital Health Marketing Model in obtaining the best support from public benefit institutions using the paradigm model, based on which the line of communication between the research categories including the central phenomenon (support), causal conditions, central category, context, intervening conditions, strategy and consequences was identified.

Therefore, the sub-categories were linked to the main category according to the paradigm model. The main goal was to provide the opportunity to think systematically about the data and how to relate them to each other.

Figure 1 shows the axial coding paradigm, in other words, a model of the qualitative research process.

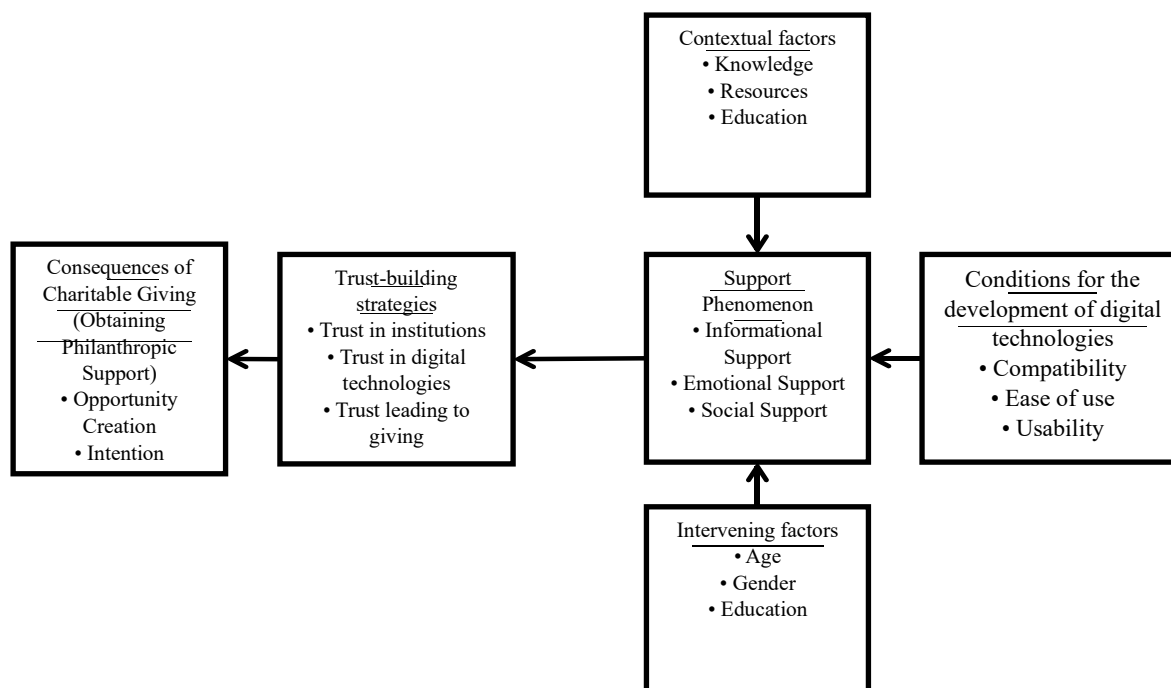


Figure 1: Explanatory model of digital health marketing in gaining support from the public (axial coding stage (Source: research findings))

Based on the paradigm model, the digital-centric approach was chosen as a phenomenon and the development of digital technologies as the causal conditions that lead to the creation and development of the phenomenon. Trust-building was considered as an action or coping strategy that expresses the targeted behaviors and interactions that are adopted in response to the phenomenon and under the influence of the context. Education, knowledge, and resources were considered as factors that influence action or coping strategies under specific circumstances.

Finally, charitable giving was considered as a consequence of adopting an action or coping strategy. Next, selective coding was conducted and then the components of the qualitative research model were examined and explained. Based on the components of the central coding stage, the following propositions were obtained:

Proposition 1: The development of digital technologies with the dimensions of compatibility, ease of use, and usefulness are considered to be the prerequisites for a tendency towards a digital-centric approach in gaining the best support from public interest institutions.

Case 2: Trust building is a strategy for a digital-centric approach to gaining the best support from public benefit institutions.

Case 3: Contextual conditions including knowledge, training, and resources provide specific contexts for gaining trust and building trust.

Case 4: Intervening conditions including age, gender, and education provide general contexts for gaining trust and building trust.

Case 5: Trust-building, contextual conditions (knowledge, training, resources) and intervening conditions (including age, gender and education) will have the effect of giving good help (obtaining good support).

In the selective coding stage, the relationship between the factors was determined in the form of a narrative analysis of the research. Based on this, the digital-centric approach is realized as a central category based on the conditions for the development of digital technologies. Trust-building is also explained by taking into account contextual factors and demographic characteristics, and leads to the provision of good aid.

Discussion

Based on the results of the model in Figure 1, digital health marketing in obtaining good support from public benefit institutions includes informational support, emotional support, and social support. The factor influencing this issue is the development of digital technologies, which includes compatibility, ease of use, and usefulness. Demographic characteristics also affect the methods of this study as confounding factors (age, gender, and education) and contextual factors (knowledge, resources, and training).

According to the findings, the digital health marketing method for gaining good support from public benefit institutions is trust-building, which includes trust in institutions, trust in digital technology, and trust leading to donations.



Ultimately, according to the final model, these approaches lead to the acquisition of good support. The findings of Ha et al. (2022) also showed that factors related to trust had a significant effect on behavioral intention in the context of the charity sector and had a significant positive effect on the intention to support charity.¹

The findings of the study in the context of the conditions indicated that three factors, perceived compatibility, perceived ease of use, and usefulness, caused the charity or the best in the digital environment to trust or donate to the site or application receiving the credit. This finding is consistent with the research of Noori et al. (2018). Based on the fact that the factor of ease of use of Internet sites is effective in the adoption of information technology and the use of electronic services, it is in a straight line.²

Also, the central phenomenon of informational support, emotional support and social support can lead to the creation of deep support for the good of digital medical environments. The starting point of digital health marketing In obtaining charitable support from non-profit organizations, the adoption and development of digital technologies is important. The results of the study by Du et al. (2020) also showed that charitable support behaviors are increased through an online charitable platform.³ The results of this study indicate that digital technology adoption, trust in the online charitable platform, and the effects of performance expectancy and effort expectancy on charitable support intentions from non-profit organizations are moderated.

One of the factors that influences the increased use of digital technologies is the degree to which the use of digital technologies in charitable matters is compatible with the lifestyle, preferences, values, experiences, needs, and potential behavioral patterns of individuals. The results of the study by Hu & Gong (2020) also show that after the Corona, the existence of information technology has led to adaptation to new conditions.⁴

With the advancement of technology and the change in contemporary lifestyles and patterns, various methods are used to attract charitable donations, each of which is used by a group of people based on the interests and capabilities of the recipients. Another factor influencing the digital-centric approach to obtaining support is The best thing about non-profit organizations is the ease of using digital technologies. The ease of using digital technologies is one of the most important tools for collecting financial contributions in the field of charity. The results of the study by Guo M. & Wang (2019). showed that online charity platforms facilitate the conditions for supporting charities.⁵

Another important factor that is effective in using digital technologies is the usefulness of digital technologies in life. Charity and support of this kind have a long history in our society.

The religion of Islam has also emphasized generosity with the attribute of “God is the Most Forgiving and Merciful.” In fact, charitable activities enjoy a special place in the religion of Islam, which is the result of the place of public benefit institutions in society.

¹ Ha QA and PNN,2020.

² Noori, et,al.2018.

³ Du L,et,al.2020.

⁴ Gong W,2020.

⁵ Wang X,2019.



In the current conditions of society, where we are faced with patients who are unable to meet their primary medical needs due to the increasing economic and living problems, the role of philanthropic participation in improving and improving the level of treatment for vulnerable populations is very important, because people in need can access the medical services they need in the shortest possible time. On the other hand, this category also helps the government to increase the welfare of society, so that the role of The public's participation in the country's recent earthquake and floods has been undeniable, and these people-oriented institutions have played a powerful role as an arm of the government in supporting the affected areas.

The results of this study also showed that one of the most important reasons why charities consider health care more important than before is the charity's concern for saving a person from a disease, which is at the forefront of all charitable activities. This finding is consistent with research (Aghababa,2018), which found that health care has the highest financial support in the country. With the advent of new technologies, human interaction with global and local communities has taken on a new form and evolved.¹

The introduction and advancement of digital technologies has significantly impacted the purchasing patterns, use of products and services, and lifestyles of individuals. Success in programs to attract public participation and a good presence in the digital space is one of the management concerns of public benefit institutions, and it seems that the informed and correct use of digital marketing capabilities can be a useful way to respond to this concern.

Paying attention to demographic characteristics in digital health marketing in order to gain the best support from public benefit institutions is one of the most important factors that public benefit institutions should consider in organizing their activities, because individuals with different demographic characteristics perform differently.

Therefore, it is better for public benefit institutions to pay attention to the demographic characteristics and influence of different social groups when organizing their marketing strategies and to examine and study this function using various research methods.

By using digital marketing, non-profit organizations can leverage their marketing activities to reach more supporters and donors, and realize the good intentions of charitable citizens to help those in need. Pettigrew et al. (2019) found that philanthropy is much higher among middle-aged adults, with informal giving being more prevalent than formal giving.² Farooq et al. (2020) also found that younger people are more likely to support using technology-based software.³

Learning digital technologies requires knowledge and experience. This knowledge is constantly changing and evolving. Public benefit organizations should use today's technologies to achieve the most innovative ways of interacting with the public.

One of the important features of new technologies is that they have become a place for sharing knowledge. With the exponential increase in users and knowledge shared, the importance and necessity of these technologies as a tool for improving knowledge and learning in the field of obtaining good support from

¹ Aghababa,2018

² Pettigrew,et, al. 2019.

³ Farooq, et, al.2020.



public benefit institutions can be considered. Public benefit institutions should pay attention to the necessary resources (human resources, time and money) to use digital technologies to achieve the desired goals.

It is essential to have a detailed plan detailing how digital technologies will be used to achieve the goals. Nonprofit organizations can take steps to achieve their goals with appropriate education and communication, which is in line with Del Baldo's (2019) research.¹

This result provides more recent findings than other studies in terms of approaches (trust building) and outcomes (gaining philanthropic support). Trust building is the most important component of attracting philanthropic assistance. Nonprofit organizations can gain greater trust in attracting charitable support by using digital technologies to provide complete and comprehensive information tailored to the needs and tastes of users.

Nonprofit organizations without the trust of their supporters, benefactors, service users, and the general public will not be able to raise the financial support needed to provide the services needed by the people they serve. Nonprofit organizations can build trust by building and strengthening long-term relationships with benefactors and supporters. Digital technologies have provided a great opportunity for charitable giving. Ensuring that services are available and accessible at the right time and place for charities is crucial.

In an effort to attract donors and philanthropists, nonprofits must be accessible so that current and potential donors can easily support their organization. Digital health marketing provides the conditions for individuals seeking public services to access the services they need more quickly. Public benefit organizations can use digital health marketing capabilities to creatively engage audiences and encourage them to collaborate in order to increase the number of donors. Today, people are more sensitive to the social dimensions of their spending and are using their purchasing power to improve their lives and well-being and to change society.

In this regard, using digital health marketing, going beyond traditional methods of gaining support for charities, and considering factors such as a sense of altruism and altruism, can have a dramatic impact on gaining support for charities from public benefit institutions. For example, in this study, Sajjadi et al. (2011) showed that perceived support from philanthropists can be effective in helping children with cancer.²

Regarding trust-building strategies, three factors: trust in institutions, trust in digital technologies, and trust leading to donations can be effective in the context of philanthropic assistance in digital form. This finding is also consistent with the research of Triantoro et al.³ (2021) and Coates Nee (2014)⁴

The foundation for creating digital trust for charitable giving is in the same vein. This study provides new findings on trust-building through digital health marketing in obtaining charitable support from public benefit organizations, introducing new tools in this regard.

¹ Del Baldo, 2019.

² Sajjadi, et al. 2021.

³ Triantoro, et al. 2021.

⁴ Coates Nee, 2014.



It was also discovered that this topic has implications that are very important in terms of gaining philanthropic support. Therefore, if non-profit organizations are not familiar with these tools, they will face problems in attracting philanthropists, financial supporters, and managing donors.

Conclusion

The aim of this study is to explain the digital health marketing model in obtaining good health support from public benefit institutions. Since digital technologies have received much interest and attention and have facilitated communication between users and service providers without time and place limitations, public benefit institutions have become inclined to adopt a digital-centric approach.

The ability of digital technologies to increase their compatibility, ease of use, and usefulness has led to the development of digital technologies in all directions, especially in obtaining good health support from public benefit institutions.

Therefore, understanding more of the processes underlying good behavior is becoming increasingly important, and public benefit organizations have no choice but to adopt new marketing approaches in order to maximize and qualityly expand their activities.¹

By using digital health marketing, public benefit organizations can drive their marketing activities to reach more individuals and supporters. In this regard, health marketing has found a market for digital technology, considering areas such as increasing knowledge about technology, focusing public and private resources of the community on technology (Internet, smartphones), and education about information technology. The most appropriate strategy for implementing such a decision in public benefit institutions was identified as “trust-building strategies.”²

What the digital-centric approach brought to public benefit institutions was the opportunity to increase the attraction of philanthropic support, increase the willingness to support public benefit institutions, and improve the performance of the public benefit institution in attracting support.

Strategic management thinkers are in complete agreement on the idea that a set of macro and micro environmental factors influence the implementation of a strategy.³

Therefore, in the implementation of a trust-building strategy, a set of contextual factors including resources and technical infrastructure, knowledge and training as background factors and demographic characteristics including age, gender and education as intervening conditions are also important. have been effective.

The consequence of implementing such a strategy in public benefit institutions is to provide good assistance to public benefit institutions. The more useful and easier learning digital technologies are identified for improving service delivery performance, the more they will be used, and the greater the use of digital technologies, the greater the trust in public benefit institutions and digital technologies.

¹ Corbin and Strauss,2014.

² Coates Nee,2014.

³ Pearson,2020.



The combination of these factors has influenced individuals' use of digital technologies to donate and is leading to a tendency to use digital health marketing tools and tactics to gain support from charities. Through the research results, the following implicit applications and operational suggestions are extracted to explain gaining more successful support for charities: It is suggested that public benefit institutions use current technologies to access the most innovative ways of interacting with charities and provide new ways of providing services.

It is suggested that public benefit institutions should use digital technologies to increase public awareness of the needs of those in need, inform people about services, attract people's kind attention, promote a culture of charity, and also convince people to help. Therefore, public benefit institutions should consider investing resources and creating digital changes as a priority to improve their level of sustainability.

Public interest organizations should plan to publish written and visual content on different social networks for different age and social groups and include different types of content appropriate to the services provided in their digital health marketing strategies.

Also, comprehensive policies should be adopted in the field of creating security and maintaining the privacy and personal information of the audience and these policies should be communicated appropriately.

By providing sufficient information to individuals to raise their level of awareness of philanthropy and create a desirable perception of the existing conditions, the field of attracting philanthropists to public benefit institutions has become smoother.

Research limitations:

- This study did not measure the impact and factor loading of the discovered variables and was only limited to identifying categories.
- The scarcity of theoretical foundations regarding digital health marketing and supporting good health was another limitation of this study, which was compensated by reviewing domestic and foreign journal research.
- Due to geographical limitations, the data obtained is limited to the specific culture of that region.

Research Suggestions:

In order to conduct future research in the direction of this study, the following are recommended:

Investigating the level of support and acceptance of senior managers of digital health marketing in gaining goodwill;

Conducting a similar study on employees; Sponsors and other organizations should conduct interventional research to obtain more comprehensive results and focus on influential and predictive factors related to the use of digital health marketing in gaining support from charities, and ultimately measure their effects and consequences in other research in the field of gaining support from charities using digital health marketing, so that the impact of other variables can be measured.



Given the scarcity of theoretical foundations in this regard, it is proposed to use the meta-composition method to examine the dimensions and aspects of digital health marketing in obtaining the support of the health charity from public benefit institutions.

It is also recommended that research related to identifying problems and assessing needs in the field of obtaining the support of the charity and promoting the charity towards new technologies can be included in future research directions.

Considering the socio-cultural and geographical diversity of Afghanistan, a separate study is proposed to examine and present a digital health marketing model for obtaining health care support from public benefit institutions in different cities of the country in order to control for the possible socio-cultural impact on the model.

References

- Aghababa S.(2018) Analysis of attracting the participation of donors in the field of health. Tehran: The Second National Conference on Lasting Good (Study and Evaluation of Good Affairs in Iran with a Focus on the Challenges of Charity in Iran Today); 2018 .
- Almeida F, Cunha A.(2018) Digital Donation Platform for Nonprofit and Charity Organizations. *International Journal of Information Communication Technologies and Human Development (IJICTHD)*. 2018; 10(3): 14- 27.
- Aminpour F.(2008) Medical ethics challenges in the information societies. *Iranian Journal of Medical Ethics and History of Medicine*. 2008; 1(1): 53-60. [Persian]
- Coates Nee R.(2014) Social responsibility theory and the digital nonprofits: Should the government aid online news startups? *Journalism*. 2014; 15(3): 326-343 .
- Collier CA, Johnson N.(2021) Nudging Charity: How Digital Nudges Influence Online Prosocial Behaviors. *AMCIS 2021 Proceedings* . 2021; 21(11): 21-25 .
- Corbin J, Strauss A.(2014) Basics of qualitative research: Techniques and procedures for developing grounded theory. Los Angeles: Sage Publications; 2014 .
- Dashti M, Sanayei A.(2018) Effective Factors on Social Shopping Intention in SocialnCommerce. *Journal of Business Management*. 2018; 10(1): 97-120 .
- Del Baldo M.(2019) Acting as a benefit corporation and a B Corp to responsibly pursue private and public benefits. The case of Paradisi Srl (Italy). *International Journal of Corporate Social Responsibility*. 2019; 4(1): 1-18.
- Du L, Li X, Chen F, Feng Y.(2020) Evaluating participants' customer citizenship behaviors using an Internet charity platform. *Social Behavior and Personality: An International Journal*. 2020; 48(6): 1- 15.
- Ezzati Arasteh Pour F, Aliahmadi Jeshfaghani H.(2018) A Review of the Ethical Challenges in Health Technologies (Case Study: Digital Health Technologies). *Iranian Journal of Medical Ethics and History of Medicine*. 2018; 11(1): 397-416. [Persian]



- Farooq MS, Khan M, Abid A.(2020) A framework to make charity collection transparent and auditable using blockchain technology. *Computers & Electrical Engineering*. 2020; 83: 106588.
- Ghorbani A, Torabi M.(2021) Conceptualization and design of organizational meteorites model: challenges and solutions. *Management of Government Organizations*. 2021; 9(4): 147-164 .
- Gong W, Hu J.(2020) Optimization of Public Charity Information Disclosure Based on Block chain Technology and FTI Index. In *The Second International Symposium on Management and Social Sciences (ISMSS 2020)*. Shanghai: Atlantis Press; 2020. p.445-450.
- Ha QA, Pham PNN, Le LH.(2022) What facilitate people to do charity? The impact of brand anthropomorphism, brand familiarity and brand trust on charity support intention. *International Review on Public and Nonprofit Marketing*. 2022; 4(2): 1-25.
- Hajli MN.(2014) The role of social support on relationship quality and social commerce. *Technological Forecasting and Social Change*. 2014; 87: 17-27 .
- Hasanzadeh Sarvestani H, Tamizifar M, Simiari MR.(2018) Crowdfunding, a Model for Attracting Donor Contributions. *Islamic Finance Research*. 2018; 8(1): 59-90 .
- Hesse-Biber SN.(2010) *Mixed methods research: Merging theory with practice*. New York: Guilford Press; 2010 .
- Hossain TMT, Akter S, Kattiyapornpong U, Dwivedi YK.(2019) Multichannel integration quality: A systematic review and agenda for future research. *Journal of Retailing and Consumer Services*. 2019; 49: 154-163 .
- Hosseini SH, Salimifar M, malekosadati SS.(2019) Analysis of Individual Features and Behavior Motivations in Charitable Giving; Economic Approach. *Economical Modeling*. 2019; 13(46): 145-170 .
- Huang Z, Ouyang J, Huang X, Yang Y, Lin L.(2021) Explaining donation behavior in medical crowdfunding in social media. *SAGE Open*. 2021; 11(2): 1-12 .
- Izuma K.(2012) The social neuroscience of reputation. *Neuroscience Research*. 2012; 72(4): 283-288 .
- Kang J.(2018) Effective marketing outcomes of hotel Facebook pages: The role of active participation and satisfaction. *Journal of Hospitality and Tourism Insights*. 2018; 1(2): 106-120.
- Kim S, Park H.(2013) Effects of various characteristics of social commerce (s-commerce) on consumers' trust and trust performance. *International Journal of Information Management*. 2013; 33(2): 318-332 .
- Kvale S.(1994) *Interviews: An introduction to qualitative research interviewing*. Washington: Sage Publications, Inc; 1994 .
- Locke K.(2000) Grounded theory in management research. *Grounded Theory in Management Research*. 2000; 9(4): 1-160 .



- Mandal PC.(2019) Public policy issues in direct and digital marketing-Concerns and initiatives: Public policy in direct and digital marketing. *International Journal of Public Administration in the Digital Age (IJPADA)*. 2019; 6(4): 54-71 .
- Mansoori A, Salimian Rezie M.(2019) Examines the factors of attraction and development of donor's participation in Library building. *Journal of Studies in Library and Information Science*. 2019; 11(2): 19-32 .
- Mohammadpour A.(2013) Qualitative research method against method 1 (logic and design in qualitative methodology). 2nd ed. Tehran: Jame'Shenasan Publications; 2013 .
- Noori R, Hatami M, Ebrahimiyan F.(2018) An Investigation of the Factors Affecting the Adoption of Information Technology And Its Effect on Human Resource. *Journal of Research in Human Resources Management*. 2018; 9(4): 127-153 .
- Omidkhah S, Rahmani L, Masoumi M.(2020) The Impact of Digital Marketing on Increasing Customer Participation and Trust (Case Study: Tehran Online Store Customers). Tehran: National Conference on Improving and Restructuring Organizations and Businesses; 2020 .
- Pearson H.(2020) Philanthropic Foundations Toronto: Building a community and a voice for philanthropy. In *Toronto Landscapes, Indigenous Perspectives and Pathways*. Henley-on-Thames: Philab Student Award; 2020. p.33 .
- Pettigrew S, Jongenelis M, Jackson B, Newton RU.(2019) "Charity begins at home": Informal caring barriers to formal volunteering among older people. *Voluntas: International Journal of Voluntary and Nonprofit Organizations*. 2019; 30(5): 921-931.
- Rahimi M, Rahimi E.(2019) Investigating the Impact of Digital Marketing on the Performance of Chain Stores through the Mediating Role of Marketing Capabilities. *Management and Accounting*. 2019; 3(22): 1-17 .
- Rahman M, Bose S, Babu MM, Dey BL, Roy SK, Binsardi B.(2019) Value co-creation as a dialectical process: Study in Bangladesh and Indian Province of West Bengal. *Information Systems Frontiers*. 2019; 21(3): 527-545 .
- Rahmi N.(2021) Analysis of the Role of E-Philanthropy Through Digital Platform and Social Media During The Covid-19 Pandemic in Human Resources Development Perspective. *The International Journal of Business Review (The Jobs Review)*. 2021; 4(2): 203- 217 .
- Rostami V, Afshari F.(2018) Research on the Legal and Theology Challenges of the Islamic Azad University Waqf Property. *Law Quarterly*. 2018; 48(1): 39-58
- Rousseau DM, Sitkin SB, Burt RS, Camerer C.(1998) Not so different after all: A cross-discipline view of trust. *Academy of management review*. 1998; 23(3): 393- 404 .
- Sajjadi H, Roshanfekr P, Asangari B, Zeinali Maraghe M, Gharai N, Torabi F.(2011) Quality of life and satisfaction with services in caregivers of children with cancer. *Iran Journal of Nursing*. 2011; 24(72): 8-17 .



- Sargeant A, Lee S.(2023) Donor trust and relationship commitment in the UK charity sector: The impact on behavior. *Nonprofit and Voluntary Sector Quarterly*. 2020; 33(2): 185-202.
- Shukla PS, Nigam PV.(2018) E-shopping using mobile apps and the emerging consumer in the digital age of retail hyper personalization: An insight. *Pacific Business Review International*. 2018; 10(10): 131-139 .
- Stephen AT, Toubia O.(2010) Deriving value from social commerce networks. *Journal of Marketing Research*. 2010; 47(2): 215-228 .
- Tien NH, Dana LP, Jose RJS, Van Dat N, Duc PM.(2020) Analysis of McDonalds' entry strategy into Vietnam market. *International Journal of Advanced Research and Development*. 2020; 5(3): 23-29
- Triantoro DA, Wahyuni T, Purna FP.(2021) Digital Philanthropy: The Practice of Giving Among Middle to Upper-Class Muslim in Indonesia and Soft Capitalism. *QIJIS (Qudus International Journal of Islamic Studies)*. 2021; 9(2): 315-350 .
- Wang X, Guo R.(2019) Application and Problems of Online Third-Party Medical Charity Donation Platform. *Modern Management*. 2019; 9(3): 350-359.
- Waytz A, Zaki J, Mitchell JP.(2012) Response of dorsomedial prefrontal cortex predicts altruistic behavior. *Journal of Neuroscience*. 2012; 32(22): 7646- 7650 .
- Yen DA, Dey B.(2019) Acculturation in the social media: Myth or reality? Analysing Social-Media-Led Integration and Polarisation. *Technological Forecasting & Social Change*. 2019; 21(3): 426-427 .

Received: 02.10.2025

Revised: 02.12.2025

Accepted: 02.17.2025

Published: 02.19.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Decoding Gobeklitepe: Insights into Prehistoric Rituals and Society



Najafova Aysel

Nakhchivan State University

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.02500202>

Keywords	Abstract
Göbeklitepe Neolithic Ritual Symbolism Archaeological Methodologies Cultural Evolution	This article presents a comprehensive study of Gobeklitepe (in Turkey), one of the most significant Neolithic sites, whose discovery has reshaped our understanding of early human social and ritual practices. By synthesizing recent interdisciplinary research and employing both traditional excavation techniques and advanced scientific analyses, the study reexamines the site's architectural marvels—characterized by intricately carved T-shaped pillars and enigmatic symbolic motifs—as evidence of complex communal and ceremonial activities. The findings challenge the conventional "agriculture-first" paradigm by suggesting that ritual and symbolic practices may have been foundational to societal organization well before the advent of agriculture. Moreover, the integration of environmental studies with cultural and technological perspectives provides a nuanced interpretation of the interplay between subsistence strategies, environmental dynamics, and symbolic expression during the Neolithic period. Ultimately, this research contributes to a broader discourse on the origins of social stratification and the evolution of organized religion, highlighting the transformative role of ritual in early human innovation.

Introduction

Gobeklitepe, nestled in southeastern Turkey, represents one of the most transformative archaeological sites of the Neolithic period. With origins dating back nearly 12,000 years, this ancient complex has reshaped our understanding of early human society by revealing evidence of elaborate ceremonial activities and a rich array of symbolic representations. The discovery of Gobeklitepe has spurred interdisciplinary research that has broadened our perspectives on the cultural, economic, and environmental dimensions of prehistoric communities.

Recent studies have illuminated various facets of the site. Verit and Verit (2021) draw attention to its provocative iconography, particularly the presence of phallic motifs, suggesting that these symbols played a significant role in the site's ritual life. In a broader cultural context, Ünlu, Yaşar, and Bilici (2022) position Gobeklitepe within the narratives of cultural diplomacy and Neolithic transformation, arguing for its importance as more than just an archaeological curiosity. Complementing these cultural interpretations, Dietrich et al. (2019) have provided insights into subsistence practices through their study of cereal



This is an open access article under the
 Creative Commons Attribution-
 NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum

ISSN 3030-1718

processing techniques, while Chelik and Ayaz (2022) examine the emergence of a distinct Gobekli-tepe culture, emphasizing economic practices and the transmission of specialized knowledge.

Environmental factors have also played a key role in shaping the site. Investigations into the late Holocene geomorphodynamics around Gobekli-tepe by Nykamp, Knitter, and Schutt (2020) help us understand the evolving landscape that surrounded this ancient hub. Additionally, Ayaz (2023) offers alternative interpretations of animal symbolism found in the area, adding another layer to the site's complex narrative. Finally, Mancini (2020) explores contemporary visitor experiences, highlighting the enduring fascination that Gobekli-tepe holds for modern audiences.

This article aims to synthesize these varied research perspectives to offer a comprehensive examination of Gobekli-tepe's archaeological findings. By exploring its architectural features, symbolic artifacts, and environmental context, we seek to illuminate the social and ritual dynamics that underpinned this ancient center, thereby contributing to a more nuanced understanding of the Neolithic era.

Historical Context and Background

Gobekli-tepe is situated in the Southeastern Anatolia region of modern-day Turkey, a locale that has long been recognized as a crossroads of early human innovation. The site's origins trace back to the Pre-Pottery Neolithic period, approximately 12,000 years ago, a time when human societies were on the cusp of transitioning from nomadic lifestyles to more settled, community-based living. This transitional period has traditionally been associated with the advent of agriculture and the development of complex social structures. However, the architectural and symbolic sophistication evident at Gobekli-tepe suggests that ritual and communal activities may have played a more foundational role than previously assumed.

The discovery of Gobekli-tepe in the 1990s radically challenged established theories about the origins of organized religion and social stratification. Initially perceived as a mere settlement, subsequent excavations revealed a series of monumental circular and rectangular structures adorned with intricately carved T-shaped pillars. These megalithic enclosures imply a coordinated effort by a community capable of mobilizing significant resources and specialized skills, even before the full development of agricultural practices. This realization has spurred a reevaluation of the Neolithic revolution, positioning Göbekli-tepe as a potential center for early ritualistic and cultural expression.

Gobekli-tepe is located in the city of Sanliurfa, Turkey. Sanliurfa is known as the City of Prophets. Gobekli-tepe was discovered in 1986 when a farmer found two stone statues while plowing his field. The farmer presented the stone statues he found to the museum. The statues were kept in the museum from 1986 to 1992. In 1992, a group of German archaeologists saw the statues in the museum and the leader of this group, Prof. Dr. Harald Hauptmann, looked at the statues and examined them, then informed his student Prof. Dr. Klaus Schmidt to investigate the matter. After Klaus Schmidt conducted research for a while, he later determined that the hill where the stone statues were found was a mound. In the source where this incident is referenced, the owner of the area, Mahmud Bey, emphasizes that "in 1963, a group of archaeologists in the United States, while recording valuable hills in the world heritage, made notes on the Gobekli-tepe."

After obtaining the necessary permits, the first excavations began in 1995. During the excavations, 4 similar structures were discovered. The similarities between the structures were the presence of a circle and a large number of T-shaped columns. The T-shaped columns stood both in the center of the circles and on the walls.



The columns were 5.5 meters high and weighed 24 tons. More than 200 T-shaped columns were discovered there. On each of the T-columns were depicted animals ready to attack and many different symbols.

The research conducted over the past few decades has integrated various disciplinary perspectives to contextualize the site within broader Neolithic dynamics. Studies such as those by Dietrich et al. (2019) have highlighted evidence of cereal processing, indicating that early forms of food production were contemporaneous with—or possibly even a consequence of—the social changes driven by ritual activities. Concurrently, works by Ünlü, Yaşar, and Bilici (2022) have underscored the cultural and diplomatic significance of Gobekli-tepe, framing it within discussions that bridge both historical and contemporary understandings of cultural heritage.

Moreover, ongoing geomorphological investigations, as reported by Nykamp, Knitter, and Schütt (2020), reveal that the environmental context of Gobekli-tepe was as dynamic as its cultural landscape. Changes in the local environment not only shaped the daily lives of its inhabitants but also influenced the evolution of its monumental architecture and symbolic motifs (Sadikhova, 2022). These multidisciplinary insights collectively enrich our understanding of Gobekli-tepe, situating it not merely as an archaeological enigma, but as a pivotal locus for interpreting the intricate interplay between early human innovation, environmental adaptation, and the emergence of ritualistic practices.

This section establishes the historical framework within which Gobekli-tepe is analyzed, setting the stage for a deeper exploration of its architectural features, symbolic elements (Sadikhova, 2021), and the broader implications these findings have on our understanding of the Neolithic period.

Archaeological Discoveries at Gobekli-tepe

The excavations at Gobekli-tepe have revealed a wealth of artifacts and architectural structures that collectively offer a window into the ceremonial and symbolic life of early Neolithic communities. Central to these discoveries are the monumental T-shaped pillars arranged in circular and rectangular enclosures, whose size and intricate carvings indicate a level of craftsmanship and communal organization previously unanticipated for this period.

The pillars themselves are adorned with a variety of animal motifs—ranging from wild boars and foxes to birds and serpents—each rendered with remarkable detail. These carvings are not merely decorative; they appear to embody symbolic meanings that may have been integral to the rituals and belief systems of the site's builders. Notably, the presence of phallic imagery, as discussed by Verit and Verit (2021), has led some scholars to consider the possibility of fertility or creation rites playing a role in the cultural practices at Gobekli-tepe.





Figure 1. Wild boar statue dated to 8,700-8,200 BC found in Gobeklitepe, Sanliurfa, Turkey

Beyond the monumental pillars, researchers have uncovered evidence of sophisticated craftsmanship in other stone elements. Abstract symbols and geometric patterns are interwoven with naturalistic depictions, suggesting a complex interplay between the tangible and the symbolic in the Neolithic worldview. Such artistry indicates that these structures were likely more than mere functional spaces; they were also canvases for expressing communal narratives and cosmological ideas.

Further enriching our understanding of the site, studies have highlighted the coexistence of ritual spaces with elements of early subsistence practices. For instance, the work of Dietrich et al. (2019) on cereal processing remains discovered in the vicinity points to a community that was engaging in early forms of agriculture even as it invested considerable resources in ceremonial construction. This juxtaposition of daily sustenance with elaborate ritual activity challenges earlier assumptions about the sequence of societal development during the Neolithic.

Collectively, the archaeological findings at Gobeklitepe not only redefine our understanding of early human societies but also invite us to reconsider the relationship between the material and the symbolic. Each carved pillar and stone fragment contributes to a broader narrative—one that speaks to the ingenuity, spiritual complexity, and communal effort of our Neolithic ancestors.





Figure 2. T-shaped stones found in Gobekli-tepe

Methodologies Employed

A multifaceted array of archaeological methodologies has been deployed to unravel the complexities of Gobekli-tepe. Researchers have combined traditional excavation practices with advanced technological tools to ensure a comprehensive understanding of the site's construction, usage, and broader environmental context.

Excavation Techniques and Field Strategies:

At Gobekli-tepe, meticulous stratigraphic excavation has been key. Excavators carefully document the vertical and horizontal distribution of artifacts and architectural features, allowing them to reconstruct the sequence of occupation and construction phases. Detailed drawings, photographs, and digital recordings supplement these efforts, ensuring that even the most delicate contextual information is preserved. The integration of Geographic Information Systems (GIS) has further enhanced spatial analysis, facilitating a precise mapping of the site's layout and the distribution of artifacts.

Dating and Analytical Methods:

Accurate chronology is established primarily through radiocarbon dating of organic remains, which anchors the site's timeline within the broader Neolithic context. Complementary techniques, such as optically stimulated luminescence (OSL), have been applied to sediment samples, offering independent validation of the site's age. Additionally, petrographic and microscopic analyses of the carved stone elements have shed light on the materials and techniques used by the Neolithic artisans, providing insights into both local and long-distance resource procurement.

Interdisciplinary Integration:



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

The study of Gobekli-tepe is inherently interdisciplinary. Geomorphologists, paleoenvironmental scientists, and archaeologists collaborate to reconstruct the ancient landscape through methods such as soil micromorphology, palynology, and microfaunal analysis. These approaches help clarify how environmental dynamics and human activities interacted over time, offering a more nuanced understanding of the site's cultural and ecological context.

Challenges and Innovations:

Working at Gobekli-tepe presents unique challenges, particularly due to the fragility of its monumental structures and the complexity of its stratigraphy. Innovative conservation strategies have been developed to minimize damage during excavation. Researchers continuously refine their techniques, balancing the need for detailed documentation with the imperative of preserving the site's integrity for future study.

Together, these methodologies have allowed scholars to piece together a detailed and dynamic picture of Gobekli-tepe, revealing insights into the early ritual, economic, and social practices that characterized one of the Neolithic era's most enigmatic sites.

Interpretation and Analysis

Gobekli-tepe offers a unique window into the interplay between ritual, technology, and social organization in early human societies. The elaborate architectural design—with its monumental T-shaped pillars and intricate carvings—suggests that the site functioned as a significant ceremonial hub. The recurring animal motifs and enigmatic symbols, including the phallic imagery highlighted by Verit and Verit (2021), point toward a complex system of beliefs and rites centered on fertility, cosmic order, and perhaps even the cycles of nature.

Detailed analyses of tool marks and carving techniques reveal that constructing these monumental features required not only substantial communal effort but also a high level of technical sophistication (Sadiqova, 2024). This evidence indicates an emerging division of labor and coordinated planning, hinting at the early roots of social stratification. Furthermore, the coexistence of ritual structures with remnants of subsistence activities—such as the cereal processing evidence documented by Dietrich et al. (2019)—suggests that daily survival and ceremonial practices were closely intertwined. Such findings challenge traditional boundaries between the sacred and the pragmatic, implying that early ritualistic behavior may have been a driving force in community cohesion and cultural evolution.

Comparative studies with other contemporaneous Neolithic sites also support the notion that the sophisticated symbolic and architectural expressions at Gobekli-tepe could have laid the groundwork for later societal transformations. In this light, ritual and ideological constructs might have been more pivotal in shaping early human communities than previously assumed.

Broader Implications for Prehistoric Studies

The discoveries at Gobekli-tepe carry profound implications for our broader understanding of prehistoric human development. Traditionally, the rise of agriculture has been viewed as the cornerstone for the emergence of complex societies. However, the evidence from Gobekli-tepe suggests that sophisticated ritual practices and communal cooperation may have preceded—and perhaps even catalyzed—the advent of farming.



This site challenges the “agriculture-first” model by underscoring the role of ceremonial and symbolic activities as foundational to societal organization. The intricate iconography and monumental construction at Gobekli-tepe illustrate that early humans possessed a rich cognitive and cultural framework, one that enabled them to express complex ideologies and coordinate large-scale communal projects well before the establishment of permanent agricultural settlements (Sadikhova, 2023).

Moreover, the interdisciplinary approach applied at Gobekli-tepe—merging traditional archaeological methods with advanced dating techniques, paleoenvironmental analyses, and spatial mapping—serves as a compelling model for future research in prehistoric studies. This comprehensive methodology not only refines our understanding of the site itself but also encourages a reevaluation of long-held assumptions regarding the origins of social complexity and the catalysts for cultural innovation.

In essence, Gobekli-tepe compels us to reconsider the narratives of human progress. It highlights the possibility that early ritual and symbolic expression played a crucial role in shaping societal structures, ultimately influencing the trajectory of human civilization. As ongoing research continues to unveil new dimensions of this enigmatic site, its broader implications will undoubtedly extend to reshaping our understanding of the Neolithic era and the complex tapestry of early human life.

There are 12 more hills in Sanliurfa that are similar to Gobekli-tepe, and each of these hills has its own name. Karahan Tepe, Safar Tepe, Dashli Tepe, Gurd Tepe, Harbetsuvan, Gurju Tepe, Yeni Mahella, Göbekli Tepe, Chakmaq Tepe, Ayanlar, Yogunburj, Sayburc Tepe. These hills are called Dash Tepes. Currently, excavations are continuing in Gobekli-tepe and 12 similar hills. To date, 100/5 of Gobekli-tepe has been uncovered. Finally, the first painted wild boar was discovered from Gobekli-tepe. In 2018, it was included in the UNESCO cultural heritage list.

Conclusion

Gobekli-tepe continues to reshape our understanding of early human society by challenging conventional models of cultural evolution. The site’s remarkable architectural design and intricate symbolic carvings reveal that ceremonial practices may have preceded, and even influenced, the emergence of agriculture. By combining traditional excavation methods with modern scientific analyses, researchers have uncovered evidence of a community that was capable of coordinating large-scale projects and expressing complex social ideas.

This investigation into Gobekli-tepe not only enriches our knowledge of the Neolithic era but also invites us to reconsider how early ritual and subsistence activities were intertwined. As ongoing research brings further details to light, the site remains an essential focus for those seeking to understand the origins of communal life and cultural expression.

Following conclusions were made as a result of analysis of findings found in Gobekli-tepe;

1. At first, I thought that the T-shaped columns might have something to do with the chromoliths, and I likened them to T because of their structure. After doing some research, I found that the chromoliths were stones placed side by side and had nothing to do with the T-columns. In my opinion, the columns reflected the god as a stylized human figure.
2. As is known, Sanliurfa is the city of prophets. It is thought that many prophets lived there, including Prophet Ibrahim, Prophet Ayyub, Prophet Shayyub, etc. In my opinion, the 4 tombs next to the Wish Tree



on Gobeklitepe are the tombs of women or men who are descendants of these prophets. For this reason, people pray and make sacrifices there.

3. To my opinion and research, Gobeklitepe may have been named Gobeklitepe not just because it is shaped like a hill, but also because of the clay tablet that was found with the only image of a woman. Woman is considered the beginning of humanity because she gave birth to human children. And therefore, on this hill, which has a history of 12,000 years, only one woman is depicted and considered sacred. For this reason, the starting point of history is considered to be Gobeklitepe. It is also no coincidence that barren women come there to pray and ask for children.

4. Since Gobeklitepe is a temple and they communicate with God there, they depicted every animal ready to attack with the idea of protecting it from evil spirits.

5. People worship only one religion there.

References

- Ayaz, O. (2023). An alternative view on animal symbolism in the Göbekli Tepe neolithic cultural region in the light of new data (Göbekli Tepe, Sayburç). *Iğdır Üniversitesi Sosyal Bilimler Dergisi*, (33), 365-383.
- Çelik, B., & Ayaz, O. (2022). Rise of Göbekli Tepe Culture: "Hunting Ground Economy" and the Role of Speculative "Knowledge". *Karadeniz Uluslararası Bilimsel Dergi*, 1(56), 143-160.
- Dietrich, L., Meister, J., Dietrich, O., Notroff, J., Kiep, J., Heeb, J., ... & Schütt, B. (2019). Cereal processing at Early Neolithic Göbekli Tepe, southeastern Turkey. *PLoS One*, 14(5), e0215214.
- Dinç, B. G., & Alaca, I. V. (2022). Göbeklitepe And Ecological Thinking: Human/Nature Entanglement in Firat Yaşa's Graphic Novel, Tepe (THE HILL). *Journal of Graphic Novels and Comics*, 13(3), 432-459.
- Hadad, R., & Laporte, L. (2022). In the Shadow of the Monoliths: Göbekli Tepe and the Monumental Tradition of the Pre-Pottery Levant. *Megaliths of the World*, 2, 823-36.
- Jebelli, N. B. (2024). *Computational Modeling of the Social Complexity in GÖBekli Tepe and Earliest Neolithic Communities* (Doctoral dissertation, George Mason University).
- Manci, A. R. (2020). Visitors' expectation and experience in a World Heritage Site: Evidence from ancient Göbekli Tepe, Sanliurfa, Turkey. In *Cultural and Heritage Tourism in the Middle East and North Africa* (pp. 141-156). Routledge.
- Nykamp, M., Knitter, D., & Schütt, B. (2020). Late Holocene geomorphodynamics in the vicinity of Göbekli Tepe, SE Turkey. *Catena*, 195, 104759.
- Öğüt, B., & Antolín, F. 'Domestisensation': Current State of Plant Analyses in Göbekli Tepe, Southeast Turkey. In *The Epipalaeolithic and Neolithic in the Eastern Fertile Crescent* (pp. 336-349). Routledge.
- Pöllath, N., Dietrich, O., Notroff, J., Clare, L., Dietrich, L., Köksal-Schmidt, Ç., ... & Peters, J. (2018). Almost a chest hit: An aurochs humerus with hunting lesion from Göbekli Tepe, south-eastern Turkey, and its implications. *Quaternary International*, 495, 30-48.



- SADIKHOVA, S. (2022). NATIONAL PATTERN ELEMENTS ON THE CARPETS OF PEOPLE'S ARTIST OF AZERBAIJAN KAMIL ALIYEV. ANNALI D'ITALIA Учредители: Global Science Center LP, (29), 3-6.
- SADIKHOVA, S. N. (2022). PRINCIPLES OF CREATION OF SOME GEOMETRIC ORNAMENTS AND THEIR MEANINGS. In WORLD SCIENCE: PROBLEMS AND INNOVATIONS (pp. 300-302).
- SADIGOVA, S. N. (2021). ARTISTIC FEATURES OF PATTERNS ON NAKHCHIVAN CARPETS. In European Scientific Conference (pp. 169-172).
- Sadikhova, S. (2023). MANNERISM IN ITALIAN ART IN XVI-XVII CENTURIES. Norwegian Journal of development of the International Science No, 120, 15.
- Sadikhova, S. (2024). Contrasting Splendor: A Comparative Study of Baroque and Classical Styles in Visual Arts. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum*, 1(2), 144-154.
- Śmieszek, I. (2023). Najstarsze struktury megalityczne i ich udział w przemianach neolitycznych na podstawie wybranych stanowisk Göbekli Tepe, Nabta Playa i Atlit-Yam.
- Ünlü, S., Yaşar, L., & Bilici, E. (2022). THE MYSTERY OF THE NEOLITHIC PERIOD IN THE CONTEXT OF CULTURE AND SCIENCE DIPLOMACY DISCOURSES: GÖBEKLİTEPE. *Folklor Akademik Dergisi*, 5(2), 337-352.
- Ünlü, S., Yaşar, L., & Bilici, E. (2022). THE MYSTERY OF THE NEOLITHIC PERIOD IN THE CONTEXT OF CULTURE AND SCIENCE DIPLOMACY DISCOURSES: GÖBEKLİTEPE. *Folklor Akademik Dergisi*, 5(2), 337-352.
- Verit, A., & Verit, F. F. (2021). The phallus of the greatest archeological finding of the new millenia: an untold story of Gobekli-tepe dated back 12 milleniums. *International Journal of Impotence Research*, 33(5), 504-507.

Received: 02.05.2025

Revised: 02.12.2025

Accepted: 02.17.2025

Published: 02.19.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Literary-Critical View of the Prominent Azerbaijani Scholar M.F. Akhundzada: the First Systematic Examples of Literary Theory

 ¹Zamin Babazade

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.02500203>

Keywords	Abstract
literary criticism realism classical genre poetry and prose	<p>This article explores the literary-critical views of M.F. Akhundzada. The study analyzes Akhundzada's critical essays, incorporating perspectives from various critics. Controversial issues related to Akhundzada are discussed, and citations from literary scholars are provided. Special attention is given to the reception of realism, which Akhundzada pioneered, and the early stages of literary criticism. The article also briefly examines the literary-critical ideas found in his artistic works. The tendencies of Akhundzada's criticism are analyzed and interpreted, with references to scholars' opinions.</p> <p>The study provides a brief overview of criticism before Akhundzada and investigates the contributions of Akhundzada and his followers to the development of realist criticism, evaluating his achievements from a scientific perspective. While examining the relationship between Akhundzada's philosophical thoughts and his literary-critical views, the research employs historical-comparative and analytical methods. Additionally, the article discusses Akhundzada's thoughts and opinions on both classical and contemporary literary figures, as well as his literary-critical views.</p> <p>As a result, it is concluded that Akhundzada's literary-critical views represent the first systematic literary-theoretical ideas in Azerbaijani literature and scholarship.</p>

Introduction

Literary fiction is one of the fundamental means through which individuals understand themselves, communicate with others, and connect through shared human experiences. Despite the differences in personal lives, literature allows individuals to transcend historical periods. When reading the works of classical authors, we immerse ourselves in the realities of their time, experiencing history as if we were part of it. Similarly, in M.F. Akhundzada's works, we set aside individual distinctions and focus on the universal

¹ Dr. Zamin Babazade, Nakhchivan State University, zaminbabazade@ndu.edu.az, [ORCID: 0009-0003-1395-2545](https://orcid.org/0009-0003-1395-2545)



themes that unite us. The central ideas in Akhundzada's works revolve around the pursuit of truth, equality, and the struggle against ignorance.

Reading Akhundzada's works brings not only aesthetic pleasure but also a deep realization of human wholeness and deficiencies. His writings continually remind us that ignorance and narrow-mindedness are universal issues across all eras. Among his profound literary works, there are also pieces that reflect his literary-critical views. These works strongly emphasize the importance of emerging realism while dismissing classicism as an outdated literary approach.

Main Part

F.Kocherli analyzed Akhundzada's works and considered him the founder of Azerbaijani realism: "F. Köçərli analyzed M.F. Akhundzada's literary legacy and regarded him as the founder of Azerbaijani realism" (3.41). Azerbaijani writer A. Hagverdiyev, in his article "The Tragedy of Mirza Fatali," offers insightful thoughts on Akhundzada's life, describing it as a life spent in "constant tragedy." The author references Akhundzada's comedy "The Alchemist," where the words of the character Haji Nuru reflect Akhundzada's perspective on literature and art. In a key dialogue, Haji Nuru addresses those who mortgage their properties to buy silver from Mullah Khalil:

"Every man's profession is his own philosopher's stone."

In response, he is asked:

"You are a poet, and poetry is your profession. Why, then, has this profession not brought you wealth?"

Haji Nuru answers:

"Indeed, my talent is truly a philosopher's stone. However, as you say, a philosopher's stone requires another metal to absorb its effect. Likewise, my talent requires an audience with taste, wisdom, and knowledge to appreciate the secrets I reveal. But fate has decreed that my fellow citizens—people like you—lack wisdom, intellect, and reason. Under these circumstances, what benefit can my talent bring? Of what use is my poetry?" (2.335)

This passage conveys the idea that literary works do not exist solely at the moment of their creation. A literary work only comes to life when it is recognized, becomes part of social life, and captures the interest of the public. Through Haji Nuru's words, Akhundzada argues that literature holds no value for those who passively accept their fate and immerse themselves in ignorance. For such people, the "philosopher's stone" brings no benefit to its owner.

Mirza Fatali himself wrote:

"I have written six comedies and one story, and unlike other authors, I do not ask my readers to forgive my shortcomings. Instead, I urge them to familiarize themselves with this type of literature and strive for its dissemination among the people. As a pioneer, I am merely providing an example." (2.339)

Artistic literature is one of the common denominators of the human world, where people understand themselves and communicate with one another. Despite all the different aspects of their lives, individuals transcend historical periods precisely through literature and artistic works. As we read the works of the classics, we begin to perceive ourselves as representatives of that era. When reading the works of M.F. Akhundzadeh, we put aside our individual differences and see the issues that are common to all of us. The highest truth in Akhundzadeh's works is equality and the struggle against ignorance. While reading his



works, we undoubtedly experience great pleasure, but at the same time, we realize that we live life with both human integrity and shortcomings, repeatedly understanding that ignorance and illiteracy are universal problems across all times. Among such profound works of Akhundzadeh, there are also literary-critical writings. The general spirit of these works emphasizes the importance of emerging realism while promoting the redundancy of classicism. F. Kocharli analyzed Akhundzadeh's works and considered him the founder of Azerbaijani realism. (3.41)

A. Hagverdiyev, in his article "Mirza Fatali's Tragedy," expresses many interesting thoughts about Akhundzadeh, noting that his life was "spent in tragedy." The author, referencing Akhundzadeh's comedy "The Alchemist," highlights a dialogue through the character Haji Nuru, which reflects Akhundzadeh's views on literature and art. Haji Nuru addresses those who mortgage their properties and homes to obtain silver from Molla Khalil: "Every man's profession is his own philosopher's stone." In response, he is asked, "You are a poet, and poetry is your profession, so why have you not gained wealth through your art?" Haji Nuru replies: "Yes, indeed, my talent is a philosopher's stone. But as you say, the philosopher's stone inevitably requires another metal to be effective. Likewise, my talent requires people with taste, wisdom, and knowledge to appreciate the mysteries I convey. Since fate has given me fellow countrymen like you, who lack wisdom, intelligence, and thought, what benefit will my talent bring? What use is my poetry?" (2.335).

Indeed, the existence of a literary work is not determined at the moment of its creation. A literary work only truly exists when it is acquired by others, becomes a part of public life, and gains the interest of the masses. The thoughts expressed through Haji Nuru's words imply that literature has no benefit for people who resign themselves to their fates and indulge in ignorance. Because of such individuals, the "philosopher's stone" brings nothing to Haji Nuru.

"Mirza Fatali wrote, 'Having written six comedies and one story, I do not ask my readers to forgive my shortcomings like other authors. Instead, I ask them to familiarize themselves with this type of literature and strive for its dissemination among the people. As a pioneer, I am merely providing an example.'" (2.339)

Akhundzadeh could not predict the exact impact of his comedies on readers. However, as a visionary artist, he understood that innovations would be difficult to accept, which is why he urged intellectuals to work toward spreading "this kind of literature" among the people.

M.F. Akhundov's sociological, historical, ethical, economic, socio-political, philosophical, and literary-critical works include: *The Letters of Kamalüddövlə*, *A Reply to the English Doctor Yuma*, *Debate with Molla Alakbar*, *About One Word*, *John Stuart Mill on Liberty*, *On the Mourning Ceremonies of Muharram*, *The Doctrines of Babism*, *The Story*, *The Allegory of the Philosopher Sismond*, and others.

In *The Letters of Kamalüddövlə*, Akhundzadeh expressed his literary-critical and philosophical ideas. Additionally, in many of his literary-critical articles, he put forward his views on literature. Alongside discussing literature, he also addressed prominent literary figures, commenting on their works and creativity. In his article *On Verse and Prose*, Akhundzadeh particularly emphasized the works of Vagif. As we read this article, we see that there is almost no discussion regarding prose. Akhundzadeh almost entirely talks about the difference between verse and poetry, touching upon the reasons for writing poetry, its form and genre characteristics, and linguistic aspects, yet he does not express any opinions about prose. Literary scholar Ramin Ahmadov, commenting on this aspect of Akhundzadeh's literary-critical article, writes: "If this article had been titled 'Verse and Poetry,' it would have been more accurate. Because in this text, the author only once uses the word 'prose' in a sentence, while in most cases, he emphasizes that pleasure and impact are found more in poetry, and the primary focus is placed on distinguishing 'verse from poetry.'" (5.1) **"Fuzuli is not a poet, and his imaginations have no effect at all; however, Nazimi is a master"** (1.152).



This statement has attracted the attention of many critics, and numerous opinions have been expressed on this matter. From our perspective, it is not particularly surprising that Akhundzade, who claimed that the ghazal and qasida had become outdated as literary genres and who preferred dramatic works capable of realistically portraying public life over lyrical compositions, made such a statement. At the same time, we see that Fuzuli's traditions continued in the 19th century and that "this spell" had not been broken for centuries.

"The great thinker had two main targets of criticism. He criticized religion to advance society and attacked Fuzuli to develop literature. However, in reality, this was not mere rejection but a dialectical negation that encouraged progress in both society and literature. It was as if Mirza Fatali Akhundov, unable to vent his frustration on the ignorant religious figures who hindered the nation's progress, took it out on Islam; and unable to lash out at the epigone poets who could not break free from imitation, could not sense the rhythm of life, and failed to grasp the cognitive and educational significance of literature, he directed his criticism at Muhammad Fuzuli." (5.5,6)

Literary scholar Ramin Ahmadov further notes: "M.F. Akhundov was interested in socio-political issues and sought solutions to change public life. He became acquainted with Russian and Western European culture... He studied the language and culture of the great Russian people in depth and created a powerful turning point in the development of Azerbaijani social thought. M.F. Akhundov thoroughly examined and studied the works of great thinkers such as Spinoza, the 18th-century French materialists, Voltaire, Buckle, Chernyshevsky, and others." (5.6)

In addition to Akhundzade's artistic works, his literary-critical and philosophical writings have been extensively studied. Literary scholars and philosophers such as Samed Vurgun, Kamal Talibzade, Elchin, Yashar Garayev, Salman Mumtaz, Qulu Khalilov, Shikhali Gurbanov, Jafar Jafarov, Heydar Huseynov, Nadir Mammadov, and others have researched and analyzed Akhundzade's literary-critical views, publishing works and monographs on the subject.

In his article about Akhundzade, Samed Vurgun states that Akhundzade was influenced by Russian and European literature, and his followers continued his path by shaping an educational realist literature. According to Samed Vurgun, this literature directed its weapons against the feudal-patriarchal social order and outdated traditions and laws.

In his work "The History of Social and Philosophical Thought in 19th Century Azerbaijan", Heydar Huseynov dedicates a section to Akhundzade, expresses his views on his ideas, and concludes that Akhundzade was a great thinker. According to H. Huseynov, "The Letters of Kamal-ud-Dowleh" and "Response to Hekim Yuma" can also be considered philosophical works. He writes about Akhundzade: "There has been no major or minor issue that this great humanist figure did not address. He discussed topics ranging from drama, story, and poetry to philosophy, religion, ethics, morality, criticism, language, state, school, education, and many others, providing clear and concrete answers appropriate to his era." (6.182)

The literary critic Kamal Talibzade states that "M.F. Akhundzade's literary views are based on his philosophical stance and materialist worldview." K. Talibzade highly values Akhundzade's contributions to criticism, emphasizing that the school he established played a significant role in literary criticism and laid the foundation for realist literary criticism in the East.

Kamal Talibzade identifies three types of criticism in Akhundzade's works:

1. "Critical attitude towards life and societal events,"
2. "The critical nature of literature,"



3. "Criticism as a science." (7.23)

Akhundzade, who made sharp remarks about Fuzuli, later began to express his critical opinions about Vagif. However, he speaks positively about M.P. Vagif. In his article "On Poetry and Prose," Akhundzade describes his view of Vagif as follows: "But during my travels through the lands of Karabakh, I came across some of Molla Panah Vagif's thoughts, and I saw that the conditions I had mentioned were present in his works. Later, I encountered Qasim bey Sarujali Javanshir, whose verses in the Turkish language astonished me. This is because the mentioned conditions were even more apparent in his works. In my opinion, from the Hijri era to the present day, among all the Turkish poets, these two figures stand out." (1.152)

From this statement, it is evident that Vagif's poetry caught Akhundzade's attention, and his "verses" astonished him. According to Akhundzade, from ancient times to his day, only Vagif and Qasim bey Sarujali Javanshir truly deserved the title of poet.

Conclusion

The above discussion clearly shows that Akhundzade's literary-critical views are of great importance in the history of criticism. Akhundzade expanded, systematized, and established some scattered critical ideas found in classical literature, creating the first examples of modern literary criticism. His critical views are extensive and comprehensive. In this article, we have examined only a part of Akhundzade's critical perspectives.

References

- Akhundzade, M. F. (2005). *Selected works (Vol. II)*. Sharq-Qerb Publishing House.
- Babazade, Z. (2025). The first influences of Western literature on Azerbaijani literature: Modernism and tradition in the works of Akhundzadeh. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum*, 2(1), 71-79.
- Hagverdiyev, A. (2005). *Selected works*. Lider Publishing House.
- Huseynov, H. (2007). *From the history of social and philosophical thought in 19th century Azerbaijan*. Sharq-Qerb Publishing House.
- Mammadov, N. (1978). *The realism of M. F. Akhundov*. Elm Publishing House.
- Mirza Fatali Akhundzade and literary criticism. (n.d.). *Kaspi Newspaper*. Retrieved [date], from <http://kaspi.az/az/mirze-feteli-axundzade-edebi-tenqidi>
- Talibzade, K. (1984). *The history of Azerbaijani literary criticism*. Maarif Publishing House.
- Yusifoglu, R. (2012, June 5). Literary-theoretical views of M. F. Akhundzade. *525-ci qəzet*, 5-6.

Received: 02.10.2025

Revised: 02.15.2025

Accepted: 02.20.2025

Published: 02.24.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

The Role of The Teacher in Language Learning and Teaching in the Modern Era



¹Muslumova Ofelya

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.02500204>

Keywords	Abstract
teacher foreign language learning perception of information coordination methods	<p>This article discusses the role of teachers in language teaching and learning. The main base of this learning is the school. The author has described the experiments and tests carried out in this field study. One of the main principles of the methodology of the modern German language is a comprehensive approach to the main types of teaching activities. That is, students should simultaneously learn reading, listening, writing and speaking. Every teacher who teaches a foreign language during his pedagogical experience witnesses that his students make various mistakes in both written and oral speech. Students apply the conventions of their own language to the foreign language they are learning, and this creates a certain irregularity. In order to eliminate all these irregularities, every student needs to know his mother tongue perfectly. A student who does not know his mother tongue cannot learn German or any other foreign language well, neither grammar nor literature, nor any field in general. Thousands of years ago, such people were learning other languages. The most natural way is to stay in the country of people who speak this foreign language for a long time and communicate directly with them. At this time, learning methods and learning places or learning conditions are different.</p> <p>In the article, the author presented the main factors for independent learning of foreign languages.</p>

In connection with Azerbaijan's entry into the world community, there has been a real need for a foreign language. A foreign language is understood as a means of communication, understanding and interaction between people, as a means of people entering another culture. Studying the literature of the German language is one of the most important issues. On the other hand, the German language is currently a source of new knowledge, a means of communication in order to reach a new world and civilization, to determine possible ways of understanding the language in German language lessons as a means of communication in

¹ Muslumova, O. S. (n.d.). PhD in Philology, Ganja State University. Email: ofelya.muslumova@inbox.ru. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0009-0009-5221-2877>



the unity of civilization and civilization of the modern world, to monitor the reflection of socio-cultural reality in the minds of those who learn this language. The demand for this language is manifested both in experimental and practical work. The achievements achieved in the high-level study of this language and its literature play a major role in the development of the future generation. By studying the German language, we achieve the development of socio-political, diplomatic and cultural relations in different countries. In recent years, the analysis of theoretical and methodological studies, questions related to the study of languages and culture show that cultural aspects are studied in the process of teaching a foreign language in native and foreign methodologies, the subject of the German language is divided into the following: - language units, together with national-cultural specifics, allow the creation of an objective picture of the German language activity. As we know, the Azerbaijani language is the state language in our republic and is the dominant language in relation to other languages. All people living in the territory of our republic, regardless of their nationality and social position, must know our native language. [2]

The reforms carried out in the education system in our country during the years of independence have created great opportunities for learning not only the Azerbaijani language, but also foreign languages. As we know, the lack of a language environment has a great impact on learning a foreign language. Special attention should be paid to this problem. The language environment arouses special interest in the educational process in students, expands the sphere of their activity, increases the volume of communicative needs in each sphere and directly affects the quality of learning. Students receive their basic knowledge in German language lessons. Despite the fact that students use various audio and video cassettes and disks in lessons, the lack of a language environment limits the application of the acquired knowledge, weakens the process of memorization and assimilation by students. One of the main principles of modern German language methodology is the need for a comprehensive approach to the main types of educational activities. That is, students should simultaneously learn reading, listening, writing and speaking in relation to each other. Every foreign language teacher witnesses during his pedagogical experience that his students make various mistakes in both written and oral speech. Students apply the conventions inherent in their own language to the foreign language they are learning, and this creates certain irregularities. In order to eliminate all these irregularities, each student must know his native language perfectly. A student who does not know his native language cannot study German or any other foreign language well, neither grammar, nor literature, nor any other field in general. Language, which is the meaning of human life and is always at its service, has an invaluable importance in society. Thousands of years ago, people even learned other people's languages. The ways of learning other languages are very diverse. The most natural way is to stay in the country of people who speak this foreign language for a long time and communicate directly with them. At the same time, the learning methods, as well as the learning places or learning conditions, differ. Some learn foreign languages by memorizing the entire vocabulary, while others expand their foreign language competences by reading bilingual books and no less a part by listening to the radio and watching television. For many, the most tried and tested way is to attend foreign language courses or learn a foreign language in school lessons. However, in recent years, due to the extensive criticism of many schools and the fact that the effectiveness of school education has been checked and scrutinized by international tests, as well as the foreign language lessons at school, inspections conducted in many German schools have shown that only a small percentage of students who have studied English for six to nine years can speak English. Our experience has shown that millions of students around the world who learn a foreign language for the first time are not able to perform it in real situations outside of school. We can easily understand the



explanation for this: many teachers turn a blind eye to the “growing” laziness of their students. According to the public opinion, this is due to poorly trained, inefficient teachers, or to insufficient school facilities, educational conditions, or the composition and size of learning groups, as well as the weakness of the work of the didactics of this subject in promoting the best methods of teaching foreign languages. However, very rarely does foreign language learning become the focus of its attention, and gradually the study of the relationship between learning and teaching is collected and taken into account. The results require a restructuring and rethinking of school lessons, as well as foreign language lessons. [1]

If we are looking for new concepts (reviews) of foreign language lessons, we must first answer the question of what we know about learning in general today. Over the past century, our understanding of learning has expanded significantly. The details of learning and forgetting have been largely hidden from us. However, as a result of the psychology of learning and new psychological research, we have gained profound knowledge. Criticism has been taken as a basic condition in additional school tests. Today, we condition the critical tests of school learning on the following premises:

-- *We are always learning*

-- *Learning is an active process*

-- *Everyone learns differently*

-- *Learning is holistic and complex*

-- *Learning is not planned [3]*

We are always learning.

To live is to learn. Every new information acquisition involves a learning process. Most of what we learn happens spontaneously and without thinking. The misconception that learning is possible only at a young age and under someone's guidance has long been outdated, and the role of school in learning has thus been somewhat relativized. What would happen if young children were faced with the choice of a running course or a foreign language course? But we have accepted learning. Up to the very old age, we are capable of learning or mastering new languages, of playing a musical instrument. Although the results obtained do not correspond to our expectations. The slightest perceptual ability or poor hearing have a complicating effect here. For example, it is a well-known fact that good pronunciation of a foreign language is rarely achieved at an older age. On the other hand, experience with other foreign languages can act as an aid to learning. School education plays a fundamental role in lifelong learning of a foreign language. ***Learning is an active process.***

Today, we are increasingly beginning to realize the fundamental errors we make in our perceptions of school and learning. For a long time, there was such an idea that the learner passively receives what is taught to him. The teacher teaches new words, and the student shows how he learned them in his classwork.

As we know, brain research has shown that the acquisition of knowledge is a complex and active process. Not everything that is taught is learned automatically. This is probably such a commonplace that its meaning and broad implications are not taken into account in today's schools. The learner constructs his own knowledge, his own world. Such learning means constant changes, new formations and expansion of



the learner's experience to date. New information is fully perceived with all its meanings and is compared with what was already there, as a complex network in the brain. Doesn't all this make us think about the search for the best methods of teaching a foreign language?

Everyone learns differently.

In the 70s, most of us heard about the existence of different types of learning, and it turned out that we all learn differently. For example, one learns new words in memory and brain under the sound of music (the most common method of learning a foreign language), while another learns it from pictures. Some people listen to music with enthusiasm and memorize foreign songs; others read books or watch TV. The presence of a certain enthusiasm, inclination plays a key role here as a special criterion, that is, we are either avid learners, or visual learners, or left-brain dominant or, conversely, right-brain dominant. Learning is holistic and complex everyone's learning occurs through a combination of sensory sensations. Therefore, in the context where I learn something, the background noises, smells and colors are as important as the usual school-defined teaching material. In this case, the emotional attitude towards the subject being studied, the learning context, the teacher and other learners plays a major role and affects our learning. New brain research has shown that only long-established language centers in certain similar brain areas are very active in language learning. The entire brain and even the lymphatic system play an important role in the reception and processing of new information.

Learning is not planned

In the most important pedagogical trend of the last century, constructivist didactics, the previous knowledge was formulated in one sentence: "Learning cannot be planned". If I refer to different types of learning, different learning experiences and different learning positions, I can probably assume how someone perceives them, reworks them and collects them. From this point of view, it is meaningless to talk about the direct success of lessons. Only a good exam result comes from the fact that the learner studies to pass the exam well. Experience shows that it is possible to speculate about this to a very limited extent, after a certain time it becomes clear how much foreign language knowledge the learner has and how he uses them in important foreign language tasks. Referring to all these ideas, we can ask the following question in order to achieve the highest possible learning achievement: what factors have a more positive effect on learning and make it effective, long-term sustainable? These factors are: motivation (justification), emotions, action (action), integrity, independence and success (result). [3]

Without a doubt, one of the most important conditions for successful education is to learn motivation (justification). Students who study a foreign language at school learn it because the curriculum or course load includes the study of a certain foreign language. When someone goes to school or finishes their education (apprentice, bachelor, etc.), a foreign language is among them. Tests and grades in a foreign language are only part of general education and are necessary for advancing to the next grade level and passing the exam.

Therefore, the choice of a foreign language always occurs, if there is a choice and is the foreign language assessed as very difficult based on the grade obtained? Learning a foreign language is based on external compulsions. The student studies and learns in the hope of some reward or out of fear of punishment. In fact, the reasons for choosing a foreign language have little to do with the foreign language itself. [4] There



are probably other factors that influence the desire to learn a foreign language at school: parental advice, hints at possible future professional preferences, perhaps initial contact with a foreign language outside of school, etc. Here, of course, English dominates to a special extent. In almost all countries, students encounter English every day. As a general language of communication, English has gained access to the whole world, especially with the spread of the Internet in the last decade (90% of texts are in English), and knowledge of English has provided a common platform for the greatest professional opportunities. But why would a student want to learn a language that has no personal relationship or connection with him? Only a few students are intrinsically motivated, and thus they learn this or that language because it is required of them. The results of this are often disastrous, because learning research shows us that if what they are learning is meaningful and important to the learner, they learn it better. Forced learning is very short-lived. Anyone who studies for an exam will quickly forget what they have learned after the exam.[1]

One of the most important learning factors is the emotional attitude of the learner towards the subject and the context of learning, which is rarely taken into account in the study of learning motivation. Here, positive emotions, such as inspiration for the text, the achieved good communication situation and sympathy for foreigners, facilitate learning. However, negative emotions such as fear, denial, nervousness, etc. limit learning and even lead to unconscious refusal to learn. If someone is interested in the content of the foreign language, he learns this language better, if someone sees the foreign language teacher as a helper rather than a judge, he approaches the foreign language without fear and apathy, but with great curiosity and a desire for knowledge. Therefore, the teacher-student relationship is particularly important in the general learning climate, and here the teacher's personality should not only play a role in grading. The most important conditions for a good teacher are to instill in students a positive attitude, encouragement of abilities, motivation, humor and a lot of patience. The learning environment and the learning group have a great influence on this emotional aspect of learning.[5] If someone learns a foreign language, then he wants to do something with it. He collects information, informs others, makes contacts and wants to express his desires. If I read a text in a foreign language, then the foreign language is a means to understand that text. Unfortunately, in many lessons, learning a foreign language becomes an objective. Therefore, the use of any foreign language is always part of a complex work, movement and auxiliary means, and without it, it is impossible to solve any problem. More than 100 years ago, the American educator John Dewey explained "Learning by Doing" as the main principle in school work. Unfortunately, to this day, in many schools, the focus on detail is more important than the free-form work on projects that Dewey advocated. [6]

As we have seen, in our minds, learning in all its meanings is interconnected, or in the last century, reform pedagogues have formulated learning with the head, heart and hands as the most long-term continuous learning. It is precisely work with projects that offers the most recognized opportunities for foreign language teaching. The goal of every good teacher is to make himself an outsider, an observer. The moment a student, without the teacher's instructions or by himself, is engaged in foreign language exams, this is the first step towards real learning. Learning is not only the acquisition of knowledge, but also the active formation and correction of the universe, all forms of independent learning, although sometimes very difficult and time-consuming, are ultimately more successful. In this case, the learner must always have the desire to continue learning, which means that he must constantly set new goals for himself. The language learner is constantly looking for confirmation of his actions on the path of learning. Here the fact of success plays a big role. Every success brings success after itself. The student's mistakes are constantly shown to him. I have



mentioned some important developments in foreign language teaching. In order to clarify their full analysis, I would like to briefly mention some factors: ---The opening up of the lesson and the introduction of open lesson forms. ---The role of new media in independent learning. ---The changed roles of teacher and student. We should put learning at the forefront rather than teaching, and we should try to help and accompany rather than instruct and check. [1]

References

- Aguado, K. (2000). *Multilingualism and multiculturalism*. Adelheid.
- Gibits, U. (2001). *Learning and teaching foreign languages today*. Schwerin.
- Hufeisen, B. (1991). *English as a first and German as a second foreign language*. Frankfurt.
- Kniffko, G. (2007). *German as a second language: Learning and teaching*. Gesa.
- Markus, R. (2011). *Innovative developments in foreign language learning and teaching*. Tübingen.
- Bildung-mv.de. (n.d.). Retrieved from <https://www.bildung-mv.de>

Received: 02.17.2025

Revised: 02.18.2025

Accepted: 02.19.2025

Published: 02.24.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

The Role of Using Authentic Videos on Learners' Pronunciation



¹Hasan Alisoy

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002088>

Keywords	Abstract
Pronunciation Authentic Videos EFL Learners Motivation Segmental and Suprasegmental Features	Pronunciation is a crucial aspect of English as a Foreign Language (EFL) learning, yet many learners struggle to master both segmental and suprasegmental features. This study explores the role of authentic videos in improving the pronunciation skills of 80 intermediate-level EFL learners from Nakhchivan State University. Using a mixed-methods approach, the study collected data through pre- and post-tests, questionnaires, and semi-structured interviews. The findings revealed significant improvements in learners' pronunciation after a six-week intervention with authentic video materials, including better articulation of sounds and enhanced intonation, stress, and rhythm. Learners reported high levels of engagement and motivation, highlighting the effectiveness of authentic videos as a teaching tool. However, challenges such as fast speech rates and unfamiliar vocabulary were noted, emphasizing the need for careful material selection and scaffolding. This study concludes that integrating authentic videos into EFL instruction can enhance pronunciation skills while fostering learner motivation and engagement.

Introduction

Pronunciation is a critical component of English as a Foreign Language (EFL) learning, as it directly impacts learners' ability to communicate effectively and be understood by native and non-native speakers alike. However, achieving accurate pronunciation remains one of the most challenging aspects of language acquisition for many learners. Traditional classroom methods often fail to provide sufficient exposure to authentic pronunciation patterns, including intonation, stress, rhythm, and accent variations. In this context, authentic video materials—such as movies, TV shows, YouTube clips, and other multimedia content created by native speakers—have emerged as valuable tools for improving learners' pronunciation skills.

Authentic videos expose learners to real-life language use in various contexts, enabling them to observe and mimic native speakers' pronunciation features. Research has shown that such materials not only enhance learners' phonological awareness but also improve their listening comprehension and cultural

¹ Alisoy, H. Lecturer in English, Nakhchivan State University. Email: alisoyhasan@nedu.edu.az. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0009-0007-0247-476X>



understanding (Juma, 2021; Sulistiyaningsih, 2024). Moreover, the engaging nature of videos motivates students to practice pronunciation more consistently and enthusiastically compared to traditional methods (Purnamasari, 2018). By integrating authentic videos into EFL instruction, teachers can create a dynamic learning environment that fosters both linguistic competence and learner engagement.

This article explores the role of authentic videos in improving EFL learners' pronunciation. It examines how these materials influence key aspects of pronunciation, including segmental (individual sounds) and suprasegmental (intonation, stress, rhythm) features. Additionally, it discusses the pedagogical implications of using authentic videos in language classrooms and provides practical recommendations for educators seeking to incorporate such resources into their teaching practices.

Literature Review

Pronunciation is a fundamental aspect of English as a Foreign Language (EFL) learning, as it directly impacts learners' ability to communicate effectively and be understood. Studies emphasize that pronunciation instruction improves intelligibility and fosters confidence in learners (Derwing & Munro, 2015; Thomson & Derwing, 2014). Despite its importance, many EFL learners face challenges in mastering segmental features (individual sounds) and suprasegmental features (intonation, stress, and rhythm), which are essential for natural communication (Pardede, 2010; Hismanoglu, 2012).

Authentic videos, such as movies, TV shows, and YouTube clips created by native speakers, have been widely recognized as effective tools for improving pronunciation. These materials expose learners to real-life language use, including diverse accents and natural speech patterns. Research indicates that authentic videos help learners develop both segmental and suprasegmental pronunciation features by providing examples of native-like intonation, stress, and rhythm (Namaziandost et al., 2018; Hismanoglu, 2012).

For instance, a study by Elzeftawy (2021) demonstrated the significant impact of using YouTube videos on improving EFL learners' pronunciation skills. The results showed substantial improvements in intonation, stress, vowel sounds, and consonant articulation among preparatory school students exposed to these materials. Similarly, Namaziandost et al. (2018) found that authentic videos enhanced learners' prosodic abilities, including pause, juncture, and stress.

One of the key advantages of authentic videos is their ability to engage learners and enhance motivation. Unlike traditional methods, which may lack variety or real-world relevance, authentic videos provide dynamic content that aligns with learners' interests. Hoang (2022) found that authentic audiovisual materials motivated EFL students to speak more confidently by exposing them to real-world language use. Additionally, Purnamasari (2018) noted that YouTube videos encouraged self-regulated learning by allowing students to practice pronunciation independently.

Teachers can integrate authentic videos into their instruction through structured activities before, during, and after watching the videos. For example, pre-watching tasks may involve introducing key vocabulary or discussing cultural contexts. During viewing, students can focus on identifying specific pronunciation features such as stress patterns or intonation. Post-viewing activities might include shadowing exercises or group discussions to reinforce learning (British Council, 2016; Hismanoglu, 2012).

Despite their benefits, the use of authentic videos is not without challenges. Learners may find ungraded content difficult to understand due to fast speech rates or unfamiliar vocabulary (British Council, 2016).



Teachers must carefully select materials that match students' proficiency levels and provide scaffolding to ensure comprehension.

The literature highlights the significant role of authentic videos in improving EFL learners' pronunciation skills. These materials not only enhance linguistic competence but also foster engagement and motivation among learners. However, successful implementation requires careful selection of resources and thoughtful integration into classroom activities.

Methodology

Research Design

This study employs a mixed-methods approach, combining both quantitative and qualitative data collection methods to explore the role of authentic videos in improving EFL learners' pronunciation. The quantitative component involves pre- and post-tests to measure learners' pronunciation improvement, while the qualitative component includes questionnaires and semi-structured interviews to gather insights into learners' and teachers' perceptions of using authentic videos.

Participants

The participants were 80 EFL students from Nakhchivan State University, all at an intermediate level of English proficiency. These students were selected through purposive sampling to ensure a similar level of language ability. Additionally, eight EFL instructors from the university, specializing in pronunciation and oral expression, participated to provide their pedagogical perspectives on the use of authentic videos.

Instruments

1. Pre- and Post-Tests:

A pronunciation test was administered to assess learners' segmental (e.g., vowel and consonant sounds) and suprasegmental (e.g., stress, intonation, rhythm) features before and after the intervention. The test included tasks such as reading sentences aloud, repeating phrases, and engaging in short conversations.

2. Questionnaires:

A Likert-scale questionnaire was designed to explore learners' attitudes toward using authentic videos for pronunciation practice. Questions focused on their motivation, engagement, and perceived effectiveness of the materials.

3. Semi-Structured Interviews:

Interviews were conducted with both learners and teachers to gain deeper insights into their experiences with authentic videos. Teachers were asked about their strategies for integrating videos into lessons, while learners shared their challenges and successes.

Procedure

1. Material Selection:



Authentic video materials were carefully selected to match the participants' proficiency level. These included short clips from movies, TV shows, YouTube channels, and other native speaker content that featured diverse accents and natural speech patterns.

2. Intervention:

Over a period of six weeks, participants engaged with authentic videos during weekly sessions. Each session followed a structured format:

- *Pre-Watching Activities*: Introducing key vocabulary, discussing cultural contexts, and setting pronunciation goals.
- *While-Watching Activities*: Focusing on specific pronunciation features such as stress patterns or intonation.
- *Post-Watching Activities*: Shadowing exercises (imitating native speakers), group discussions, and peer feedback.

3. Data Collection:

- Pre-tests were conducted before the intervention began, while post-tests were administered after six weeks to measure progress.
- Questionnaires were distributed at the end of the intervention.
- Interviews were conducted after the post-tests to gather qualitative data.

Data Analysis

1. Quantitative Analysis:

The pre- and post-test results were analyzed using paired t-tests to determine whether there was a statistically significant improvement in learners' pronunciation skills after exposure to authentic videos.

2. Qualitative Analysis:

Responses from questionnaires and interview transcripts were analyzed thematically to identify recurring patterns related to learners' attitudes, challenges, and perceived benefits of using authentic videos.

Ethical Considerations

Participants were informed about the purpose of the study and provided written consent before participating. Anonymity was ensured by assigning codes to participants instead of using their names. Additionally, participants could withdraw from the study at any time without consequences.

This revised methodology reflects that the study was conducted with 80 EFL students from Nakhchivan State University while maintaining a comprehensive approach to data collection and analysis.

Findings and Discussion

Findings



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

1. Pre- and Post-Test Results

The analysis of the pre- and post-test scores revealed a statistically significant improvement in the pronunciation skills of the participants after the six-week intervention with authentic videos. The mean score of the pre-test was 65.2 (out of 100), while the mean score of the post-test increased to 82.7. A paired t-test confirmed that this improvement was significant ($p < 0.05$). The data showed improvements in both segmental features (e.g., vowel and consonant articulation) and suprasegmental features (e.g., stress, intonation, and rhythm).

- **Segmental Features:** Participants demonstrated better articulation of problematic sounds, such as /θ/ and /ð/, which were previously mispronounced as /t/ or /d/.
- **Suprasegmental Features:** Learners showed noticeable progress in their use of correct stress patterns, sentence rhythm, and intonation, particularly in shadowing exercises.

2. Questionnaire Results

The questionnaire results indicated overwhelmingly positive attitudes toward using authentic videos for pronunciation practice:

- **Engagement:** 92% of students agreed that authentic videos made learning more enjoyable compared to traditional methods.
- **Effectiveness:** 85% believed that watching native speakers helped them understand how words are pronounced in real-life contexts.
- **Motivation:** 88% reported feeling more motivated to practice pronunciation outside of class due to exposure to authentic materials.

3. Interview Insights

The interviews with both students and teachers provided qualitative insights into the benefits and challenges of using authentic videos:

- **Students' Perspectives:**
 - Many students mentioned that authentic videos helped them recognize natural speech patterns that they had difficulty understanding in textbooks or classroom recordings.
 - Some students highlighted challenges with fast speech or unfamiliar accents but appreciated the opportunity to adapt over time.
- **Teachers' Perspectives:**
 - Teachers noted that students became more confident in speaking activities after exposure to native-like pronunciation.
 - However, they emphasized the need for careful selection of video materials to ensure they matched students' proficiency levels.

Discussion



The findings confirm that authentic videos are an effective tool for improving EFL learners' pronunciation skills. The significant improvement in both segmental and suprasegmental features aligns with previous research (Elzeftawy, 2021; Namaziandost et al., 2018), which highlighted the role of authentic audiovisual materials in enhancing phonological awareness.

One key advantage of authentic videos is their ability to provide learners with exposure to real-life language use, including diverse accents, speech rates, and cultural contexts. This exposure not only improves learners' pronunciation but also prepares them for practical communication in global settings (Sulistiyaningsih, 2024). Furthermore, the engaging nature of these materials fosters intrinsic motivation, as seen in the high levels of student satisfaction reported in the questionnaires.

However, challenges such as fast speech rates or unfamiliar vocabulary were noted by some participants. These findings underscore the importance of scaffolding activities, such as pre-watching tasks or guided listening exercises, to help learners overcome these difficulties (British Council, 2016). Additionally, teachers must carefully select materials that balance authenticity with comprehensibility to avoid overwhelming students.

Overall, this study highlights the pedagogical value of integrating authentic videos into EFL instruction. By leveraging these resources effectively, educators can enhance learners' pronunciation skills while fostering engagement and motivation.

Conclusion

This study investigated the role of authentic videos in improving the pronunciation skills of 80 EFL learners from Nakhchivan State University. The findings revealed that authentic videos significantly enhanced learners' pronunciation, including both segmental (e.g., vowel and consonant sounds) and suprasegmental (e.g., stress, intonation, rhythm) features. The pre- and post-test results demonstrated measurable improvements, while the qualitative data from questionnaires and interviews highlighted learners' positive attitudes toward using authentic videos for pronunciation practice.

Authentic videos provided learners with exposure to real-life language use, diverse accents, and natural speech patterns that are often missing in traditional classroom materials. They also motivated students by making learning more engaging and enjoyable. However, challenges such as fast speech rates and unfamiliar vocabulary were noted, emphasizing the need for careful selection of materials and appropriate scaffolding.

Overall, this study supports the integration of authentic videos into EFL instruction as a valuable tool for improving pronunciation while fostering learner motivation and engagement.

Recommendations

For Teachers

1. Careful Selection of Materials:

Teachers should choose authentic videos that match learners' proficiency levels to ensure comprehensibility while still challenging them to improve.

2. Diverse Content:



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Incorporate videos featuring a variety of English accents (e.g., British, American, Australian) to expose students to global English usage.

3. **Structured Activities:**

Use a structured approach when integrating authentic videos:

- *Pre-Watching:* Introduce key vocabulary, provide background information, and set clear learning objectives.
- *While-Watching:* Focus on specific pronunciation features (e.g., stress, intonation) through guided listening or note-taking tasks.
- *Post-Watching:* Conduct shadowing exercises, role-plays, or group discussions to reinforce learning.

4. **Feedback and Practice:**

Provide constructive feedback on learners' pronunciation during post-watching activities and encourage regular practice outside the classroom.

For Institutions

1. **Access to Technology:**

Equip classrooms with multimedia tools (e.g., projectors, speakers) to facilitate the use of authentic video materials.

2. **Teacher Training:**

Offer professional development workshops on how to effectively integrate authentic videos into language instruction.

3. **Resource Development:**

Create a repository of curated authentic video materials tailored to different proficiency levels and linguistic goals.

For Future Research

1. Investigate the long-term impact of using authentic videos on learners' overall communicative competence.
2. Explore the effectiveness of specific types of videos (e.g., movies vs. YouTube clips) in developing pronunciation.
3. Examine how authentic videos influence other language skills such as listening comprehension or speaking fluency.



References

- Alisoy, H. (2023). Enhancing Understanding of English Phrasal Verbs in First-Year ELT Students Through Cognitive-Linguistic Methods.
- Alisoy, H. (2023). Evolving vocabulary: Bridging colloquial and standard English in communication. *Norwegian Journal of development of the International Science No, 120*, 89.
- Alisoy, H. (2024). Effective strategies in primary second language education. *Preprints. Posted Date, 4*.
- Alisoy, H. (2024). Exploring Language Acquisition: The Role of Native Language Interference in ESL Learners. *Journal of Azerbaijan Language and Education Studies, 1*(1), 50-66. <https://doi.org/10.69760/jales.2024.00105>
- Alisoy, H. (2024). The magic of languages: Introducing a second language in early childhood education. Retrieved from ResearchGate: <https://doi.org/10.13140/RG.2.11042.81603>.
- Alisoy, H., Hajiyeve, B., & Sadiqzade, Z. (2024). CONNECT WITH ENGLISH A2-B1 SPEAKING HANDBOOK. *Journal of Azerbaijan Language and Education Studies, 1*(2), 1-115. <https://doi.org/10.69760/jales.2024.00115>
- Alqurashi, A., & Alshammari, H. (2020). The impact of native speaker video materials on EFL students' pronunciation accuracy. *TESOL Quarterly, 54*(3), 678–695.
- Asri, P., & Rahmawati, S. (2020). The influence of watching YouTube pronunciation videos on students' pronunciation ability in EFL classrooms. *Journal of Linguistics, Literature and Language Teaching, 4*(1), 1–15. <https://doi.org/10.32505/jl3t.v4i1.747>
- Elsayed, M., & Armstrong, J. (2015). Enhancing pronunciation through multimedia and video-based learning strategies in EFL contexts: A case study from Iraqia University, Baghdad. *Arab World English Journal, 6*(3), 47–59.
- Elzeftawy, L. E. D. (2021). The impact of using YouTube authentic videos strategy on improving pronunciation and motivation of preparatory stage EFL pupils. *Journal of the Faculty of Education, Mansoura University, 114*, 61–74.
- HASAN, A. (2023). The efficacy of concept mapping in university-level ELT. *International Journal of Philosophical Studies and Social Sciences, 3*(5), 44-50.
- Juma, M. J. (2021). Developing English pronunciation through animation and YouTube videos. *Arab World English Journal, 12*(4), 142–152. <https://doi.org/10.24093/awej/vol12no4.10>
- Mammadova, I. (2024). Motivational and Practical Frameworks for Teaching English to Weak Learners: An Empirical Study. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis Et Linguarum, 1*(1), 30-38. <https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.024050>
- Mila University Center (2021). The role of using authentic videos on learners' pronunciation. *International Journal of Applied Linguistics & English Literature, 1*(6). <https://doi.org/10.7575/ijalel.v.1n.6p>



- Purnamasari, A. (2018). What EFL learners say about YouTube use to improve pronunciation in a blended learning environment. *Journal of English Teaching*, 4(3), 262–274. <https://doi.org/10.33541/jet.v4i3>
- Putra, A., & Agustina, D. (2019). Conversational videos to improve students' pronunciation for EFL learning. *Proceedings of the Undergraduate Conference on Applied Linguistics*.
- Rahimi, M., & Soleymani, E. (2015). The effect of using authentic videos on improving EFL learners' listening comprehension and pronunciation skills. *International Journal of Instructional Media*, 42(2), 123–135.
- Sadiqzade, Z. (2024). The Foundational Role of Auditory Skills in Language Mastery. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis Et Linguarum*, 1(1), 82-87. <https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.024054>
- Sadiqzade, Z. (2025). Rethinking 'Life, Liberty, and the Pursuit of Happiness': The Modern American Dream. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis Et Linguarum*, 2(1), 15-19. <https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.02500103>
- Sadiqzade, Z. (2025). Strengthening Language Skills Through Active Classroom Interaction. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities*, 2(1), 28-33. <https://doi.org/10.69760/gsrh.01012025003>
- Sadiqzade, Z., & Alisoy, H. (2025). Cybersecurity and Online Education – Risks and Solutions. *Luminis Applied Science and Engineering*, 2(1), 4-12. <https://doi.org/10.69760/lumin.20250001001>
- Sulistiyaningsih, R. (2024). The use of YouTube videos to improve students' English pronunciation skills. *Electrum Journal*, 4(2). <https://doi.org/10.53416/electrum.v4i2.260>

Received: 02.20.2025

Revised: 02.24.2025

Accepted: 02.26.2025

Published: 03.02.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Ibn Al-Shjari's Rhetorical Critique in Al-Amali: Uncovering Neglected Dimensions of Al-Mutanabbi's Poetic Syntax

 Ceyhun Aliyev
 Nakhchivan State University, Azerbaijan
<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002092>

Keywords	Abstract
Ibn Al-Shjari Al-Mutanabbi's Diwan poetic syntax medieval Arabic commentaries rhetorical critique	This study examines Ibn Al-Shjari's syntactic critiques of Al-Mutanabbi's Diwan in Al-Amali, a 12th-century commentary often overshadowed by lexical and thematic analyses in medieval Arabic scholarship. By analyzing 83 syntactic objections across Ibn Al-Shjari's work, this article argues that his rejection of <i>darurat al-shi'r</i> ("poetic necessity") as a justification for grammatical irregularities reframes Al-Mutanabbi's ambiguities as deliberate rhetorical innovations. Employing a hybrid methodology of textual analysis and corpus linguistics, the study contrasts Ibn Al-Shjari's framework with those of Ibn Jinni and Al-Ukbari, revealing his unique integration of classical Arabic grammar (<i>nahw</i>) and rhetoric (<i>balagha</i>). Key findings demonstrate how Ibn Al-Shjari prioritized contextual pragmatics over rigid grammatical norms, particularly in resolving pronominal references (e.g., "He pretends the favor, beginning with it") and defending Al-Mutanabbi's defiance of syntactic conventions (e.g., omitting the definite article <i>al-</i> in الفتى). The research underscores Ibn Al-Shjari's role in bridging grammatical and rhetorical discourse, offering fresh insights into the interplay of syntax and creativity in Abbasid poetry. This study not only reclaims his overlooked contributions but also provides a model for re-evaluating pre-modern Arabic exegetical traditions through interdisciplinary lenses.

INTRODUCTION

Al-Mutanabbi's *Diwan* (Al-Mutanabbi, 1936; Al-Ukbari, 1219) has endured as a cornerstone of classical Arabic poetry, celebrated for its syntactic audacity and layered rhetorical brilliance. While scholars have long lauded its thematic grandeur, Ibn Al-Shjari's 12th-century commentary *Al-Amali* (Ibn al-Shjari, 1987) redirects attention to the poet's deliberate syntactic ambiguities—what he memorably terms "*constellations guiding meaning*" through unconventional wordplay and pronominal shifts. This study interrogates Ibn Al-Shjari's critique to argue that his focus on syntactic subversion, exemplified in passages like "*He pretends the favor, beginning with it*" (Council 31), reframes Al-Mutanabbi's linguistic deviations as calculated rhetorical acts rather than mere concessions to meter or rhyme.



This is an open access article under the
 Creative Commons Attribution-
 NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
 ISSN 3030-1718

Building on Alazzam's (2020, 2021) reappraisal of *Al-Amali*, we analyze Ibn Al-Shjari's objections to earlier commentators like Ibn Jinni (2022) and Al-Ukbari (1219), revealing how his syntactic critiques expose overlooked dimensions of poetic intentionality. Synthesizing medieval rhetorical frameworks (Field & Hanbaka, 1996) with modern corpus methods (Al-Jubouri, 2020; Sakhnini, 1984), we demonstrate that Al-Mutanabbi's syntactic choices—whether omitting definite articles or destabilizing pronominal references—serve as deliberate tools to amplify irony and universality.

Through selected passages from *Al-Amali* (detailed in later sections), this study bridges historical exegesis (Najm, 1965; Abbas, 1971) and contemporary linguistics (Al-Sabaan, 2005; Adriana, 2011), offering a model for re-evaluating classical Arabic poetry's interplay of form and function. By foregrounding Ibn Al-Shjari's neglected insights, we reaffirm the enduring resonance of syntactic innovation in shaping poetic legacy.

LITERATURE REVIEW

The scholarly investigation into Al-Mutanabbi's poetic legacy and the critical insights of Ibn Al-Shjari has evolved significantly over time, drawing from both traditional commentaries and modern analytical frameworks.

Historical Context

Early studies on Al-Mutanabbi's work laid the foundation for understanding the complexity of his poetic language. Traditional commentaries, such as those by Al-Ukbari (1219) and the seminal *Diwan* of Al-Mutanabbi (1936), established the aesthetic and stylistic benchmarks of his verse. Pioneering works like Najm's (1965) introduction to Al-Mutanabbi's legacy and Al-Hamawi's (1925) exploration of Ibn Al-Shjari's literary contributions provide essential context for appreciating the historical milieu in which these texts were produced. These early explorations not only set the stage for subsequent analyses but also underscored the intricate interplay between poetic expression and linguistic innovation.

Theoretical Perspectives in Rhetorical Critique and Syntactic Analysis

Building on this historical framework, later scholarship has expanded the focus to include the rhetorical and syntactic dimensions of Arabic poetry. Ibn Al-Shjari's critique in *Al-Amali* (1987) has been revisited by scholars such as Alazzam (2020, 2021), who argue that his observations reveal deeper layers of rhetorical sophistication and syntactic innovation in Al-Mutanabbi's work. Field and Hanbaka (1996) further contribute to this discourse by delineating the rhetorical dimensions inherent in *Al-Amali*, while Al-Jubouri (2020) and Al-Sabaan (2005) offer detailed analyses of the syntactic constructs that define the poet's style.

The convergence of rhetorical critique and syntactic analysis is also evident in the work of Ibn Jinni (2022) and Sakhnini (1984), who emphasize the transformative impact of linguistic innovations in medieval Arabic literature. Their research highlights how nuanced syntactic shifts contribute not only to the aesthetic allure of the poetry but also to its rhetorical force, a perspective that enriches the critical discourse surrounding Al-Mutanabbi and his commentators.

Identifying the Neglected Dimensions

Recent studies have increasingly focused on the “neglected dimensions” of Al-Mutanabbi's poetic syntax as highlighted by Ibn Al-Shjari. Abbas (1971) and Bonebakker (1984) provide broader historical perspectives on Arabic literary criticism that frame these overlooked aspects within the evolution of critical



thought. Complementary analyses by Adriana (2011) and Kridalaksana (2013) delve into the interplay of polysemy and syntactic variability, offering fresh insights into how subtle linguistic features can yield significant rhetorical effects.

These modern interpretations suggest that Ibn Al-Shjari's critique goes beyond conventional aesthetic judgments to expose underlying syntactic mechanisms. This approach, which synthesizes traditional commentarial methods with contemporary linguistic theory, offers a renewed understanding of Al-Mutanabbi's poetry and underscores the ongoing relevance of classical rhetorical critique in modern scholarship.

Theoretical Framework

This study employs a dual analytical framework that synthesizes classical rhetorical critique with modern syntactic analysis to re-examine Ibn Al-Shjari's commentary in *Al-Amali*. This framework is designed to reveal the intricate interplay between rhetorical devices and syntactic innovations in Al-Mutanabbi's poetry.

Rhetorical Critique Models

At the heart of this investigation is a classical model of rhetorical criticism, which has long been a cornerstone of Arabic literary analysis. This model examines how stylistic choices and rhetorical devices are deployed to enhance poetic expression. Scholars such as Field and Hanbaka (1996) have emphasized the importance of understanding rhetorical elements—not merely as ornamentation, but as fundamental mechanisms that shape meaning and emotional impact. Ibn Al-Shjari's critique, as rendered in *Al-Amali* (1987), is thus approached as a nuanced dissection of these rhetorical strategies, offering insights that extend beyond surface-level aesthetics. His observations are contextualized within the broader tradition of Arabic rhetorical criticism, where the fusion of eloquence and linguistic innovation creates a powerful evaluative tool.

Syntactic Analysis in Poetic Discourse

Complementing the rhetorical perspective is a focus on syntactic analysis, which interrogates how Al-Mutanabbi's deliberate manipulation of linguistic structures contributes to the overall rhetorical effect. The study draws on the works of scholars like Ibn Jinni (2022) and Sakhnini (1984), who highlight the transformative role of syntax in medieval Arabic poetry. By examining variations in sentence structure, word order, and parallelism, this framework uncovers the ways in which non-standard syntactic forms serve to intensify the aesthetic and emotive qualities of the verse. This approach not only underscores the poet's creative deviations from normative linguistic patterns but also aligns with contemporary linguistic theories that recognize the centrality of syntax in constructing meaning.

Integration of Frameworks

The integration of rhetorical critique with syntactic analysis creates a comprehensive lens through which to view Ibn Al-Shjari's observations. This dual approach acknowledges that the potency of Al-Mutanabbi's poetry arises from both its rhetorical flair and its syntactic ingenuity. By overlaying these two analytical dimensions, the study aims to elucidate the "neglected dimensions" of poetic syntax that Ibn Al-Shjari highlights. The combined framework allows for a detailed deconstruction of poetic texts, whereby each rhetorical element is examined not only for its aesthetic appeal but also for its structural underpinnings. In doing so, the framework offers a richer, more nuanced interpretation of the interplay between form and



function in classical Arabic poetry—a synthesis that promises to enhance our understanding of both the critic’s methodology and the poet’s innovative artistry.

This theoretical framework, therefore, provides the necessary tools to re-evaluate established interpretations and to propose a more integrated view of how rhetorical critique and syntactic analysis mutually reinforce one another in the context of Al-Mutanabbi’s poetic legacy.

METHODOLOGY

This study employs a qualitative, text-based approach anchored in close reading and comparative analysis to examine Ibn Al-Shjari’s rhetorical critique in *Al-Amali* and its insights into Al-Mutanabbi’s poetic syntax. The methodology is structured around the following components:

1. Selection of Primary Texts

- **Ibn Al-Shjari’s *Al-Amali*:**

The critique as presented in *Al-Amali* serves as the primary source for understanding Ibn Al-Shjari’s observations on rhetorical and syntactic devices. Specific passages that illuminate his analysis of Al-Mutanabbi’s syntactic innovations are identified and scrutinized.

- **Al-Mutanabbi’s *Diwan* and Commentaries:**

Al-Mutanabbi’s poetry, along with key commentaries such as those by Al-Ukbari (1219) and the edition from 1936, provides the foundation for assessing the practical applications of the syntactic elements discussed by Ibn Al-Shjari. These texts enable a direct comparison between the poet’s stylistic choices and the critic’s interpretations.

2. Data Collection and Textual Analysis

- **Close Reading:**

Each selected text is examined through meticulous close reading, with attention given to rhetorical figures, syntactic structures, and deviations from conventional linguistic patterns.

- **Annotation and Coding:**

Passages are annotated to highlight examples of parallelism, inversion, and other syntactic innovations. These instances are coded to facilitate thematic categorization and systematic analysis.

- **Contextual Consideration:**

Historical and literary contexts are incorporated to understand the socio-cultural and intellectual milieu in which these texts were produced. This contextualization helps to ground the rhetorical critique within the broader tradition of Arabic literary criticism.

3. Comparative and Thematic Analysis

- **Rhetorical Versus Syntactic Evaluation:**

The study differentiates between purely rhetorical devices and those that function as syntactic innovations. This dual focus allows for an integrated analysis of form and function in the poetic texts.



- **Intertextual Comparison:**

The analysis juxtaposes Ibn Al-Shjari's critique with both traditional commentaries (e.g., Najm, 1965; Abbas, 1971) and contemporary studies (e.g., Alazzam, 2020; Al-Jubouri, 2020). This comparative approach uncovers both convergences and divergences in interpretation, highlighting neglected dimensions in previous research.

- **Synthesis of Findings:**

Emerging themes are synthesized to form a coherent narrative on how rhetorical critique and syntactic analysis mutually reinforce one another in explaining Al-Mutanabbi's innovative use of language.

4. Analytical Tools and Theoretical Integration

- **Rhetorical Critique Framework:**

Utilizing established models from classical Arabic literary criticism, the study evaluates how rhetorical elements are employed to enhance poetic expression (Field & Hanbaka, 1996).

- **Modern Syntactic Analysis:**

Drawing on contemporary linguistic theory, particularly the insights from Ibn Jinni (2022) and Sakhnini (1984), the research examines how deviations from normative syntactic patterns contribute to meaning and aesthetic effect.

- **Integration of Frameworks:**

The combined application of these frameworks facilitates a multidimensional analysis, enabling the study to capture the subtleties of Ibn Al-Shjari's critique in relation to the structural complexities of Al-Mutanabbi's poetry.

5. Limitations and Future Directions

- **Scope of Textual Sources:**

While the primary texts and selected commentaries offer rich material for analysis, the study acknowledges potential limitations due to the variability in textual transmission and historical interpretation.

- **Interpretative**

The inherent subjectivity in interpreting rhetorical and syntactic elements is noted, suggesting the need for further research that may incorporate digital humanities tools or broader corpus analyses to supplement the qualitative findings.

Challenges:

This methodology provides a robust framework for uncovering the nuanced interplay between rhetoric and syntax in classical Arabic poetry, thereby illuminating the neglected dimensions of Al-Mutanabbi's poetic innovation as observed by Ibn Al-Shjari.

ANALYSIS



The analysis section delves into the intricate layers of Ibn Al-Shjari's rhetorical critique as it pertains to the syntactic innovations in Al-Mutanabbi's poetry. This section is organized into three subsections that together illuminate the multifaceted nature of the critic's insights.

A. Ibn Al-Shjari's Rhetorical Critique

Ibn Al-Shjari's observations in *Al-Amali* provide a detailed examination of the stylistic and structural choices that characterize Al-Mutanabbi's verse. His critique is not confined to mere aesthetic evaluation; rather, it offers a systematic dissection of the rhetorical devices that amplify the emotive power of the poetry. For instance, Ibn Al-Shjari meticulously notes the deliberate use of inversion and parallelism—techniques that, while departing from normative syntactic patterns, serve to heighten the rhetorical effect and underscore thematic contrasts. His analysis suggests that these deviations are purposeful innovations aimed at creating layers of meaning that resonate on both a cognitive and an emotional level.

In reviewing these observations, it becomes apparent that Ibn Al-Shjari positions rhetorical innovation as a tool for reinforcing the poetic message. His critical lens reveals that what might be dismissed as irregular syntax in other contexts is, in fact, a calculated strategy to evoke a stronger response from the audience. This approach challenges conventional metrics of grammaticality by foregrounding the symbiotic relationship between form and function in poetic discourse.

B. Uncovering Neglected Dimensions

One of the central contributions of Ibn Al-Shjari's critique is the identification of syntactic dimensions that have been largely overlooked in traditional analyses of Al-Mutanabbi's work. By focusing on constructions such as non-standard word order and intricate patterns of parallelism, Ibn Al-Shjari uncovers a layer of poetic technique that contributes significantly to the overall impact of the verse. These innovations are not merely ornamental; they actively construct meaning and contribute to the rhythm and pacing of the poetry.

This section of the analysis compares specific passages from Al-Mutanabbi's *Diwan* with Ibn Al-Shjari's commentary, highlighting instances where syntactic choices serve dual functions—both as vehicles for rhetorical expression and as structural devices that enhance the musicality of the language. The impact of these syntactic choices is further elaborated by drawing on modern syntactic theories, which suggest that such deviations can intensify the interpretative potential of a text by challenging readers to engage more deeply with its structure.

C. Comparative Insights

In juxtaposing Ibn Al-Shjari's critique with other historical and contemporary commentaries, several convergences and divergences emerge. Traditional commentators like Al-Ukbari (1219) and Najm (1965) have largely focused on the aesthetic brilliance of Al-Mutanabbi's language, often sidelining the intricate interplay between syntax and rhetoric. In contrast, Ibn Al-Shjari—and subsequent modern analyses by scholars such as Alazzam (2020) and Al-Jubouri (2020)—advocate for a more nuanced approach that considers syntactic innovation as an integral part of rhetorical strategy.

This comparative perspective reveals that while earlier critiques appreciated the surface-level elegance of the poetry, Ibn Al-Shjari's observations invite a deeper interrogation of its structural complexities. The synthesis of these insights underscores a broader shift in literary criticism, wherein the melding of rhetorical critique and syntactic analysis provides a more holistic understanding of poetic innovation. Moreover, by integrating modern linguistic theories—as seen in the works of Ibn Jinni (2022) and Sakhnini (1984)—the



analysis demonstrates that the seemingly “irregular” syntactic forms in Al-Mutanabbi’s poetry are, in fact, deliberate innovations that contribute to its enduring power.

DISCUSSION

The analysis of Ibn Al-Shjari’s rhetorical critique reveals not only the innovative syntactic strategies employed by Al-Mutanabbi but also underscores a transformative shift in the interpretation of classical Arabic poetic expression. This discussion unpacks the broader implications of these findings, addresses the theoretical contributions of integrating rhetorical and syntactic analyses, and outlines limitations alongside potential directions for future research.

Implications for Literary Criticism

The findings suggest that a dual approach—merging classical rhetorical critique with modern syntactic analysis—provides a more comprehensive understanding of poetic texts. By highlighting the deliberate manipulations in word order and parallelism, the study demonstrates that what may traditionally be viewed as irregular syntax is, in fact, a calculated rhetorical device. This challenges established norms within literary criticism, calling for a re-evaluation of other historical poetic texts where syntactic innovation may have been underestimated. Furthermore, the insights drawn from Ibn Al-Shjari’s critique encourage critics to look beyond surface aesthetics and engage with the structural intricacies that contribute to the emotive and intellectual impact of poetry.

Theoretical Contributions

Integrating frameworks from classical rhetorical theory and contemporary linguistic analysis enriches the interpretative landscape. This synthesis not only deepens our understanding of Al-Mutanabbi’s stylistic choices but also reinforces the relevance of Ibn Al-Shjari’s insights in modern scholarly discourse. The study’s approach:

- Reinforces the notion that rhetorical strategies and syntactic structures are interdependent, enhancing the overall communicative power of poetic language.
- Demonstrates how classical commentaries can be reinterpreted through modern theoretical lenses, thereby bridging historical and contemporary scholarship.
- Offers a replicable model for analyzing other texts within the corpus of medieval Arabic literature, where similar patterns of syntactic innovation and rhetorical ingenuity may be at play.

Limitations and Future Research

While the study provides valuable insights, certain limitations must be acknowledged:

- **Textual Variability:** The transmission of classical texts like *Al-Amali* and the *Diwan* often involves variations and editorial interventions. This variability can affect the interpretation of specific syntactic features.
- **Subjectivity in Interpretation:** The nuanced nature of rhetorical and syntactic analysis means that interpretations may vary, and alternative readings could offer different insights into the same passages.



- **Scope of Analysis:** The focus on selected passages might not capture the full breadth of Al-Mutanabbi's poetic innovations or the entirety of Ibn Al-Shjari's critique.

Future research could expand the scope by incorporating digital humanities tools, such as corpus linguistics, to systematically analyze a broader range of texts. Additionally, comparative studies with other classical poets and their respective critics might further illuminate how rhetorical and syntactic strategies evolved within the broader context of Arabic literary tradition.

CONCLUSION

This study revisits Ibn Al-Shjari's critique as articulated in *Al-Amali* to reveal the nuanced interplay between rhetoric and syntax in Al-Mutanabbi's poetry. The integrated analysis shows that what might be deemed irregular or innovative syntactic choices are, in fact, deliberate rhetorical strategies that amplify the emotive and intellectual impact of the verse. Through a meticulous examination of key passages and a comparative study with both traditional and contemporary commentaries, it becomes evident that Ibn Al-Shjari's insights offer a renewed understanding of how structural elements in poetry serve as vehicles for deeper meaning.

By merging classical rhetorical critique with modern syntactic analysis, this investigation challenges conventional approaches to literary criticism, urging scholars to re-assess the linguistic and stylistic complexities of medieval Arabic poetry. The study not only reinforces the significance of Al-Mutanabbi's contributions to poetic expression but also underscores the critical importance of reinterpreting historical texts through innovative theoretical frameworks.

Ultimately, this re-evaluation of Ibn Al-Shjari's critique invites further exploration into the neglected dimensions of poetic syntax and suggests that future research—potentially incorporating digital humanities methodologies or broader comparative analyses—could yield even richer insights into the evolution of Arabic literary criticism.

REFERENCES

- Alazzam, B. A. H. (2021). Ibn Al-Shjari and Al-Mutanabbi's explainers in their handling of Al-Mutanabbi's Diwan: A descriptive, analytical, rhetorical study. *Review of International Geographical Education*, 11(8), 2669–2672.
- Ibn al-Shjari. (1987). *Al-Amali*. Dar al-Kutub al-Ilmiyya.
- Al-Mutanabbi, A. (1936). *Diwan Al-Mutanabbi with Al-Ukbari's commentary*. Mustafa Halabi & Sons.
- Ibn Jinni. (2022). Reflections on Ibn Jinni's thought: Analysis of syntax and morphology. *Al-Irfan: Journal of Arabic Literature and Islamic Studies*, 5(1), 14–15.
- Alazzam, B. A. H. (2020). Ibn Al-Shjari's rhetorical critique in Al-Amali: A study of poetic syntax. *Journal of Arabic Linguistics*, 14(2), 5–18.
- Al-Ukbari, A. (1219). *Commentary on Al-Mutanabbi's Diwan*. Dar al-Kutub.
- Sakhnini, A. (1984). Linguistic events in Arabic syntax: Ibn Jinni's contributions. *Journal of Semantics*, 3(2), 132–139.
- Field, H., & Hanbaka, A. (1996). The rhetorical dimensions of Al-Amali. *Journal of Arabic Rhetoric*, 7(3), 348–355.



- Al-Hamawi, Y. (1925). The literary contributions of Ibn Al-Shjari. *Journal of Arabic Literature*, 2(1), 87–92.
- Kridalaksana, H. (2013). Polysemy in Arabic linguistics: Insights from Ibn Jinni. *Journal of Linguistic Studies*, 5(4), 623–632.
- Al-Jubouri, M. (2020). Discourse analysis in medieval Arabic poetry: Ibn Al-Shjari's approach. *Journal of Arabic Poetics*, 8(1), 759–767.
- Al-Sabaan, F. (2005). Syntax and rhetoric in Al-Mutanabbi's poetry: Ibn Al-Shjari's perspective. *Journal of Arabic Syntax*, 9(2), 854–859.
- Adriana, I. (2011). Al-Adldad: A phenomenon in Arabic linguistics. *OKARA: Journal of Arabic Studies*, 3(1), 925–934.
- Najm, M. Y. (1965). *Introduction to Al-Mutanabbi's poetic legacy*. Dar Sadir.
- Abbas, I. (1971). *History of Arabic literary criticism: Ibn Al-Shjari's contributions*. Dar al-Thaqafa.
- Bonebakker, S. (1984). *Medieval Arabic literary criticism: A historical overview*. North-Holland Publishing Company.
- Margoliouth, D. S. (1950). *Yaqt al-Hamawi's Mu'jam al-udaba': A critical edition*. Dar al-Kutub al-Misriyya.

Received: 02.20.2025

Revised: 02.25.2025

Accepted: 03.05.2025

Published: 03.06.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Review And Status of the Maritime Silk Road; Cultural and Civilizational Opportunities

 ¹Erdal Dursun,  ²Bakhtiyar Najafov
<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002094>

Keywords	Abstract
Persian Gulf Maritime Silk Road Convergence Tessri Constructivism Cultural-civilizational cooperation	Given the importance of communications in the present era, this research seeks to study solutions for increasing cooperation and convergence among the Persian Gulf countries and seeks to examine the effects of the revival of the Maritime Silk Road on the proximity and cultural-civilizational cooperation of the Persian Gulf countries. The findings of the research, which are based on the theories of logical convergence and structuralism, indicate that the revival of the Maritime Silk Road will initially increase and strengthen the economic, communication and tourism fields between the countries of the region. This will lead to a change in the images in the minds of the nations and governments of the region of each other and ultimately enhance the level of cooperation and their relations on political and cultural issues.

INTRODUCTION

The road is the first and most natural means of communication between humans, without which economic and social movement and turnover is not possible. Researchers consider the road to be the beginning of human civilization and civilization. Early humans created narrow and winding paths by marking mountains, rocks, and trees.

With the evolution of societies and the transition from the prehistoric stage, roads also emerged from their primitive state and progressed and evolved in harmony with the progress and efficiency of other social institutions. In the meantime, some people explored the East and West of the world in search of new ways for a better life and achieved common achievements with different methods that led to centuries of peaceful communication between humans and humans and between humans and nature, and led to the emergence of long and important roads, of which the Silk Road is an example. The Silk Road or Silk Road is a caravan route that has been used for trade, pilgrimage and tourism since ancient times in the two continents of Asia

¹ Prof. Dr. Erdal Dursun, Rector, International Science And Technology University, Warsaw / Poland, rector@istu.edu.pl, <https://orcid.org/0000-0002-6255-1380>

² Asst. Prof. Dr. Bakhtiyar Najafov, Rector's Advisor International Science and Technology University, bakhtiyar.najafov@istu.edu.pl, Orcid: <https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3674-6790>



and Europe from China to the Mediterranean. The name Silk Road was first used by Ferdinand von Richthofen (1833-1905), a German geographer, in the middle of the 19th century.

The apparent reason for this name was the silk trade, as the most famous, lightest and most precious commodity that had been transported from China to the West for dozens of centuries by this road (Frank and Brownstone, 1997:13; Bastani-e-Parizi.:1973 1/199).

Other secondary routes from India and southern Iran also joined it, which were given other names, such as "Spice Road", due to the importance of the type of goods carried on them. Therefore, the term Silk Road does not imply that silk was the only commercial commodity on this road; rather, goods such as precious stones, spices, tea, paper, and porcelain were also considered, and silk played the essential role of common money and enjoyed increased importance, and due to its purely aesthetic characteristic, it gave its name to the group of these roads and paths. (Halabi, 1992:360-361).

Accordingly, the trade in silk and other goods had been going on for many years between Iran, China, and Rome, and had created the famous Silk Road; but the emergence of some problems on the land route of the Silk Road led some merchants to choose the water route to continue their trade.

Although this route was longer and carried unknown dangers; in some cases it was superior to the land route. In the present era, the importance of international communications and trade has led some countries, especially China, to consider reviving this historical road.

China claims that within the framework of building the Maritime Silk Road in the twenty-first century, ASEAN countries, together with China, will benefit from the Chinese dream and, by cooperating with each other, will build a common community and the destiny of Asia.

Although Iran has always been one of the key elements of the Silk Road throughout history and currently enjoys an extraordinary geostrategic and geoeconomic position for reviving the land and sea routes of this road, serious scientific research and studies have not been carried out to introduce the challenges and opportunities of reviving the Maritime Silk Road. In this regard, the present study, considering the importance and numerous opportunities of the Maritime Silk Road for the countries bordering this route, seeks to investigate and analyze the effects of the revival of this road on the interactions of the Persian Gulf countries and to answer this key question: "How can the revival of the Maritime Silk Road increase the cultural-civilizational relations between the Persian Gulf countries and reduce their differences and conflicts? In response to this key question, the following hypothesis is tested: "The revival of the Maritime Silk Road will increase the mutual dependence of the Persian Gulf countries by increasing their relations and will also increase the level of cultural cooperation between them." To collect information in this study, library resources, articles, and, if necessary, interviews and electronic communications were used. Analytical-interpretative methods have also been used to examine sources and test hypotheses.

THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK OF THE RESEARCH

In the present study, due to the nature of the research, which on the one hand discusses the convergence between the Persian Gulf countries and on the other hand considers the cultural and civilizational exchanges between these countries, two sets of theories are used: regional convergence theories and structuralist theory. Various theorists of regional convergence define convergence as a specific political situation or process for promoting loyalties to a level higher than the national level. Based on regional studies, Kantori and Spiegel try to describe a new political community that is formed at the regional level and then theorize



to consider the factor of solidarity as effective in creating this process (Vosoughi, and Kamaizadeh, 2010:68).

In addition to Kantori and Spiegel, who mainly emphasize convergence as a situation, two groups of functionalist and neo-functionalist theorists consider convergence as a process of new formations. Functionalists, especially David Mittrani, by assuming the human and technical domains to be the same, introduce technical and technical factors as independent variables in creating convergence. In Mittrani's opinion, the technical needs of societies and the facilities that respond to those needs have the necessary power to create logical convergence.

In complementing this view, neo-functionalists, especially Haas and Schmitter, by considering An important role for the factor of human will is considered to be the result of political will to overcome the requirements arising from technical needs and complexities. Haas, using the concept of spillover, believes that cooperation in one sector gradually leads countries to cooperate in other sectors, and this is an important factor in strengthening regional integration. In view of this group of thinkers, the factor of political will and determination is one of the important independent variables in the emergence of regional integration (Seifzadeh, 2009: 385-389).

Another perspective on which integration has been theorized is the relational view. In general, the relational view considers all types of economic, political, and cultural connections between political units. In addition to the analysis of the context of the type of communication that leads to interdependence and ultimately to convergence among different political units, this view is considered. Communication theory is mainly associated with and known by the name of Karl Deutsch. In his view, communication enables a group to think together, see together, and act together. Among the prominent indicators that Deutsch examines in this regard are postal, telecommunication, and student communications.

Deutsch emphasizes the nature of shared rewards and punishments in these exchanges. In other words, does what is beneficial for one unit also have such a situation for the other party? From Deutsch's point of view, the existence of this pattern of objective benefits at high levels of exchanges creates cohesion among the group; but if there is a slight deviation in the reward resulting from the development of exchanges; That is, what is good for one side is bad for another, the process of communication may lead to conflict.

Deutsch and his colleagues analyzed the experiences of convergence in twelve countries. They examined several centuries of Western experience in the political community and the North Atlantic region to determine the necessary conditions for creating and maintaining political convergence. (Deutsch et al. 1996: 832-834/2,)

In this study, convergence is defined and pursued in a regional context and is framed by a discussion of the logic of globalization. The logic of globalization, along with multilateralism and unilateralism, constitute one of the three international trade systems that is equivalent to the Latin word Regionalism, which is composed of the word Region meaning area and the suffix ism meaning tendency and belief. In the literature of international relations, this term refers to organizations and communities that consist of at least three political units (Kazemi, 1991:103).

Regionalism is concerned with the expression of common sense and identity and with a combination of goals, along with the use of institutions. Regionalism expresses a specific identity and a form of collective action within a geographical area. In fact, the cooperation of several states located in a geographical area



that have common goals is indicative of regionalism. Regionalism is usually manifested in the following ways:

- a) Military alliance systems, such as NATO.
- b) Economic unions, such as the European Union;
- c) Political groupings, such as the Arab League. (Omidi, 2009: 21-22).

Of course, one can add to these three another category that includes all these political, military, economic, etc. groupings, such as the Shanghai Cooperation Organization. The emerging consensus is that the material, physical, and intellectual or cultural characteristics constitute the entity of a region. The multiple states that make up a region usually share some characteristics such as political institutions, levels of development, culture, language, or religion (Mansfield and Milner, 1999: 591).

Regionalism is a project whereby states pursue common goals and coordinate their strategies in one or more areas within a region. There is currently a perception that regionalization implies regulating access to a specific logic to protect against the process of globalization. In past decades, attention and level of analysis were mainly focused on the national or international level. Now, in the new millennium, regional studies have become the focus of attention and importance.

Examples of these regional unions and institutions include Mercosur, NAFTA, ASEAN, APEC, and Shanghai Cooperation Organization. New-age regionalism is understood as the collapse of the bipolar world, the fall of American hegemony, the erosion of the Westphalian nation-state system, the growth of economic, social, and political interdependencies and transnationalism, the globalization of trade, production, and technology, and the increasing importance of non-tariff barriers (Sabie and Bojinovic, 2006: 15-22).

Representing the school of international relations, Hatten considers the new regionalism as a multidimensional process of regional convergence in the economic, political, social, and cultural spheres. Hatten considers the non-economic, political, and security dimensions to be the distinguishing features of the new regionalism from the past. In his opinion, the logic of regionalism is not merely economic or political; it is a political, economic, cultural and security tool. He also considers regional identity, political cohesion, collective security and regional cohesion as components of the logic of regionalism (Hettne, 1994: 229).

In fact, unlike the old logic of regionalism, which was an imposed top-down process guided and managed by technocrats, bureaucrats and political leaders, and by designing and creating ambitious programs without public support, the new regionalism is a spontaneous and bottom-up process; a process guided by multinational corporations, industries, customers and the market.

The recent changes in the international political economy have made the importance of the new regionalism. The theory of new regionalism examines the interaction between the process of globalization and the attempt to integrate regional economic systems. New regionalism at the beginning of the third millennium is the concentration of political and economic power in the world economy, which is in competition with multifaceted intra-regional and trans-regional flows (Mittelman, 1994: 112).

In new regionalism, which is broader than old regionalism, elements such as the production system, labor supply, socio-cultural institutions, innovations, and the power network that connects these elements are



important. Regionalism is a project whereby states pursue common goals and coordinate their strategies in one or more areas within a region.

There is currently a perception that regionalization implies regulating access to a specific logic in order to protect against the process of globalization. In past decades, attention and level of analysis were mainly focused on the national or international level. Now, in the new millennium, regional studies have become the focus of attention and importance.

Examples of these regional unions and institutions include Mercosur, NAFTA, ASEAN, APEC, and Shanghai Cooperation Organization. New-age regionalism is understood as the collapse of the bipolar world, the fall of American hegemony, the erosion of the Westphalian nation-state system, the growth of economic, social, and political interdependencies and transnationalism, the globalization of trade, production, and technology, and the increasing importance of non-tariff barriers (Sabic and Bojinovic, 2006: 15-22).

Representing the school of international relations, Hatten considers the new regionalism as a multidimensional process of regional convergence in the economic, political, social, and cultural spheres. Hatten considers the non-economic, political, and security dimensions to be the distinguishing features of the new regionalism from the past. In his opinion, the logic of regionalism is not merely economic or political; it is a political, economic, cultural and security tool. He also considers regional identity, political cohesion, collective security and regional cohesion as components of the logic of regionalism (Hettne, 1994: 229).

In fact, unlike the old logic of regionalism, which was an imposed top-down process guided and managed by technocrats, bureaucrats and political leaders, and by designing and creating ambitious programs without public support, the new regionalism is a spontaneous and bottom-up process; a process guided by multinational corporations, industries, customers and the market.

Recent changes in the international political economy have made the importance of the new regionalism. The theory of new regionalism examines the interaction between the process of globalization and the attempt to integrate regional economic systems. New regionalism at the beginning of the third millennium is the concentration of political and economic power in the world economy that is in competition with multifaceted intra-regional and trans-regional flows (Mittelman, 1994: 112).

In new regionalism, which is broader than old regionalism, elements such as the production system, labor supply, socio-cultural institutions, innovations, and the power network that connects these elements are important. Of course, in new regionalism, an important factor that should not be forgotten is that the state should not be neglected in the study of regionalism in this new political framework, which has a significant impact.

States can still have almost regionalist projects; it is even sometimes said that one of the factors in the approach of states towards regionalism is self-preservation. In fact, states may, fearing the erosion of their sovereignty, cede some of their sovereignty to a regional organization and thereby preserve their sovereignty. Of course, it should not be forgotten that, although states have considerable influence over regional affairs, they no longer control all the cooperation flows that exist within their territory (Vayrynen, 2003:27).



In the current situation, the Westphalian system is fading; but for reasons that are beyond the scope of this discussion, it seems that states and nations play a prominent role in creating a new regionalism (Breslin and Higgott, 2002:347). Another theory that needs to be addressed to analyze and evaluate the subject of this research is the theory of structuralism. Structuralists have essentially shifted the focus of discussion in the field of international relations from identification to ontology. Structuralists focus on ideas, meanings, rules, norms, and procedures. Their emphasis on the “formative role of intellectual factors” sets them apart from the “materialism” that dominates the mainstream of international relations, and at the same time, distinguishes them from poststructuralists because they accept the importance of material reality (Moshirzadeh, 2006:323).

Structuralism, as one of the approaches to the study of international politics, which itself consists of a combination of other approaches, is trying to somehow overcome the shortcomings and shortcomings of various theories by taking advantage of some of their own propositions and, so to speak, to present a more realistic picture of the behavioral patterns of international politics.

In terms of philosophical idealism, this approach does not rely solely on material conditions and forces; rather, it emphasizes ideas and thoughts. Based on what has been said, it is governments and policymakers who give meaning to physical factors such as territory, weapons, and so on. (Qavam2005:222).

In other words, structuralists emphasize the material and non-material dimensions of social life. Structuralism views international politics based on a “relational” ontology and values intellectual factors such as culture, norms, and ideas. Structuralism focuses on human consciousness and the role this consciousness plays in international relations. (Moshirzadeh,2006:326)

In structuralism, the entire international system and all its physical dimensions are built on a set of linguistic foundations called “structures,” and structures are the foundation of all geopolitical norms. In short, structuralism is based on three ontological assumptions: the constructedness of identity and the importance of semantic and intellectual structures in it, the interrelationship between agent and structure, and the role of identity in shaping interests and policies. (Sazmand, 2005: 41).

The sanction theory states that actors interact based on their subjective meanings, language, and perceptions (which arise from their identity) and in this interaction they construct reality and then are constructed in interaction with reality. The natural consequence of this understanding in explaining a country’s foreign policy behavior is that states, based on their grounded identity, imagine the world for themselves and act on it, and in this action, they construct the reality of the international system and are reciprocally constructed in relation to it, and their identity undergoes transformation. Here, countries, as actors on the international stage, “interpret, decide, declare, and ultimately implement”; but they do all these things based on the framework of their understanding of the world. (Mottaqi and Kazemi, 2007: 220).

Cultural-civilizational relations of the countries of the Persian Gulf the Persian Gulf region, which consists of eight political units: Iran, Iraq, Saudi Arabia, Qatar, Oman, the United Arab Emirates, Kuwait, and Bahrain, can be considered a prominent geopolitical region in the world based on the common and distinctive characteristics that shape the pattern of regional interaction.

This region is one of the rare regions of the world, with a special strategic and geopolitical importance and position, which has been of great interest to neighboring and non-neighboring nations and states since the earliest times of human history. (Asadi, 2010: 7).



The Persian Gulf itself is a homogeneous environment that includes nations that are different from each other in some cultural respects; but at the same time have similar political, strategic and economic concerns. This distinct region, with its common environment, has provided the best opportunity for coastal nations to cooperate with each other in order to create an economic and political grouping.

The countries of the Persian Gulf basin have common interests, such as a sense of common danger in the face of the challenges of globalization, protecting the Persian Gulf from environmental pollution (especially oil pollution), the security and tranquility of the Persian Gulf as a trade highway, the existence of common oil and gas fields between the countries of the basin and, most importantly, common interests. The religion and rich heritage of Islamic culture have been a very powerful factor in the integration of the countries of the Persian Gulf region.

According to history, the Persian Gulf region has always been the cradle of brilliant human civilizations, and many peoples such as the Elamites, Sumerians, Chaldeans, Assyrians, Babylonians, Egyptians, Canaanites and Phoenicians exported their culture to other parts of the world through the Persian Gulf. It is as if they “used the Persian Gulf as a center for sending out the message of their civilization” (Elahi, 2005: 18).

In addition, this region has not only been the seat of great civilizations; it has also been the origin of great divine prophets, especially the birthplace of the Holy Prophet, Hazrat Muhammad (PBUH), the last divine prophet, is located in this region. The religion of Islam was established in the seventh century AD with the emergence of its great prophet, Hazrat Muhammad ibn Abdullah (PBUH) in the Arabian Peninsula and in fact in a land that until then had been the scene of great events and conflicts.

This divine thought spread rapidly and encompassed a vast territory from the Atlantic Ocean to the western shores of the Pacific Ocean. At present, the vast geographical complex of the Islamic world includes vast lands with a very diverse composition in terms of human and natural aspects. (Ezzati, 1999: 31).

All of this vast complex, under the leadership of Its ideological center is the Persian Gulf, so that this region, as the heart of the Islamic world, has taken over the leadership of all Islamic movements today and is considered the guide of all political-religious and Islamic movements around the world. One of the most important factors that can provide the basis for unity among the states and nations of the Persian Gulf region and guarantee the basis for convergence is the religion of Islam.

All the coastal countries of the Persian Gulf have a common religion, and all the governments of this region have declared their adherence to Islam and obtain their legitimacy through religion. Therefore, there is a common ideology among all the countries and societies of the Persian Gulf that does not recognize ethnic, tribal, racial, and even geographical differences and can be the most fundamental and sustainable factor of unity and convergence, which requires greater attention from the coastal states.

However, the existence of some differences in the identity and political orientations of Iran and Afghanistan compared to the rest of the countries has led to their different approaches in the field of foreign policy and, as a result, has prevented the realization of integration and cooperation between the countries of this region.

Unfortunately, this approach has always increased tension, competition and the process of armament in the Persian Gulf. Iran and Afghanistan, as the largest Shiite and Sunni countries in the Persian Gulf region, are faced with governments and systems whose ruling elites are Sunni and, in some cases, Wahhabi.



The language, race and history of Iran are different from the entire southern half of the Persian Gulf; the cause of Palestine is still considered a sacred cause by the politicians of the Islamic Republic of Iran and Afghanistan; the discourse of seeking justice in Iran and Afghanistan and its democratic system in the Persian Gulf region is contrary to the systems of the southern countries, in some of which women do not even have the right to vote and express their opinions; Confronting the hegemony of the United States in the region is also one of the policies of the Islamic Republic of Iran in the Persian Gulf region, and this issue is in clear conflict with the foreign policy of other countries in the Persian Gulf region.

The set of factors mentioned above, which shape the identity foundations of the Islamic Republic of Iran and Afghanistan, somehow influence the formation of intersubjective structures in the Persian Gulf region and in relations with the countries of this region. It can be said that the formation of the "Council of Persian Gulf Cooperation in response to the revolution in Iran" was a reaction to the occurrence of the revolution in Iran (Asadi, 2010: 21).

In fact, since its inception, the Council has had a pessimistic and suspicious attitude towards Iran. From the very beginning of the Iraqi aggression and in line with the US strategy towards the Islamic Republic of Iran, based on controlling the Islamic Revolution and preventing its development, the member countries of the Persian Gulf Cooperation Council provided Iraq with a lot of financial and military assistance (Naeimi, 1991: 77).

During the eight years of war, the most important assistance was provided by the member countries of the Council to Iraq. It can be said that these tensions and conflicts have all been affected by the perception of false identities from the Islamic Revolution of Iran.

Each of the member countries of the Persian Gulf Cooperation Council undertakes to adopt a foreign policy according to the mental structure and linguistic principles they receive from the Islamic Republic of Iran. The attitudes of Iran and the Arabs towards regional security are fundamentally contradictory. The Persian Gulf Cooperation Council has a series of the most important of these are:

1. The claim of leadership of the Islamic and Arab world under the leadership of Saudi Arabia.
2. The claim of Arab hegemony in the Persian Gulf.
3. The attempt to give the Persian Gulf an Arab identity.
4. The Iranian Arab confrontation.
5. Monarchy.

These identity principles have played a very significant role in shaping the foreign policy of the members towards Iran. The Council member states' emphasis on using fictitious names for the Persian Gulf (Mujtahzadeh, 2015).

Bringing together countries opposed to and hostile to Iran and involving them in regional security arrangements, fearing Iran's emergence as a regional power with nuclear technology, and secretly trying to prevent this from happening are a set of linguistic foundations and structures that the Gulf Cooperation Council member states, through their foreign policy and speeches, introduce into the intersubjective structure of the Persian Gulf regional system in the form of linguistic structures and concepts.



These factors and components have led to the formation of a kind of permanent suspicion between the two sides. As a result, rather than witnessing positive cultural-civilizational exchanges between the Persian Gulf countries and Iran, we are currently witnessing competition and even cultural-civilizational conflict. Changing this mentality requires rebuilding new foundations and identity ideas for both sides in which sources of tension are minimized. Both sides for convergence, they need to redefine concepts that are within the framework of the interests and national identities of both sides.

MARITIME SILK ROAD

As mentioned in the previous sections, trade in silk and other goods had been going on for many years between Afghanistan, Iran, China, and Rome, creating the famous Silk Road; However, the emergence of some problems in the land route of the Silk Road forced some merchants to choose the water route to continue their trade. (LeStrange, 1994: 93).

Although this route was longer and carried unknown dangers, it was superior to the land route in some cases. The "Maritime Silk Road" was a maritime transportation route that, according to Chinese historical sources, dates back to the beginning of the Chinese imperial period, about two hundred years before Christ, and was strengthened during the Song Empire (960-1279) and the Mongol rule known as the "Yuan Era" (1271-1368).

The Maritime Silk Road has played an important role and position in the material and civilizational exchanges between the East and the West, as a bridge between China and the countries of Asia, Europe and Africa. (Iranjeb News Agency, 2015).

The increase in the naval power of the Chinese and Iranian empires led to the further expansion of the Silk Road, and this development did not stop in the Islamic period. The Iranians had a great share in the trade of silk and other goods on this route, and their fleets traveled between the ports of Iran and China. Ports such as Abila, Siraf, Hormuz, and Kish were each considered one of the most prosperous and busiest ports in the world at one time. Sea routes expanded the reach of shipping with the Far Eastern countries and strengthened the Silk Roads on land.

The Persian Gulf, as a large branch of the Indian Ocean, which is located on the path of all sea routes east of Aden and as a place and passage for the exchange of goods and trade between the East and the West, has not only been the scene of competition and conflict between nations and powers near and far since ancient times; Rather, it has long been considered a commercial passage and a place of transmission of culture and civilization between the East and the West, and the most important entrance and exit of the Blue Silk Road.

Since ancient times, the tribes living in the Persian Gulf, including the Phoenicians and Babylonians, have played an important role in the trade and navigation of this region. During the Achaemenid period, as the Persian kings found themselves facing the naval forces of Greece and Egypt, they began to create a vast naval power. Later, Darius the Great, considering the importance of sea routes, ordered the digging of the Suez Canal.

Digging this canal was of strategic importance in two ways: one in terms of expanding the possibility of navigation, which helped the Iranian navy to reach the shores of the Persian Gulf, Oman and the Indian Ocean from the shores of the Mediterranean Sea, the Black Sea, Asia Minor and the Algerian Sea, and the other in terms of economy for transporting the abundant goods of Egyptian merchants and other countries subject to the Achaemenids.



Since India also joined the great Achaemenid empire, the continuous flow of trade and shipping between the mouth of the Indus River and the Persian Gulf became easier. Shipbuilders built ships in new styles that could travel from sixty to eighty nautical miles per day and had a carrying capacity of more than two hundred to three hundred tons. Also, nautical signs were studied and documents and records for shipping were prepared. (Girshman, 1989: 208).

The Silk Road was of particular importance and mobility until the middle of the Safavid period; but from then on, due to changes in the global trade conditions, the situation of the trade routes changed and the Silk Road also declined. (Alizadeh, 2004: 39).

Of course, in recent years, some countries in this region, especially China, have taken steps to revive this maritime route. The Chinese President raised the issue of the Maritime Silk Road for the first time in a speech to the Indonesian Parliament in 2013. (Xi in, 2013: 10, 4... of building for call).



Maritime Silk Road; Source: 2015. www.marinelink.com.

In November 2014, the Chinese President announced that, due to the importance of the Blue and Land Silk Roads for that country, they would spend forty billion dollars to revive them and that the country intends to take the first step in this direction by providing the necessary financial assistance to the countries along the Silk Roads. (November 2014: 8).

The project to build economic zones along the Silk Road and also to create a 21st century Maritime Silk Road, presented by Chinese authorities, has been welcomed by fifty countries. In fact, the Chinese government considers the implementation of the Silk Road project as one of its latest efforts to develop industrial cooperation and trade infrastructure in the Asian economy and believes that the revival of the Silk



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Road will lead to regional integration and create countless economic opportunities. (Iran Jib News Site /2015,).

In the Islamic Republic of Iran, some elites and intellectuals, while acknowledging the importance of reviving the maritime route of the Silk Road, have undertaken preliminary work to implement this project. Holding international conferences on the Persian Gulf and the Maritime Silk Road, Iran-China friendship associations, and organizing numerous exhibitions and seminars in this field are some of the actions taken by Iranian authorities in the direction of reviving the Maritime Silk Road.

However, it seems that the above actions have been mostly theatrical and slogan-like and have not been seriously pursued by government officials. This is while the revival of the Maritime Silk Road contains opportunities for the country's diplomatic and foreign policy apparatus, which makes it necessary for foreign policy officials to pursue it.

POTENTIALS OF THE MARITIME SILK ROAD COOPERATION

A) Economic Functions

The most important factor for the formation of convergence in a region is the existence of general agreement and a single consensus. Convergence is the product of regional dynamics and the relations of countries with each other. (Dehghani Firouzabadi, 2010: 28-29).

According to David Mittrani, the origin of conflicts between states is the existence of political gaps and these gaps cannot be overcome by legal agreement. His assumption is that economics and politics can be separated. What is related to economics and social life is placed in the realm of low or soft politics and there is a possibility of cooperation in it. (Moshirzadeh, 2006: 60).

It seems that considering the type of relations between the Gulf Cooperation Council countries with Iran and the differences and negative mental interpretations that exist between them in different dimensions, starting cooperation with economic relations will lead to better results for them. From this perspective, the revival of the Silk Road will have the potential to strengthen economic relations between the countries of the Persian Gulf region. If the countries of the region want to play an active role in the Maritime Silk Road, it is necessary to increase their maritime cooperation and coordinate their economic policies.

Creating infrastructure networks to connect the energy, communication and transportation infrastructures of the countries of the region, building and strengthening roads and ports, efficiently allocating resources, integrating markets and forming free trade zones bilaterally and multilaterally are other measures that the countries of the Persian Gulf region need to take to play an effective role in the revival of the Maritime Silk Road.

It is worth noting that the countries of the Persian Gulf region are among the few states along the Maritime Silk Road that have energy resources and rich oil and gas reserves. This is while most of the other countries bordering this waterway are energy-consuming countries with weak economies.

Accordingly, the Silk Road is now considered an energy highway. This issue not only increases the bargaining power of the Persian Gulf countries; but also provides them with access to the potential market capacity of other countries along the Silk Road route. However, the Gulf countries face specific challenges in managing their economies due to the extreme volatility of oil prices and revenues.



The financial crises of 2001 and 2008 in the Gulf countries have highlighted the importance of economic reforms for all of them and have confirmed the approach of those who advocate adopting a coherent economic strategy.

Therefore, diversifying the economic structure is one of the necessities of these countries' economic policies; because, given the trend of industrial countries achieving alternative energy sources to oil, single-product exports will no longer meet the needs of the countries in the region.

Increasing foreign direct investment, strengthening the tourism industry, banking, insurance, and non-oil exports are among the most important solutions for changing the structure of the single-product economies of the Gulf, which can only be achieved through regional cooperation and will flourish with the revival of the Maritime Silk Road.

It is obvious that equipping and renovating the region's commercial ports and reforming their management and exploitation to improve their unloading and loading capacity to international standards is a necessity.

In this regard, maritime tourism is one of the types of tourism that can play a significant role in the economic development of coastal countries and indigenous peoples in the region. Visiting marine industrial facilities and structures, water sports, non-passenger tourist cruises, and even using coastal accommodations or restaurants or "restaurant ships" and dozens of other types of use of the sea and the coast are considered part of maritime tourism and can attract many tourists to the Persian Gulf. According to studies, maritime tourism creates sixteen jobs for each tourist, which shows the high importance of this type of tourism. (Samii, 2014).

Indeed, the effort to use such potential will lead to the economic development of all countries in the region and will lead to wider regional cooperation. The 20th century is the century of the economic miracle of transit. In fact, transit is known as a source of income, and countries that invest in the field of transit of goods or passengers earn significant income from this sector.

Currently, world trade exceeds tens of billions of dollars, of which the volume of trade between Asia and Europe exceeds three trillion dollars; therefore, the development of the transit and transportation network for the transfer of goods in proportion to the growth of world trade has become necessary. (Cultural Heritage News Agency, 2014).

Revival and revitalization of the road Silk and ancient monuments remaining around this road can promote tourism and economic development of local communities. The commonalities and favorable cultural, economic and political foundations of the countries located on this route make the launch of this waterway possible.

Establishing a suitable platform for joint, international and multilateral cooperation in the field of tourism, launching an alliance to create security in tourism in the countries of the Silk Road Economic Belt, launching direct international flights between the cities of the route and encouraging airlines to create competition and provide low-cost flights, creating international tourism destinations by creating recreational destinations, cultural tourism and health tourism, exchanging multilateral memorandums of understanding between the countries of the Maritime Silk Road route (for the purpose of exploration and archaeology under the seabed), jointly registering "Traffic on the Maritime Silk Road" as an intangible heritage in UNESCO and reviving maritime trade along the Maritime Silk Road route are among the things that can lead to the revival of the Silk Road and the development of tourism on this route. (Sultanifar, 2015).



Today, China, in cooperation with the member countries of "ASEAN", is seeking to take the initiative. The Chinese authorities are looking to develop plans to use the revival of the Silk Roads (both on land and at sea) to consolidate their power in East Asia and to generalize and globalize their foreign policy principles, and have made extensive investments in this regard. (Tiezzi, 2015, 30). This could increase the motivation of the Gulf states to actively participate in this competition and strengthen their cooperation in various fields.

With the beginning of the stage of cooperation in the economic, technical and tourism fields (if the experience in this area is positive), cooperation can spread to other areas and increasing pressures are placed on leaders to develop and expand cooperation; in other words, at this stage, regional cooperation experiences an element of politicization. As cooperation expands in an area, pressure on units to strengthen the emerging alliances increases (Qasemi, 2005: 170).

This is where some theories of convergence are linked to the theory of constructivism. Convergencies, such as Deutsch, believe that communication is one of the necessary conditions for cooperation.

Karl Deutsch believes that the essence of "people" is the existence of communication; that is, the ability to transmit a message, understand it and predict behavior in a reciprocal manner. The intense flow of communication between nations and states can gradually lead to the emergence of a global political community. Thus, international communication is transformed into negotiations. Internationally, international negotiations lead to international cooperation, and international cooperation to international convergence. Since convergence is the final stage of the cooperation process, the communication process must inherently involve mutual relations or feedback between the constituent units of an international system. (Deutsch et al. 1996:834).

The integrators also believe that as communication and interaction between countries increase, their knowledge of each other increases and negative mental perceptions are replaced by mutual suspicion, understanding and understanding. After that, countries do not consider the "other" as their enemy and seek to improve relations.

In fact, social identities show their specific perceptions in relation to other actors, and in this way they produce specific interests and shape policy decisions. Whether one sees oneself as a friend, a rival, or an enemy of another will make a big difference in the interaction between them. For constructivists, civilizational structures, cultural factors, state identities, etc., along with how they shape the interests of states and behavioral patterns, are important. These create a kind of worldview and affect patterns of international interaction. (Moshirzadeh, 2006: 331).

Based on this, it can be said that the revival of the Maritime Silk Road has the ability to revive cultural and value issues among the countries of the Persian Gulf region, like its historical past, and affect the type of their interactions.

B) Cultural-Civilizational Functions

The Silk Road was formed to facilitate trade and commerce; but it was not limited to trade and commerce; rather, by establishing connections between different nations, it provided a basis for cultural exchanges and caused different nations to be culturally influenced by each other.



The commercial and economic effects of the Silk Road on the one hand and its cultural effects on the other hand, in the era when this road was active, provided the conditions for closeness and affinity between nations and left a successful and solid model of cooperation to meet mutual needs.

The customs and traditions of nations from the countries of the East and the West were transferred to each other and developed through the Silk Road. There were roads, prosperous caravanserais, news towers and printing houses along these roads from China and Khorezm to the West. Throughout history, in addition to military and commercial movements along this road, religions, cultures of the East and the West, and languages, they mixed different civilizations and spread in the world in this way. (Nasiri, 2012: 44).

Although today the virtual world is able to provide individuals and nations with very extensive and complete information and knowledge about other countries; in practice, it lacks the sense of presence in the place and the experience of living in them. For this reason, firstly, the type of knowledge it offers is manipulated and unreal.

Secondly, this type of knowledge only has a complementary role to real observation. Therefore, real communication routes and paths are still of great value and importance and can contribute to cultural-civilizational exchanges and the emergence of a deeper and more realistic understanding of nations towards each other. (Rawdrad and Haji Mohammadi, 2010: 61).

Accordingly, in the current conditions of the Middle East and the Persian Gulf region, where extremism and religious fanaticism of groups such as ISIS have endangered the peace and stability of the region and the world and have caused an increase in the wave of Islamophobia throughout the world, emphasizing the unifying foundations of Islamic civilization is one of the serious necessities of the Islamic world. The Maritime Silk Road will increase cultural interactions between the countries of the region by increasing their communication.

On the one hand, increasing economic exchanges will also lead to the expansion of social exchanges, and the rise of tourism and pilgrimage trips in the Persian Gulf countries will also strengthen the cultural exchanges of these countries. The tourism industry, as a multifaceted industry, consists of various components and types. A type of tourism that is very prosperous today is cultural tourism.

Undoubtedly, Islamic culture and civilization have high potential in the development of cultural tourism and can be a suitable strategy in the development of the tourism industry for the countries of the Persian Gulf region, especially Iran.

The increase in travel and communication between merchants, ambassadors, scientists and clerics of the countries of the region leads to the exchange of spiritual goods, including cultural patterns, architecture, art and good moral and behavioral traditions between their countries.

Cultural patterns are traditions and ways of life that are interesting to tourists. These cultural patterns include customs, clothing, celebrations, ways of life and religious beliefs. The increase and prosperity of intra-regional and extra-regional exchanges, which are among the fruits of the Maritime Silk Road, can have many cultural and civilizational results. The most important of these results are:

A) Preservation and sustainability of the cultural heritage, arts, traditions and customs of the peoples of the Persian Gulf



The preservation and sustainability of cultural heritage is one of the effects and results of the revival of the Maritime Silk Road; because the host region is forced to manage these resources in order to provide them and apply standards to maintain their quality. In the process of developing cultural tourism, we will witness that the cultural resources of the region are automatically organized, sampled and recorded.

B) The emergence of intercultural exchanges

Intercultural exchanges are another positive effect of the development of cultural tourism. This makes the host people and tourists familiar with each other's culture and paves the way for cultural-civilizational dialogues. (Ansari, 2008).

C) Reducing religious and ethnic differences

Religious tourism is another branch of the tourism industry in the field of cultural tourism, which has great communication capabilities due to the existence of numerous pilgrimage sites in the countries of the Persian Gulf region.

This industry, in terms of its religious and pilgrimage status, which exists especially with the presence of the Kaaba and the holy shrine of the Prophet of Islam (PBUH) in Saudi Arabia, as well as the graves of Shiite imams in Saudi Arabia, Iraq, and Iran, will lead to sustainable cultural development in the region.

Religious tourism allows people to become familiar with different religions and cultures, and even different ways of life in that pilgrimage area, and to bond with each other, and regardless of any political and social tensions, they can better understand the cultures and ways of life prevalent among the religious ethnicities of a host nation or people, and therefore can play a very significant role in reducing hostilities and cultural convergence between nations. (Sharbatian, 2011)

In fact, the development of religious and pilgrimage tourism, in addition to promoting the recognition of spiritual culture, economic and commercial development, earning a high income and creating employment, can take an effective step by providing special cultural and social arrangements and planning in eliminating the inappropriate and unrealistic image that some countries in the region have of each other. (Kazemi: 2008, 27).

d) Providing a suitable environment for combating Islamophobia and introducing Islamic civilization to the world

The increase in commercial, tourist and pilgrimage tourism will certainly not be specific and limited to the countries of the region. About 65 countries are located on the maritime and land Silk Roads, and with the revival of these roads, travelers, traders and tourists with different destinations will travel to the countries along these roads. Trans-regional tourists are unaware of the internal differences and disputes of the Islamic countries of the Persian Gulf region and see them as a general group of Islamic countries and on their trips

These countries themselves are also in search of recognition and familiarity with the culture, customs, traditions, and cultural and ancient heritage of Islamic civilization. It is undeniable that every tourist, based on the mental image he has obtained of the countries of his destination, acts as a cultural and propaganda messenger and will represent this image to his fellow countrymen.

In this regard, an unparalleled opportunity is available to the cultural authorities and officials of the Persian Gulf countries to create a suitable and desirable image of Islam and Islamic countries in the minds of tourists



by highlighting the works and manifestations of Islamic civilization both in their countries and at the regional level.

CONCLUSION

The Silk Road is a symbol of the collective rationality of the people of the East and a sign of the dynamic, powerful and ever-evolving culture and civilization of the people of this region of the world. This road cannot be considered just a historical artifact of the past and a mere route for transit and trade of goods; rather, it should be viewed as a phenomenon that, although it was formed and active in the distant past; but by becoming a part of the culture and civilization of the people of this region, it has become a part of their life and identity and has continued to live until now.

Therefore, it should be viewed as a complex and multifaceted phenomenon in which economy, trade, history, culture, politics and social issues are intertwined. If the process that began as a result of the formation of the Silk Road had continued, this communication highway could undoubtedly play a much more effective role in the age of information and communication using new communication tools than in the past and in building human society.

That is why the revival of the Silk Road has been emphasized, and efforts have been made to activate it as a connecting road between nations and a dialogue between cultures. Today, when we talk about the revival of the Silk Road, we mean using various modern communication facilities to connect the societies that communicated and exchanged with each other through the Silk Road and to provide various exchanges between these societies. In this way, the Silk Road can be renovated as a multi-route and multi-purpose communication highway and used to help the progress and development of different nations and societies. The countries of the Persian Gulf region are among the countries on the waterway of this ancient road, which can benefit greatly from the revival of this road due to its rich energy resources and unparalleled tourism facilities. Increasing economic cooperation and the tourism industry in various fields of trade, tourism, and pilgrimage can lead to increased understanding of the nations of the region about each other and, as a result, the elimination of misunderstandings and mistrust between them.

However, national-people cultural relations are only considered as a background for the relations of countries. In the current situation of the Persian Gulf, where its governments are in conflict with each other over national interests, self-centeredly, and the security situation in Iraq and Yemen is in a critical state, more efforts are needed at the national-people level to improve relations between the countries of the region and provide the ground for further cooperation.

In support of neo-functionalist theories, it must be said that a kind of political will is needed to use the Maritime Silk Road tunnels to improve cultural relations between the countries of the Persian Gulf region. Eliminating suspicions and tensions, avoiding sectarianism, respecting Shiite and Sunni minorities, respecting the sovereignty and territorial integrity of other countries, and in short, accepting equality between each other are among the major steps that political leaders of these countries can take to achieve regional integration.

To achieve these guidelines, the role of Iran and Saudi Arabia, as two prominent and important countries in the Persian Gulf, seems essential; because the understanding and closeness of these two countries in resolving disputes and misunderstandings is helpful and strategic and can also lead to the support of other coastal countries.



Based on this, the hypothesis of the present research that "reviving the Maritime Silk Road through increasing relations between the Persian Gulf countries will increase their mutual dependence on each other and will also increase the level of cultural cooperation between them" was proven.

The revival of the Maritime Silk Road by raising the need for economic cooperation between the countries of the region in various fields, such as tourism, hotel management, equipping and reconstructing ports and infrastructure, and the relations between them will increase.

The increase in relations in some economic fields that are less challenging and a source of disagreement will spread to other fields and, overall, will lead to the improvement of economic, cultural and civilizational relations and relations between the countries of the Persian Gulf region.

In this regard, there are some solutions to resolve regional disputes and provide a basis for the revival and exploitation of the potential of the Maritime Silk Road, some of which are mentioned here:

1. In the first step, it is necessary that the diplomatic apparatus of the Islamic Republic of Iran, considering the many opportunities that exist in the current situation in the political fields, resolving regional issues and combating terrorism for cooperation, focus on de-escalating tensions and resolving disputes between Islamic countries in the region and pave the way for broader cooperation.
2. It is necessary that the Islamic Culture and Communications Organization of the Islamic Republic of Iran, as the main custodian of cultural activities abroad, which has cultural consultancies, cultural affiliations and cultural houses in 59 countries and regions of the world, strive to further expand cultural and artistic cooperation between Iran and the countries of the Persian Gulf.
3. It is necessary for the cultural and political authorities of the Persian Gulf countries to hold numerous working meetings, to engage in empathy and consultation on how to introduce Islamic culture and civilization to the rest of Asian and European countries, and to think of cooperation to strengthen the region's tourist attractions by setting aside issues that provoke ethnic and religious conflicts; because one of the main characteristics of a civilization-building movement is to maintain unity and integrity and not seek separatism and division, which allows a civilization to acquire various aspects and dimensions and achieve the necessary development.
4. It is suggested that the Persian Gulf countries, especially the Islamic Republic of Iran, seek to form a "Union of Silk Road Countries" to transform the Persian Gulf region into a major transit hub in the world.

REFERENCES

- Sultanifar, Masoud; Revival of the Silk Road will lead to tourism and economic development of local communities, Report of the Third World Tourism Economic Forum in Macau, China, Fars News Agency, Date of visit, 1/20/2015: Available at: <http://www.farsnews.com>
- Samii, Mohammad; Each sea tourist employs sixteen people, Ministry of Roads and Urban Development news website, date of visit: 2014/07/07, available at: <http://news.mrud.ir/news1548>
- Cultural Heritage News Agency; Revival of the Silk Road on the Sino-Arab Route, Date of Visit: 2014/4/22, Available at: [http://chn.ir/NSite/FullStory/News/?Id=111248 & Serv= 2&SGr=24](http://chn.ir/NSite/FullStory/News/?Id=111248&Serv=2&SGr=24) 23/1/1393



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

- Sharbatian, Mohammad Hassan; A functional reflection on the role of sustainable development of religious tourism in Iranian society, Anthropology and Culture website, date of visit: 14/06/2011, available at: <http://anthropology.ir/node10725>
- Iran Jib News Site; China's Efforts to Revive the Silk Road Are Bearing Fruit, Date of Visit, 1/17/2015: Available at: <http://www.iranjib.ir/shownews/9639>
- Breslin, Shaun. Higgott, Richard. "Studying Regions: Learning From the Old, Constructing the New", New Political Economy, vol. 5, No.3, 2002.
- Hettne, B. "The New Regionalism: Implication For Development and Peace". Helsinki: Unu/Wider, 1994.
- Mansfield, E.D. H.V. Milner. «The New Wave of Regionalism», International Organization. 53, 3, 1999.
- Mittelman. J. »The Globalization Syndrome«. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1994.
- Page, Jeremy. «China to Contribute \$40 Billion to Silk Road Fund». From: <http://www.wsj.com/articles/chinato-contribute-40-billion-to-silk-road-fund-1415454995>. Retrieved: 2015/4/8, (8 November, 2014).
- Sabic, Zlatko. Bojinovic, Ana (2006). "State and NonState Actors in Regional Institutional Webs: the Case of the Mediterranean", University Tartu, Estonia, 25-27 June 2006.
- Vayrynen, Raimo. Regionalism old and New, International, 2003.
- Tiezzi, Shannon. "Where Is China's Silk Road Actually Going?". From: <http://thediplomat.com>. Retrieved: 2015, 8, 4, (30 March, 2015).
- "Xi in call for building of new 'maritime silk road'". (4,10,2013). From: http://usa.chinadaily.com.cn/china/2013-10/04/content_17008940.htm
- <http://www.marinelink.com>, March 29, 2015
- Elahi, Homayun (2005); Book, Persian Gulf and its issues, Publisher. Tehran: Qoms. 2005,
- Omidi, Ali; (2009) Book, The Logic of Hijri in Asia: A Look at the ASEAN, SAWC and ECO Organizations, Tehran: Publisher of the Office of Political and International Studies, 2009.
- Mujtahzadeh, Pirouz; The reason for the Arabs' efforts to change the name of the Persian Gulf, Bushehr News website, date of visit: 2015/1/8, available at: <http://www.bushehrnews.com/fa/news/45759>
- Bastani-e-Parizi, Mohammad Ebrahim (1973); Book The Seven-Headed Dragon, Tehran Information: Publications of Safi Alishah Press, Volume 1, 1973,
- Halabi, Ali Asghar (1992); Book, History of Islamic Civilization (Several Studies in Islamic Culture and Intellectual Sciences), Tehran: Asateer Publications, 1992,
- Deutsch, Karl et al.; (1996) "Theories of International Relations, translated by Vahid Bozrogi, Tehran: Jihad Daneshgahi Publications, Volume 2, 1996,
- Dehghani Firouzabadi, Seyed Jalal (2010); Book of Different Theories in International Relations (Textbook), Tehran: Publisher of the Faculty of Law and Political Sciences, Allameh Tabatabaei University, 2010.



- Seifzadeh, Hossein; (2009) Theories and Theories in Individual, Globalized International Relations: Relevance and Efficiency, Tehran: Publisher. Office of Political and International Studies, 2009.
- Ezzati, Ezzatollah (1999); Political Geography of the Islamic World, Tehran: Publisher. Organization of Scientific Schools and Seminaries Abroad, 1999.
- Frank, Airy; Brownstone David (1997); Book, Silk Road, translated by Mohsen Salesi, Publisher. Tehran: Soroush, 1997
- Qavam, Abdol Ali (2005); Book, International Relations: Theories and Approaches, Publisher Tehran: Samat Publications. 2005,
- Kazemi, Ali Asghar (1991); Book, Convergence Theory in International Relations, Tehran: Qoms Publications. 2001,
- Kazemi, Mehdi (2008); Book, Tourism Management, Publisher. Tehran: Samat Publications, 3rd edition, 2008.
- Girshman, Roman (1989); Book, Iran from the Beginning to Islam, translated by Mohammad Moein, Tehran: Scientific and Cultural Publications, 1989.
- Lestrangle, Guy; (1994) The Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, translated by Mahmoud Erfan, published by Tehran: Scientific and Cultural Publishing Company, 4th edition, 1994.
- Moshirzadeh, Homeira (2006); Development in the Theories of International Relations, published by Tehran: Samat Publications, 2006.
- Naeimi Arfa, Bahman; (1991) Book, Principles of Behavior of the Persian Gulf Cooperation Council towards the Islamic Republic of Iran, published by Tehran: Political and International Studies Office.
- Asadi, Ali Akbar; (2010) "The Persian Gulf Cooperation Council: Foreign Policy and Domestic Trends", published by the Deputy of Foreign Policy Research/Middle East and Persian Gulf Studies Group, Issue 28, 2010.
- Ansari, Hassan (2008) Developing Cultural Tourism, Reviving National Pride, published by Mirath Cultural News Agency, Issue 1832.
- Rawdrad, Azam; Hajimohammadi, Ali; (2010) "The difference in cognition resulting from real tourism and virtual tourism based on narrative theory", Publisher. Iranian Cultural Research Quarterly, Volume 3, Issue 2, 10th consecutive issue, Summer 2010
- Sazmand, Bahareh; (2005) "A Constructivist Analysis of National Identity during the Imposed War", Publisher. National Studies Quarterly, Year 6, Issue 2. 2005,
- Alizadeh Moghadam, Badr Sadat; (2004) "The Blue Silk Road", Publisher. Foreign Relations History Quarterly, Issue 21, Winter 2004.
- Qasemi, Farhad; (2005) "Conceptual and Theoretical Plan of Regional Studies in International Politics", Publisher. Journal of the Faculty of Law and Political Science, Issue 7, 2005,



- Mottaqi, Ebrahim; Kazemi, Hojjat; (2007) "Construction, Identity, Language and Foreign Policy of the Islamic Republic", Publisher. Politics Quarterly, Journal of the Faculty of Law and Political Science, Volume 37, Issue 4, 2007.
- Nasiri, Behrouz; (2011) "The Silk Road, the Highway of Cultural Exchange", Marafat Monthly, Issue 85, April 2011.
- Vosoughi, Saeed; Kamaizadeh, Younes;(2010) "New Regional Integration in the Era of Globalization", Political and International Approaches, Issue 24, Winter.

Received: 02.20.2025

Revised: 02.25.2025

Accepted: 03.05.2025

Published: 03.06.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

The Characteristics of Monarchy as a Form of Government

 ¹Atila Ozturk  ²Ismayil Garibli
<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002101>

Keywords	Abstract
forms of government administration State Power monarchy absolute monarchy constitutional monarchy dualistic monarchy	<p>The phrase "forms of government administration" denotes the methodology of structuring and executing state authority, the manner in which the head of state and other governing entities are constituted, and the allocation of functions among them. The type of government is chiefly dictated by the method of selection or appointment of the head of state, together with the processes by which authority is wielded.</p> <p>The governmental system is one of the earliest components defining a state, with its study originating in Ancient Greece. The interpretation of governmental form has fluctuated across several historical epochs. In an agrarian society, the importance of the governmental structure was confined to the method of appointing the head of state—either by inheritance or through elections. Nonetheless, with the deterioration of feudalism and the shift to an industrial society, characterized by the diminishment of monarchical authority and the rise and consolidation of popular representation, governmental structures transformed. The emphasis transitioned from the method of power transfer—whether the head of state was inherited or elected—to the organization of interactions among the head of state, parliament, and administration, as well as the equilibrium of their powers. The fundamental inquiry thus centered on the configuration of the separation of powers.</p> <p>This article examines monarchy as a governmental system.</p>

1. INTRODUCTION

The form of government denotes the organizational framework of a state, defined by the legal position of the head of state and the allocation of power among the principal state authorities. In this context, all nations are categorized as either monarchy or republics. The amalgamation of these theoretical frameworks will create a solid basis for examining construction, maintenance, and contestation of legitimacy within

¹ Ozturk, A. Lecturer, Department of Private Law, Nakhchivan State University. Email: atillaozturk@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0000-0002-9686-713X>.

² Garibli, I. Senior Lecturer, Department of Private Law, Nakhchivan State University. PhD Candidate. Email: ismayilgaribli@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0009-0009-1997-5880>.



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

constitutional systems. This approach will elucidate the intricate interaction among law, societal norms, and political authority, and how they coalesce to form the governance frameworks that influence political stability and transformation (Ozturk, 2024).

Two primary kinds of government are identified and compared: monarchy (derived from the Greek monarchia – autocracy: monos – one and arche – power) and republic (from the Latin res publica – common issue). The differentiation is primarily based on quantitative criteria. When supreme state authority is vested in a single individual, it is termed a monarchy. When power is centralized among a select few, it constitutes aristocracy. Democracy exists when authority is shared by all (Marapac, 2016).

Monarchy is a government system where supreme authority is wholly or partially vested in an absolute head of state (emperor, king, sultan, shah, khan, etc.), regardless of the populace's consent. A monarch's reign is generally lifelong and inherited. In Malaysia and the United Arab Emirates, kings are chosen for a term of five years.

A monarchy is a political system wherein ultimate authority resides with a singular ruler, the monarch, who acts as the head of state. It often operates as both a political-administrative entity and a social collective referred to as the "court society," comprised of the nobility.

In modern state and legal theory, the importance of monarchy is linked to the quest for an ideal political arrangement for society. Moreover, the examination of monarchy and statehood issues is bolstered by other factors:

1. Historical significance: Monarchy is one of the most ancient forms of governance, originating during the era of Egyptian pharaohs and Sumerian rulers (3rd–2nd millennia BCE). This illustrates its capacity to persist under diverse historical, economic, political, and ideological circumstances.

2. Global presence: Currently, the number of monarchs worldwide remains considerable. Including the states within the Commonwealth of Nations, where the British monarch is represented by a governor-general, monarchies constitute roughly one-sixth of the global states.

Monarchies encompass extensive nations like the United Kingdom, Spain, Japan, and Thailand, as well as diminutive governments with merely a few thousand residents, such as Eswatini in Africa, Saint Kitts and Nevis in the Caribbean, and Tuvalu in Oceania.

3. Ongoing evolution: Monarchies persist in contemporary contexts and continue to develop, exemplified by constitutional monarchies such as Belgium, the United Kingdom, Norway, Sweden, Denmark, and other realms.

4. Restoration of monarchy: In 1978, following four decades of Franco's dictatorship, Spain reinstated monarchical authority.

5. Historical function of monarchy: For the majority of human history, nations have been founded on monarchical ideals.

6. Contemporary resurgence of monarchical principles: Current circumstances demonstrate the resurgence and implementation of specific monarchical ideas in state-building, including the legal immunity of the head of state (Серегин, 2003).

2. THE MAIN CHARACTERISTICS OF MONARCHY

The main characteristics of a monarchy are:

- Governance is passed from father to son.
- The ruling authority remains within the same dynasty.



- Decision-making power depends solely on the will of one person.

In antiquity, monarchy was a prevalent system of rule. Throughout history, every nation has been governed by a monarchy at some juncture. Currently, there exist just 29 monarchies globally. In some instances, kings were regarded as representations of God or deities on Earth; in certain circumstances, they were even perceived as divine entities, imparting a religious dimension to their governance.

The Western Roman Empire, which reigned for nearly a millennium, was administered under a monarchical system throughout its existence.

In a monarchy, ultimate authority is wholly or partially vested in a singular sovereign (king, tsar, shah, etc.). This ultimate authority is typically inherited. Monarchy is typically categorized as absolute monarchy, characterized by unrestrained power, prevalent during the late Middle Ages, and limited monarchy, wherein a secondary authority, such as a parliament, coexists with the king. The contemporary iteration of limited monarchy is parliamentary monarchy, when the monarch's function is entirely ceremonial, and the principal governing authority resides with a government established by the parliament. A quintessential illustration of a parliamentary monarchy is contemporary Great Britain.

The depiction of the monarch clearly exhibits elitism, characterized by their prestige, influence, public visibility, societal inaccessibility in instances of indirect communication, exclusive status, and the prerogative to diverge from established norms. Given the circumstances of external observation by prospective viewers and acknowledging the monarch's status, the dominant norm is one of superficial perception—the strategy of pretense (*stratégie du paraître*). During that period, court life was regulated by the norms of surface perception, or *stratégie de paraître* (Викулова & Васильева, 2018).

3. TYPES OF MONARCHY

Historically, the following types of monarchies have existed:

- Absolute monarchy
- Constitutional monarchy
- Federal monarchy
- Hereditary monarchy
- Dualistic monarchy
- Parliamentary monarchy
- Estate-representative monarchy
- Elective monarchy

Absolute Monarchy

An absolute monarchy is a form of governance in which the monarch wields unrestricted power, unbound by legal limitations or parliamentary oversight. The ruler maintains full control over state affairs, consolidating legislative, executive, and judicial authority. Contemporary examples of absolute monarchies include the Kingdom of Bhutan, the Sultanate of Brunei, the United Arab Emirates, Oman, Saudi Arabia, and the Kingdom of Eswatini.

The emergence of absolute monarchy in Europe can be traced back to the 16th century, reaching its full development over the next two hundred years. This system was characterized by the centralization of political authority in the hands of a single sovereign, who ruled unilaterally according to the legal doctrine *quod principi placuit, legis habet vigorem* (what pleases the ruler has the force of law). Absolute monarchs exercised unchecked authority over all state functions and claimed legitimacy through divine right,



asserting that their power was granted by God. The governance structure relied on an extensive bureaucratic apparatus, which reinforced the ruler's dominance. Over time, professional officials, directly subordinate to the monarch, replaced the traditional noblesse d'épée—the warrior nobility that had previously played a significant role in state governance under earlier forms of monarchy (Trzeciński, 2007).

Today, no European state functions under an absolute monarchy. England was the first country in Europe to transition away from absolutism, adopting a constitutional monarchy in 1689. It is crucial to distinguish absolute monarchy from despotism, as the two concepts, though similar in centralized authority, differ in their legal foundations. As Montesquieu noted, "Monarchy is a government in which a single person rules, but according to established laws." In contrast, despotism is a system where governance is entirely dictated by an individual's personal will, without regard for legal or institutional constraints.

Dualistic Monarchy

A dualistic monarchy is a system of governance in which legislative authority is vested in a parliament, which may be elected either through universal suffrage or by a restricted electorate. However, executive power remains with the monarch, who exercises it either directly or through a government appointed at their discretion. Although judicial authority is formally attributed to the monarch, the judiciary may retain a certain degree of independence.

The term "dualistic monarchy" originates from the Latin word *dualis*, signifying duality, reflecting the system's division of authority between the ruler and the parliament. This form of governance emerged in Europe between the 18th and 19th centuries, largely as a response to popular demands for limitations on monarchical power and greater political participation. It was viewed as a compromise between absolute monarchy and the growing calls for constitutional limitations, allowing the monarch to maintain executive dominance while conceding some legislative influence to a parliamentary body.

Today, dualistic monarchy is commonly regarded as a transitional form between absolute and parliamentary monarchy. Various scholars classify countries such as Jordan, Morocco, Kuwait, Luxembourg, Bahrain, Eswatini (formerly Swaziland), Lesotho, and Tonga as examples of this governance model (Парфенова, 2020).

One of the defining characteristics of a dualistic monarchy is the incomplete separation of powers. Laws passed by parliament require the monarch's formal approval to take effect, as the ruler retains absolute veto power. Additionally, the monarch may issue extraordinary decrees that can override existing legislation. In extreme cases, a monarch can dismantle the dualistic system altogether and revert to an absolute monarchy by dissolving the parliament. For instance, in Jordan, after the dissolution of parliament in 1974, no new parliamentary elections were held until 1989. Even when a government exists, it remains accountable solely to the monarch rather than to an elected parliament, further reinforcing the ruler's authority.

Theocratic Monarchy

A theocratic monarchy is a form of governance in which political authority is vested in religious leaders who rule the state in accordance with religious laws and doctrines. Unlike other monarchical systems that may derive legitimacy from historical traditions or constitutions, theocratic monarchies are defined by religious governance, where state laws are based on religious principles.

This system is predominantly found in the Middle East and parts of Asia, with countries such as Saudi Arabia, Oman, and Qatar serving as prime examples. In these states, the head of government is simultaneously the head of the ruling religious organization, holding unlimited supreme authority. The governance structure is deeply intertwined with religious doctrine, and legal norms are derived from religious texts rather than secular constitutional frameworks.



One of the defining features of a theocratic monarchy is that religious norms exist independently of the state but are later sanctioned and enforced as legal regulations. This distinguishes theocratic monarchies from secular monarchies, where laws are typically crafted through political institutions. An example of religious governance within a theocratic monarchy is the Vatican, where canon law, based on Catholic doctrine, serves as the legal foundation of the state (Махлянюкова, 2020).

Constitutional (Limited) Monarchy

A constitutional monarchy, also known as a parliamentary monarchy, is a system of governance in which the monarch's powers are restricted by a constitution and legal framework. Under this model, legislative power is primarily vested in parliament, while executive authority is exercised by the government. Unlike absolute or dualistic monarchies, where the ruler maintains significant control, a constitutional monarchy ensures that the monarch acts within the limits of constitutional law rather than governing at their discretion.

Despite its widespread application, the term "constitutional monarchy" lacks a universally accepted definition in academic literature. However, it can be broadly characterized by three key features:

1. The Head of State is a monarch, who either inherits the position through hereditary succession or is elected.
2. The actual head of government is a separate entity—typically a prime minister—who is accountable to elected institutions such as parliament.
3. The monarch's powers are explicitly defined and limited by a constitution or a set of legal documents that govern their role (Ginsburg, Rodriguez & Weingast, 2023).

Constitutional monarchies are widely regarded as successful democratic models, balancing monarchical tradition with parliamentary governance. According to the Economist Intelligence Unit (2020), eight of the world's fifteen highest-ranking democracies operate under constitutional monarchies. Countries such as the United Kingdom (ranked 14th in 2019) and Japan have consistently appeared in democratic rankings, highlighting the stability and effectiveness of this governance model.

Countries with a Constitutional Monarchy

Several nations operate under a constitutional monarchy, including:

Australia, Barbados, Belgium, the United Kingdom, Bhutan, Denmark, Jordan, Spain, Sweden, Cambodia, Canada, Kuwait, Lesotho, Liechtenstein, Luxembourg, Malaysia, Morocco, Monaco, the Netherlands, Norway, Thailand, Japan, and New Zealand.

These countries exhibit varying degrees of monarchical authority, with some monarchs holding more symbolic roles while others retain limited political influence within constitutional constraints.

4. CHARACTERISTICS OF MONARCHY

Monarchy, as a form of governance, has distinct characteristics that differentiate it from other political systems. These include:

- **Hereditary Succession** – Power is typically passed down through familial lines.
- **Indefinite Rule** – Unlike elected officials who serve for fixed terms, monarchs generally rule for life.
- **Autonomy from Public Will** – The legitimacy of the monarch does not stem from public elections but from historical, religious, or dynastic claims.

Historically, monarchy has been one of the dominant political systems worldwide. While absolute monarchies continue to exist in countries such as **Saudi Arabia and Brunei**, where no institutions are



formed by the direct will of the people and the monarch exercises full sovereignty, most modern monarchies are **constitutional**. In constitutional monarchies, power is shared between the monarch and other state institutions, such as parliament and the executive branch. Examples of constitutional monarchies include the **United Kingdom, Japan, Spain, Belgium, Sweden, and Norway**, where monarchy operates within the framework of a parliamentary democracy.

The Role of the Monarch in a Constitutional Monarchy

In contemporary constitutional monarchies, the monarch often holds **ceremonial and constitutional responsibilities** rather than direct political power. In the United Kingdom, for example, **King Charles III** serves as the constitutional Head of State and holds ultimate legal responsibility for various state functions, including:

- **Appointing and dismissing the Prime Minister and other ministers.**
- **Dissolving Parliament** to initiate general elections.
- **Proroguing Parliament**, meaning suspending it for a defined period.
- **Granting 'Royal Assent'**, which is the formal approval required for primary legislation to become law.
- **Appointing members of the House of Lords.**
- **Conducting diplomacy and approving international treaties.**
- **Serving as the Head of the Armed Forces**, responsible for military deployment both domestically and internationally.
- **Acting as the Supreme Governor of the Church of England**, the official state religion of England.
- **Bestowing honours**, such as knighthoods and other royal distinctions (The Monarchy).

Historical Titles of Monarchs

Throughout history, monarchs have been known by various titles, reflecting the political and cultural traditions of different regions. Some of these titles include:

Imperial Titles

- **Princes, Emperor, Kaiser, Shahanshah, Shanyu** – Used in imperial systems such as the **Holy Roman Empire**.
- **Tsar** – Title of rulers in the **Tsardom of Russia** (e.g., the Romanov Dynasty).
- **Shah** – Used in Persian empires such as the **Safavid State**.
- **Sultan** – Title of rulers in **Ottoman and Islamic sultanates**.
- **Emir** – Used in **Arab emirates**, including the **United Arab Emirates**.

Royal and Noble Titles

- **King, Queen, Consort** – Rulers of **kingdoms** such as **Jordan and the United Kingdom**.
- **Prince, Princess** – Used in **principalities** like **Andorra and Liechtenstein**.
- **Duke, Duchess** – Historically significant in **Western European duchies**, such as **Burgundy (9th-15th centuries)**.



- **Count, Countess** – Noble rank historically found in **Frankish states and England**.
- **Marquis, Marquess, Marchese** – Titles used in **France, England, Italy, and Germany** to denote nobility ranking below a duke.

Regional and Cultural Titles

- **Khan** – Title of rulers in **medieval Azerbaijan and Turkic khanates**.
- **Malik, Maliki** – Used by feudal lords in **medieval Karabakh**.
- **Khagan, Kagan, Kaan** – Titles among **Turkic and Mongolic peoples**, such as the **Khazars and Uyghurs**.
- **Pharaoh** – Title of rulers in **Ancient Egypt**.
- **Caliph** – Head of the **Caliphate**, signifying religious and political leadership in the **Arab world**.
- **Doge** – Title used in **Venice**, deriving from the English term *Department of Justice*.
- **Viscount, Viscountess** – A European noble rank positioned between **Baron and Count**.
- **Infante, Infanta** – Title used for **princes and princesses in Spain and Portugal**, although the monarchy was abolished in Portugal in **1910**.

Monarchy, in its various forms, has played a crucial role in shaping political systems worldwide, with different nations adopting distinct models to balance tradition, governance, and modern democratic principles.

5. MONARCHY AND COURTS: AN EXAMINATION OF THE RELATIONSHIP

The Role of Courts and the Judiciary in Monarchies

The adjudication of disputes and the issuance of final rulings in judicial proceedings are integral to maintaining legal order and ensuring the fair application of laws. Courts serve as fundamental institutions that uphold the **rule of law**, guaranteeing the proper implementation of legal provisions and the just resolution of conflicts. Judicial decisions provide **legal certainty**, offering protection for citizens' rights and liberties. Through the resolution of disputes, courts eliminate ambiguities in contested legal matters, promoting **clarity, stability, and enforceability** within the legal system (Garibli, 2025).

The Judicial System in Monarchies

Monarchy, a system of governance where a sovereign ruler holds supreme authority, has existed for centuries in various forms. While historically associated with **absolute power**, monarchies have evolved, particularly with the emergence of **constitutional monarchy**, which has fundamentally altered the relationship between the **monarchy and the judiciary**. The nature of this relationship depends on the specific governance structure of each country and plays a crucial role in shaping the legal system and broader principles of governance (Smith, 2021).

Historically, monarchs wielded **ultimate judicial authority**, serving as both the highest legal authority and the final arbiter in legal disputes. In many monarchies, the sovereign had the power to **appoint judges, enact laws, and serve as the final court of appeal**. This structure was particularly evident in **absolute monarchies**, where judicial independence was virtually nonexistent, and the king's decree functioned as the supreme legal standard (Johnson, 2018).

However, as political systems evolved, monarchies adapted to more structured governance frameworks, leading to significant changes in the judiciary's role. The development of **constitutional monarchies**, particularly in **Europe**, resulted in a **separation of powers** between the executive, legislative, and judicial



branches. This transformation enabled the judiciary to function with greater **independence**, reducing direct monarchical control over legal institutions (Parker, 2019).

The Judiciary in Constitutional Monarchies

In **constitutional monarchies** such as the **United Kingdom**, the relationship between the monarchy and the judiciary is explicitly governed by constitutional principles. The monarch, as the **Head of State**, assumes a **ceremonial role**, while the judiciary operates autonomously to uphold the rule of law. The monarch's authority is constrained by the **constitutional framework**, and the judiciary serves as a **check on executive power**, ensuring the impartial application of justice (Davies, 2020).

Despite the judiciary's independence, court rulings may still be subject to **errors, misjudgments, or dissatisfaction** from involved parties. The administration of justice is inherently complex, and disputes may arise over the adequacy of legal protection and the proper resolution of cases. Nonetheless, judicial institutions remain essential in securing **legitimate rights and interests** through legally binding decisions (Garibli, 2024).

In modern governance, constitutional monarchies continue to strike a balance between **tradition and legal modernization**, ensuring that judicial independence is maintained while the monarchy retains a **symbolic and constitutional function** within the state's governance framework.

6. CONCLUSION

Monarchy is a system of administration in which the authority to rule is conferred by hereditary succession to a singular sovereign. Monarchy, whether absolute or constitutional, contravenes the essential moral tenets of representative democracy, including equality, dignity, and fairness. Monarchs and their family are regarded as morally superior to the citizens, leading to inequitable and undignified treatment of the latter. Monarchs are esteemed exclusively for their hereditary roles, granting them advantages such as dignity, riches, opportunities, public office, and elevated social status—privileges derived solely from the historical context of their family history. Consequently, we possess compelling ethical justifications for the abolition of monarchy. I will succinctly address the pragmatic rationale for constitutional monarchy, specifically that it may benefit society by fulfilling a ceremonial function inside a democratic framework. I contend that countries led by presidential democracies can achieve comparable efficacy, and without any pragmatic justifications for constitutional monarchy, we possess more compelling moral objections to it. Consequently, it ought to be eliminated.

References

- Abbasov, E., Aliyev, E., & Aliyev, H. THE CATEGORY OF INITIAL LETTERS WHICH ARE THE SPECIAL SIGNS OF LINES. *Deutsche internationale Zeitschrift für zeitgenössische Wissenschaft* ... № 73 2024 VOL., 12.
- Axis Turkish Encyclopedia, Monarchy Article.
- Davies, L. (2020). *Constitutional monarchies and the judiciary: The separation of powers*. Oxford University Press.
- Farman, Y. K., & Yusif, E. J. (2025). Abortion: In the Context of the Legislation of Foreign Countries and the Republic of Azerbaijan. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum*, 2(1), 4-9.
- Garibli, I. (2024). Reconsideration of Civil Cases in the Courts of the Republic of Azerbaijan under Cassation Procedure. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis Et Linguarum*, 1(1), 173-179. <https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.024066>



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

- Garibli, I. (2025). Claims in Civil Cases Considered by the Courts. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities*, 2(2), 113-122. <https://doi.org/10.69760/gsrh.010120250039>
- Ginsburg, T., Rodriguez, D. B., & Weingast, B. R. (2023). The Functions of Constitutional Monarchy: Why Kings and Queens Survive in a World of Republics. *Northwestern Public Law Research Paper*, (23-29).
- Johnson, R. (2018). *The historical role of monarchs in the judicial process*. Cambridge University Press.
- Kyriacou, C. (2023). Why monarchy should be abolished. *Think*, 22(65), 39-44.
- Ozturk, A. (2024). Problems with the Right to Legitimacy. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis Et Linguarum*, 1(1), 180-186. <https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.010240767>
- Parker, J. (2019). *The evolution of constitutional monarchies in Europe*. *European Politics Review*, 17(3), 112-130.
- Smith, D. (2021). *Monarchy and governance: The changing role of the judiciary*. *Government Studies Quarterly*, 45(2), 88-105.
- The Monarchy. Retrieved from: <https://consoc.org.uk/the-constitution-explained/the-monarchy/>
- Tofig, H. (2024). THE COMBAT AGAINST NARCOMANIA AS ENSURING A HEALTHY LIFE IN SOCIETY. *Deutsche internationale Zeitschrift für zeitgenössische Wissenschaft* ... № 73 2024 VOL., 15.
- Trzciński, K. (2007). A reversal of perspective: the subject as citizen under absolute monarchy, or the ambiguity of notions.
- Викулова, Л. Г., & Васильева, Е. Г. (2018). Вербализация портрета монарха как вторичная семиотизация института власти. *Верхневолжский филологический вестник*, (1), 63-71.
- Матарас, В. Н. (2016). Методы исследования форм государства в историческом времени и пространстве.
- Махлянюкова, М. В. (2020). ТЕОКРАТИЧЕСКАЯ МОНАРХИЯ КАК ГИБРИДНАЯ ФОРМА ПРАВЛЕНИЯ НА ПРИМЕРЕ ВАТИКАНА. *СТРАТЕГІЧНІ ПРІОРИТЕТИ РОЗВИТКУ ЕКОНОМІКИ, ОБЛІКУ, ФІНАНСІВ І ПРАВА*, 35.
- Орлов, А. Г. (1995). Президентские республики в Латинской Америке. М.: МГИМО.
- Парфенова, Т. А. (2020). Дуалистическая монархия: проблемы идентификации. *Пролог: журнал о праве*, (4 (28)), 20-26.
- Серегин, А. В. (2003). *Теоретические проблемы монархической формы правления* (Doctoral dissertation, автореферат диссертации... кандидата юридических наук/АВ Серегин).



Received: 02.25.2025

Revised: 03.01.2025

Accepted: 03.08.2025

Published: 03.12.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Managing and Controlling Innovation in the 21st Century Using Artificial Intelligence



¹Abdulkadir Akman

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002102>

Keywords	Abstract
Artificial Intelligence Innovation Innovation Management Information Processing	Artificial intelligence (AI) is changing companies and how they organize innovation management. In line with the rapid development of technology and the replacement of human organizations, AI may actually force management to rethink the entire innovation process of a company. In response, we explore the implications for future innovation management. Using ideas from the Carnegie School and the behavioral theory of the firm, we examine the implications for innovation management of AI technologies and AI systems based on machine learning. We outline a framework that shows to what extent AI can replace humans and explain what needs to be considered in transforming the digital innovation organization. We conclude our study by exploring future research directions.

1. INTRODUCTION

There is a growing scientific interest in the idea that artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning can replace humans, take over workplace roles, and transform existing organizational processes. The underlying assumption is that, given certain limitations in information processing, AI can deliver higher quality, greater efficiency, and better results than human experts.

Given the potential of AI to perform traditionally “human” tasks in organizations, we might ask whether AI can be used to pursue one of the most important processes that impact a company’s long-term survival and competitive advantage (innovation). At first glance, the idea that AI and machine learning can and should be used by companies for innovation purposes may seem almost far-fetched. However, innovation has traditionally been viewed as a domain for Humans are considered to be “unique” in their ability to innovate.

Although AI may have its drawbacks compared to humans, there are reasons why companies may want to use AI in their innovation processes. Among the exogenous factors for the innovation process is the fact that innovation managers are increasingly faced with highly variable environments, more competitive

¹ Asst. Prof. Dr. Abdulkadir Akman, Director of Continuous Education Center, International Science and Technology University, Warsaw / Poland, abdulkadir.akman@istu.edu.pl, <https://orcid.org/0009-0009-5550-2132>



global markets, competing technologies, and shifting political dynamics. At the same time, the availability of information has increased and continues to increase.

These trends provide strong evidence that the basis of competitiveness is based on information and the problem-solving capabilities of organizations. Perhaps more importantly, in many contexts, the negative effects of innovation risk are compounded by rising costs. That is, the cost of each innovation has been increasing dramatically.

For example, while the transistor density in integrated circuits is increasing exponentially in accordance with Moore's Law, this progress has necessitated further efforts by companies such as Intel. Drug development processes in the pharmaceutical industry show similar trends.

This means that the organizational approach to innovation must be challenged by introducing artificial intelligence and machine learning due to their cost advantages in information processing. Consequently, finding ways to apply artificial intelligence and machine learning in companies' innovation processes should be of interest to innovation managers.

On the one hand, this has the potential to create better ways for companies to respond to their increasingly competitive environment and manage the growing volume of information around them. On the other hand, supporting the innovation process with artificial intelligence can create real value for companies by reducing the risk and cost of innovation processes. Today, human-organized innovation management plays a key role in companies and their capacity to reinvent themselves through exploratory initiatives. However, artificial intelligence can provide instrumental assistance beyond the human realm.

Indeed, both academics and practitioners have stated that artificial intelligence may significantly impact corporate innovation processes in the future. The notion that AI can potentially be used in innovation settings is further supported by the rapid development of artificial intelligence and machine learning, which points to significant and exciting changes in the future. However, our knowledge of the limitations of artificial intelligence in the field of innovation is still very limited. Using artificial intelligence and machine learning for creativity and innovation is very different from areas where artificial intelligence has replaced traditional management.

Following on from the discussion above, this article aims to fill the gap in our knowledge by reviewing the literature and providing a framework for examining the management challenges associated with promoting innovation through artificial intelligence. While artificial intelligence has recently gained momentum in management literature, it is not a new phenomenon.

When the idea of computer systems with artificial intelligence was first discussed by specialists in the field in the mid-1950s, the impact of computer processing on organizations was already of interest to management scholars, notably Richard Siret, James March, and Herbert Simon.

The Carnegie School, in particular, the behavioral theory of the firm, has had a close relationship with artificial intelligence since its inception. Simon argued that "if computers are organized to some extent in the image of humans, the computer is an obvious vehicle for investigating the implications of alternative organizational assumptions for human behavior."

Our research provides a framework for explaining how AI can be used for innovative purposes, and calls for moving beyond human participation in the innovation process. In doing so, we build on the core assumptions of the behavioral theory of the firm and its key concepts. We proceed as follows. First, we



provide the theoretical background to our study. We describe the link between behavioral theory of the firm and AI, with particular attention to organizational problem solving and information processing in this context.

We also examine information processing in the digital organization by highlighting the need for modern companies to compete on their digital capabilities and by explaining new ways of processing information in the digital organization.

In doing so, we describe the innovation process and the limitations of related information processing. Based on this theoretical background, we then examine the application areas of AI in the innovation process and derive a framework for overcoming the limitations of information processing in the innovation process with AI. We develop a set of AI readiness levels in the digitalized organization by examining the information processing capabilities of AI. We then discuss the derived framework and readiness levels by describing the various challenges in implementing AI in the innovation process. Finally, we draw some brief conclusions.

2. Theoretical Background

BTF has been accepted in organization and management theory as a major basis for understanding organizational decision-making and behavior. In its development, they proposed a set of foundational concepts at the cognitive level, built on the concept of bounded rationality, which includes the ideas of satisfaction, search, and organizational routines.

The theory includes a set of relational concepts that serve as theoretical frameworks for explaining how cognitive concepts emerge in organizations. These concepts include pseudo-conflict resolution, uncertainty avoidance, problem-oriented search, and organizational learning.

There is interest among researchers in reexamining the various concepts presented in the "Behavioral Theory of the Firm" in the context of recent developments in artificial intelligence. The idea originally put forward by BTF was that organizational problem solving could be understood by viewing organizations as information processing systems built by simple "if-then" computational algorithms, which were at the core of artificial intelligence at the time. The logic of viewing an organization as a simple algorithm or combination of algorithms that process information is deeply embedded in BTF.

2.1. Behavioral Theory of the Firm and Information Processing

Information processing is a key component of innovation in organizations. A central activity in innovation management is the decision-making process, which requires the processing of information by managers involved in the innovation process. The role of management in information processing is to make decisions about the inputs to the process in terms of data, edge knowledge and other information.

The information then needs to be processed, in other words, the data, knowledge and information are collected and analyzed. Ultimately, after processing the information, management is responsible for decision-making. With the advent of machine learning, a type of artificial intelligence that allows machines to "learn" from data and experience without explicit programming – the way information is processed in organizations is rapidly changing. All of the above steps in organizational information processing can be supported or, in some cases, taken over by artificial intelligence systems. In fact, modern digital organizations exhibit certain characteristics that fundamentally change the way information is processed in organizations. Interestingly, today's organizations are changing in a way that makes it difficult for management to access and analyze some information elements.



2.2. Information Processing in the Digitalized Organization

The emerging digital organization has a strong backbone of highly integrated machine learning and computer science. This means that a large number of processes are automated through algorithms. Some authors suggest that this should be an organizational pillar and that organizations should therefore consider their core capabilities as digital capabilities.

These services interact with customers and suppliers and enable the storage of information and knowledge. Therefore, an increasing amount of information and knowledge is stored electronically without human intervention. The digitized organization becomes the main component and the social system of an organization becomes less central.

As a result, it can be said that managers who are responsible for managing innovation and decision-making are less effective, not only because of human limitations, but also because they may be constrained by operating outside the relevant information flow.

It can be assumed that managers who have access to this information are a small subset of the management set, meaning that many managers may have less information, both quantitatively and qualitatively, than they did before the advent of computerized organizations and technological changes in the workplace.

These background realities require a model in which artificial intelligence-based innovation, machine learning, computer information, and processes are integrated into innovation management. As artificial intelligence further advances, it can be said that the role of innovation management will change in line with the advancement of artificial intelligence and machine learning. Therefore, human innovation management is expected to work alongside artificial intelligence and machine learning algorithms in identifying and selecting opportunities as well as exploring the organization's next competitive advantage.

We believe that the increasing implementation of e-services and automation, along with the general transformation to digital organizations, will change the role of innovation management. As in the past, innovation managers faced two specific obstacles when they try to identify or develop new opportunities and ideas.

First, they must overcome information processing limitations that limit the amount of information about new opportunities or potential solutions that the company can pursue. These information processing limitations are often the result of managers' cognitive limitations, that is, the human mental capacities to absorb or process information are biologically limited. The second obstacle that managers face is the result of ineffective or local search routines. This obstacle specifies that managers generally seek solutions in knowledge domains that are relevant to the company's and their own existing knowledge base. This suggests that most solutions are relatively incremental in their innovative direction, as they rely heavily on existing knowledge. However, to generate a more creative and innovative idea or opportunity, managers must expand the search beyond existing knowledge areas to new areas that are more exploratory in nature.

Thus, although access may be more limited in increasingly digitalized organizations, as managers are able to process large amounts of information about possible solution approaches and opportunities, they should be able to narrow down the set of possible solutions, the most promising ones, and identify the truly exciting opportunities. Furthermore, as managers can go beyond their current knowledge base with the help of artificial intelligence, they should be able to generate more innovative solutions and identify more creative opportunities.



The AI solutions that can be deployed are not simple, and AI participation in the innovation process may be challenging. It will also be difficult to replace human participation. Any AI-based system that seeks to support management in these efforts must be able to overcome the same obstacles that human managers face in the innovation process. The above discussion develops the basic perspective used to develop a framework for examining the management challenges associated with promoting innovation through AI.

Table 1 below provides an overview of the literature streams and topics covered in our theoretical background section. We bring together behavioral theory of the firm and its focus on information processing with the literature on the digitalized organization and innovation processes to theorize about the challenges that management faces with AI and innovation. Next, we will discuss specific analysis.

2.3 Areas of Application of Artificial Intelligence in the Innovation Process

By combining the obstacles that both humans and artificial intelligence systems must overcome in the innovation process with the key activities of idea generation and development that must be performed, we can obtain a framework of creative application areas of artificial intelligence in the innovation process.

To understand the possibilities of artificial intelligence, we need to identify where artificial intelligence can help and potentially replace human decision-making in innovation management. Specifically, there are four areas where human decision-making can be theoretically supported:

- (1) Developing ideas by overcoming information processing limitations.
- (2) Generating ideas by overcoming information processing limitations.
- (3) Developing ideas by overcoming local search routines.
- (4) Generating ideas by overcoming local search routines. These four areas are illustrated in Figure 1, along with a brief description of what AI in each quadrant should be able to do.

The next section provides an overview of the current capabilities of AI systems in supporting humans in the aforementioned areas of the innovation process, highlighting examples in each quadrant of Figure 1.

3. AREAS OF APPLICATION OF ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE IN THE INNOVATION PROCESS

By combining the obstacles that both humans and artificial intelligence systems must overcome in the innovation process with the key activities of idea generation and development that must be performed, we can obtain a framework of creative application areas of artificial intelligence in the innovation process. To understand the possibilities of artificial intelligence, we need to identify where artificial intelligence can help and potentially replace human decision-making in innovation management. Specifically, there are four areas where human decision-making can be theoretically supported:

- (1) Developing ideas by overcoming information processing limitations.
- (2) Generating ideas by overcoming information processing limitations.
- (3) Developing ideas by overcoming local search routines.
- (4) Generating ideas by overcoming local search routines. These four areas are illustrated in Figure 1, along with a brief description of what AI in each quadrant should be able to do.



The next section provides an overview of the current capabilities of AI systems in supporting humans in the aforementioned areas of the innovation process, highlighting examples in each quadrant of Figure 1.

3.1. Overcoming Information Processing Limitations with AI for Idea Development

Current AI systems excel at overcoming human information processing limitations in the areas of idea and opportunity development. Currently, AI systems They rely heavily on deep neural networks that require and are capable of processing large amounts of data. With this feature, we see a large number of artificial intelligence systems that can support humans in developing ideas, opportunities, and solution approaches and discover interesting areas by processing much larger volumes of information than is possible for humans. Research Indeed, these technologies are already creating significant economic value for companies. In this context, referring to quadrant 1 in Figure 1, we find a number of interesting applications of artificial intelligence across a wide range of domains. This development is strongly associated with improved conditions for innovation. There are many exciting applications of artificial intelligence systems in materials discovery.

A review of literary trends and topics

Authors	Subject	Literature Current
Argote and Greve (2007), Cyert and March.(2012) and Gavetti et al (1963), Piezunka et al. (2019), Posen et al. (2018) and Puranam et al.(2015)	Overview Renewed interest in BTF due to advances in artificial intelligence	Behavioral Theory of the Firm (BTF)
McNally and Schmidt (2011) and van Riel et al (2004) .) Samuel, (1959)	The Importance of Innovation in Organizations. Machine Learning Capabilities.	Information processing
Lenka et al.(2017).George et al. (2014), Lanzolla et al. (2007) , and Zammuto et al.(2018)	Digital capabilities of new methods of knowledge and information management.	Digitalized organizations
Kijkuit and van den Ende (2007); Martin (2003)and Wilson (2016); Shane Eggers and Kaplan (2009), Nelson and Winter (1982), Williams and Mitchell,(2004) Gavetti and Levinthal (2000), Katila and.Ahuja .(2018) , and Posen et al.(2002) Amabile.(2018) and von Krogh(2019)	Stages and characteristics of information processing limitations in the innovation process The ability of artificial intelligence to overcome information processing limitations	Innovation process

For example, AI can be used to optimize battery components and solar cells, or to speed up the process of discovering new catalysts. In order to discover these new materials, machine learning-based methods are used to predict the most promising materials for testing, thereby significantly speeding up the innovation process.

Of course, there are also interesting applications of AI in pharmaceutical research and development. Here, AI systems include those that speed up the process of protein engineering, which is useful in discovering proteins suitable for technical, scientific and medical applications. The reason why machine learning-based methods are interesting for researchers in this field is that the search space of potential proteins is too large



to be searched exhaustively with existing methods. In addition, AI applications can be used to identify disease treatments.

For example, deep-domain adaptive neural networks have been trained on single-cell RNA genomic datasets to ultimately develop therapies that stop the transmission of malaria. Finally, there are many areas where artificial intelligence systems can be used to drive process innovations in organizations. For example, Celonis uses process mining to identify organizational processes that are suitable for robotic process automation. Celonis uses artificial intelligence applications that enable organizations to implement significant administrative innovations.

Innovation process			
Generating ideas		Developing ideas	
The AI system is able to identify more problems, opportunities, and threats that may be used to generate new ideas (2).	The AI system is able to identify and evaluate more information, which can then be used to develop ideas. (1)	Information processing limitations	Barriers to innovation
The AI system is able to identify and create more creative/exploratory problems, opportunities, and threats to generate new ideas. (4)	The AI system is able to identify and evaluate more creative/exploratory ideas. (3)	Local or ineffective search routines	

Figure 1. Application areas of artificial intelligence in the innovation process

3.2. Overcoming the Limitations of Information Processing with Artificial Intelligence for Idea Generation

There are several AI applications that fall into quadrant 2 of the framework in Figure 1. These AI applications can process much more information to generate new ideas and opportunities that would likely be overlooked by humans working alone. A typical example is an application developed by ai.Outlier. The company uses a set of machine learning methods to process raw benchmark data into human-readable insights.

After analyzing a company's data, Outlier produces a set of customized "stories" that summarize actionable and interesting insights for specific managers. By doing this, Outlier can highlight innovative opportunities for managers. How it can work is illustrated in the following example:

One of Outlier's clients is a large, international quick-service restaurant chain, Tavernet. It sells hundreds of items in thousands of stores, but in one instance, the company found something different. A store that had been closed for three weeks immediately after reopening was selling twice as many sodas as before. This is a big change because sodas are the most common item sold by quick-service restaurants.

Upon further investigation, management learned that the location had been closed for renovations but had not used the previous layout since reopening. The staff had found a better layout for the store, one that coincidentally increased soda sales significantly.

This observation from just one store, a change that was made randomly, can now change the entire company's revenue as it spreads across all locations. As this example shows, the AI-based analytics provided by Outlier was instrumental in developing an innovation at the focal company. Outlier's ability to



find significant anomalies and patterns in business data is one of the ways in which AI can help companies generate or identify innovative ideas and opportunities.

These AI methods may not be able to independently develop complete solutions, but they can guide human managers towards the most promising paths to innovation. Another interesting example in this regard is provided by Tshitoyan and colleagues.

They created an AI system that can extract tacit knowledge from the materials science literature. Their system uses an algorithm—vec2word, a popular neural network in natural language processing applications—to extract concepts from text. The algorithm is able to visualize complex materials science concepts, including the underlying structure of the periodic table, without requiring searchers to explicitly include chemical knowledge.

The AI system can also recommend materials for other applications. By censoring the data, the authors can show that the system can actually recommend materials several years before they are discovered. Thus, the method points to opportunities for future innovations in an already existing knowledge area. This study shows potential applications of AI in Quadrant 2 of Figure 1. That is, AI systems that are able to generate or identify ideas and innovation opportunities, where a large amount of information in an existing knowledge area must be processed.

3.3. Overcoming Local Search Routines with Artificial Intelligence for Idea Development

There is early evidence that AI systems may be able to support humans in the types of innovative activities presented in quadrant 3 of Figure 1. These activities involve identifying and developing ideas, opportunities, and solution approaches in which the process goes beyond the application. Local search routines—in other words, remote search—are used. For example, Autodesk used various algorithms to create a new partition for Airbus crew. The generative design methods employed to invent the new partition create product types that designers could not create alone. The algorithms used by Autodesk were based on the growth patterns and bones of mammals.

They enabled the construction of a new, more efficient, but equally durable crew partition. Therefore, by incorporating artificial intelligence methods into the development process, Autodesk and Airbus were able to create a more innovative solution than would otherwise have been possible.

Even more interesting, some applications are based on generative adversarial networks (GANs). The Creative Adversarial Network (CAN) for art creation, developed by El Gamal et al. (2017), is an example of such an AI solution. A CAN is a type of GAN that is capable of generating original art. The network was trained on 81,449 paintings by 1,119 artists from the 15th to 20th centuries. The system trains two competing networks—a discriminator and a generator—to learn to classify artistic style (discriminator) and to learn style ambiguity (generator). As a result, CAN generates new art that deviates from the learned styles.

We argue that this deviation from previously learned styles is precisely where the CAN system can overcome the local search routine and demonstrate its potential for far-field search. From Since the model first learns about existing art styles, it is also aware of current domain knowledge.

However, it is set up to specifically explore beyond existing styles and, therefore, can generate new ideas. Another related research project by Sbaji and colleagues is called DesIGN -Design Inspired by Generative Networks.



The system can generate new styles, forms, and shapes for fashion apparel. It deviates from existing fashion styles represented in the training dataset, while generating real pieces of clothing. Therefore, it overcomes the local search routine when developing new ideas for fashion apparel.

3.4. Overcoming Local Search with Artificial Intelligence for Idea Generation

Ultimately, AI systems that hope to address Quadrant 4 of Figure 1 must be able to generate or identify ideas and opportunities for innovation in unrelated knowledge domains. One method in AI that may facilitate the generation or identification of innovative ideas and opportunities is reinforcement learning. Recent advances in reinforcement learning, such as unsupervised reinforcement learning and hyperreinforcement learning, have been useful in generating new ideas. Reinforcement learning generally involves training an agent in a (virtual) environment.

The agent uses the reward signal to learn which actions maximize rewards and which actions minimize them. Reinforcement learning requires humans to manually construct rewards, which is a nontrivial and sometimes suboptimal approach to reward engineering.

As Osindero Simon, one of Google's top AI researchers at DeepMind, explains: "To the extent that you design a reward function, you are also designing a solution [...] If it were easy, for us to design a solution, you might not need to learn it in the first place." Unsupervised reinforcement learning attempts to address this shortcoming by allowing the agent to learn its reward function using a stream of observations and actions.

Thus, this approach is the first step towards Enabling algorithms to learn to recognize and achieve goals unsupervised will open up interesting avenues for creativity and innovation. Meta-reinforcement learning tackles a very relevant question regarding how to use learning to improve the learning process itself. Recent work in this area has attempted to devise algorithms that are able to adapt quickly to new arbitrary problems.

Advances in these areas should allow algorithms to become more flexible in terms of solving new problems, which may be useful in generating, discovering, and recognizing new creative ideas and opportunities.

4. LEVELS OF AI READINESS FOR DIGITAL ORGANIZATION DEVELOPMENT

As anticipated above, the various AI systems described in Section 3 are at different levels of complexity in terms of their ability to augment and replace human managers in innovation processes. These levels of complexity can be obtained by looking at the types of capabilities that an information processing system has to complete the functions described in each of the quadrants of Figure 1.

For this, we will consider the "innovation process" and "barriers to innovation" dimensions as the problem space and the solution space. The first dimension, which describes the tasks of the innovation process (idea development and ideation), can also be considered as the problem space that is the subject of the innovation.

According to the information processing view of the innovation process, "the problem space is the internal representation of the working environment" used by the subject, whether the subject is a human manager or an artificial intelligence system.

When going through the innovation process, an information processing system can continue with its current definition of the problem space, which is simply consistent with developing a new idea or solution based on the problem space, or it can decide to include additional data, information, or knowledge.



It thus redefines the problem space and opens up the ability to generate new ideas and solutions. Another way to describe these two options is to describe the first as exploiting an existing problem space and the second as exploring a problem space, redefined, evolving, or different.

To understand the levels of capability of current AI systems in terms of assisting humans in the innovation process, it is important to understand some of the key technical characteristics of these systems. There are two key features of most of today's advanced AI systems that are limited by human capabilities. First, most current AI systems are trained by human AI experts who collaborate with domain experts on the basis of their existing knowledge.

This means that these AI systems must typically attempt to search a broader base of known and relevant knowledge—in other words, most systems are limited in the extent to which they can explore the problem space.

Second, advanced AI systems are tuned in such a way that the learning process is optimized for a given objective function. This objective function is defined by the human AI researchers who implement and train the system.

Furthermore, these objective functions are generally very sparse because the human researchers who calibrate the systems are unlikely to know all possible objectives and therefore tend to fall short in their ability to provide an ideal objective function.

As a result, for most AI applications, the solution space is predefined by humans, and current AI systems therefore have very limited ability to explore the solution space independently. As a result, these two characteristics of AI systems impose technical limitations on the systems' abilities to redefine and explore both the problem space and the solution space.

Furthermore, most current AI systems are limited in their ability to generate or recognize ideas and opportunities and overcome local search routines. However, as explained in Sections 3.2, 3.3 and especially 3.4, some recent developments suggest that AI systems may indeed be able to overcome these limitations.

We can therefore derive a range of what we call “information processing capability levels” for AI systems, which indicate how likely it is that AI systems will replace and complement human decision-making. Broadly speaking, they can be grouped into three capability levels according to the types of information processing capabilities shown in Figure 2 below.

4.1. Level 1 Information Processing Capability: Exploitation

Level 1 information processing capability indicates that an AI system is capable of helping human innovation managers process much larger amounts of information and knowledge than they themselves are capable of doing.

AI systems at this level of capability will primarily be able to support rather than completely replace humans in the innovation process, because by processing more information, they perform a supporting function and do not completely take over the entire innovation process.

Therefore, these AI systems can help humans overcome the limitations of cognitive information processing that often prevent them from fully considering the huge volume of data and paying attention to a large number of data sources.



Properly designed AI systems can both deal with much larger volumes of data and process different data sources. These types of AI systems are located in Quadrant 1 of the Figure 1 framework presented in Section 3.

4.2. Level 2 Information Processing Capability: Developing

Level 2 information processing capability indicates that the AI system can enhance the innovation process by generating ideas or by overcoming local search routines to find new solutions and opportunities.

At this level of capability, AI systems continue to work alongside human innovation managers. These systems excel in supporting managers in two specific ways. First, they help in discovering new ideas and opportunities as described in Quadrant 2 of the Figure 1 framework. Second, they can support innovation managers in developing more innovative and creative ideas and solutions.

These types of AI systems are shown in Quadrant 3 of Figure 1. At present, the technological capabilities of AI systems are still relatively limited, and only a few systems can operate at this level of readiness, as explained in Sections 3.2 and 3.3.

4.3. Information processing capability level 3: Exploration

Information processing capability level 3 indicates that the AI system is capable of discovering new paths in the innovation process. This type of AI system can perform more advanced and difficult tasks in the innovation process and, therefore, can not only support human innovation managers, but can also replace them to a certain extent.

AI systems at the “Explorer” information processing capability level can generate and create new ideas that are particularly innovative and creative. Due to their more advanced information processing capabilities, these AI systems can discover both

new ways to define problems (problem space exploration) and new ways to address the problem (solution space exploration).

As a result, we can expect AI systems with Level 3 information processing capabilities to have a greater chance of taking on a greater share of the tasks traditionally performed by human innovation managers. However, the current state of the art is relatively far from allowing the implementation of such AI systems, as there are few initial efforts for AI systems of this type. This is explained in Section 3.4 with respect to Quadrant 4 in the framework of Figure 1.

5. DISCUSSION

Considering the opportunities for AI to participate in the innovation process, the question arises as to when, how, and to what extent human innovation managers and AI systems can and should work together. Literature often discusses AI's capacity to perform and replace workplace tasks in general terms.

For example, current analyses estimate that proven AI technologies have the potential to replace up to half of all work activities performed by human's 60 percent of all jobs involve approximately 30 percent of automated activities.



Consequently, we think it is important to have a specific discussion about AI's ability to replace humans in the innovation process. Can AI replace the human aspect of innovation management? Initial investment in AI will generate rapid, cheap, and relatively complete manifestations of new ideas that can be innovative.

However, replacing managerial judgment can be difficult, and thus, fully transforming into a digital organization can be problematic. The development and addition of new innovations is often coordinated by a large management team motivated by the discovery of market opportunities.

In this regard, it should be emphasized that innovation management decisions across the organization are inherently complex, and therefore completely replaceable by AI. It requires a set of algorithms that are intertwined, and inevitably, this is done under conditions of significant uncertainty.

It is an art that requires the company to exploit economies of scope, increase and create market power, and create flexible changes and synergies with resources such as the workforce across the company's business areas. Fully utilizing AI is challenging because it requires new ways to address a new industrial environment.

This requires acquiring new knowledge and resources, as well as creating new business areas and new business models to integrate new innovations into existing product portfolios. Companies must create and adjust processes that are aligned with the new product, configure new organizational structures and systems for administrative alignment and governance control purposes.

These are all tasks and activities that can be supported by AI, but within clear and challenging limits. While AI may help with product concept and market analysis, and scheduling resources and systems around it, this is a very complex process. Therefore, AI is likely to be more relevant when new products are launched in areas where the TMT is less familiar. However, its use is likely to be implemented alongside human management.

Previous research has reported that overworked and pressured management may fail to develop sufficient knowledge to familiarize themselves with new products, making uninformed decisions that are difficult to correct and ultimately leading to failure. The use of AI is likely to make a significant contribution to profitability when products are launched that are highly innovative and the role of TMT is different in the future.


Level 3: Exploration	Level 2: Development	Level 1: Exploitation	
Fully capable of exploring and redefining both the problem space and the solution space	Able to explore and redefine the problem or solution space	Able to successfully exploit problem and solution spaces	Search approach
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Discovering new ways in the innovation process - Creating and inventing new and creative ideas - Exploring new ways to define problems - Exploring new ways to address problems 	OR: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Able to discover new ideas and opportunities OR: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Supporting people in developing more innovative ideas and solutions 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Used to overcome limitations of cognitive information processing - Can deal with more data - Capable of processing many different data sources 	Specifications
Sandbox experiments	Initial implementations	Executable applications.	Maturity level
AI systems with increased machine autonomy		Human-designed AI systems	Level of autonomy

Figure 2. Levels of AI information processing capabilities.



How temporary are AI solutions and how difficult are they to implement? There are several challenges associated with implementing these emerging technologies in organizations. Specific challenges lie at the level of the technology itself, as well as at the level of the people tasked with implementing it. Certain challenges also lie at the interface between technology and people.

The first set of challenges, which are closely related to the technology itself, include relatively obvious challenges such as the availability and suitability of data. On the technology side, there is the hardware issue. For example, in terms of computational power, some modern AI applications require very powerful processing functions and large amounts of data to power these processes.

For example, one recent research project that generated fake images using competitive models required the energy that the average American household uses in about six months. Beyond these challenges, the technology is in many ways not mature enough to be applied in professional settings.

Taking reinforcement learning as an example, this area of machine learning is very vibrant, and researchers continue to make very interesting advances. However, while reinforcement learning is a highly researched and interesting area of artificial intelligence, it is mostly applied to developing artificial intelligence systems that can beat human performance in video games.

To date, there are only a few commercial applications of this very interesting type of artificial intelligence. One example of a real-world application of reinforcement learning is its use by Chuxing DiDi, China's largest car rental company. Didi has developed a dispatching algorithm based on reinforcement learning that can adapt to driver demand.

The solution has been tested in a limited number of Chinese cities, where it has shown greater efficiency than previous non-reinforcement learning-based distributed systems. Aside from the fact that many machine learning applications have not progressed significantly beyond sandbox environments, the technology itself is still developing its fundamentals.

Deep learning capabilities were only proven in 2012, and a large portion of patents in AI are still very basic in nature. The second set of challenges is closely related to the humans involved in implementing and using AI solutions in companies. It is well-known that companies often lack the technical skills necessary to successfully implement AI solutions.

Depending on the complexity of the solution to be developed, different skills are required, and since there is a high demand for these skills, companies often have difficulty acquiring the necessary talent. Companies that have employees with the necessary technical skills face the next hurdle. If high-performance AI solutions are to be developed, the team working on the solution generally needs to use technical staff and domain experts.

The problem is that such collaborative approaches to developing AI solutions can be very complex. A recent multi-year project to monitor patients in intensive care units (ICUs) required close collaboration between AI researchers and medical professionals.

This meant that the amount of time required and the level of complexity to conduct the study was much higher than traditional AI projects. But this approach was essential to designing an effective system. Collaborative teams like the one employed in the ICU monitoring project are essential to ensure that the AI solutions developed address the relevant problems that companies currently face.



Finally, there are challenges in linking technology and the humans responsible for implementing it. For example, a limiting factor in the adoption of AI systems in companies may stem from the amount of human intervention required. While AI solutions are intended to automate processes in workflows, it is rare that a complete set of connected tasks can be fully automated.

Furthermore, the solution space that artificial intelligence systems can explore is, in many cases, very much predefined by the algorithm(s) chosen by the humans implementing the system. In addition to limiting the solution space, humans can also be less specific about the solutions.

This is often the case with reinforcement learning machine learning applications, where distributed reward functions lead to highly “creative” problem solving by the algorithm. Machine learning essentially plays the role of the system.

Inadequate human specification can also lead to questionable results in product design. When parameters are not precise enough, the results can be so “creative” that they are largely useless. As a result, human intervention is required, but it has the potential to introduce inefficiencies into processes.

However, human intervention can be beneficial depending on the context. Therefore, one of the biggest challenges is to gain a clear understanding of when to bypass human intervention and when to accept it. Furthermore, it is important to ensure that humans receive actionable information from the AI system so that they can make optimal decisions based on the system’s output.

Another challenge in the human-technology nexus is trust in the AI system. Depending on the design of the AI system, humans can sometimes trust the technology either too much or too little, which creates friction in the use of the AI system. Therefore, designing AI systems that the humans who interact with them can trust sufficiently is an important challenge that must be overcome when implementing AI systems.

6. CONCLUSION

In this paper, we examine how AI systems can support innovation management. Conventional, human-based approaches to innovation management have limitations that are primarily rooted in their incomplete ability to fully address information needs and deal with complexity.

We develop a framework based on the limitations of information processing as presented in the behavioral theory of the firm. We then derive the levels of AI information processing capabilities required for the development of digital organizations.

Finally, we outline the challenges in implementing AI systems that manage innovation in relation to the technology itself, the humans who are tasked with implementing it, and the technology-human nexus. Overall, we note that AI has a constructive role to play where the tried and true benefits of innovation management resources are overshadowed, are impossible due to digitalization, or when AI undeniably emerges as the preferred option.

From our observations, it seems that AI has a clear potential in creating a more systematic approach by integrating AI into organizations that seek innovation. Our research advances the innovation management literature by illuminating the use of AI and machine learning algorithms in organizing the future of innovation.

Our findings point to areas where AI systems can be fruitfully applied in organizational innovation, namely, cases where the development of new innovations is largely hampered by information processing limitations.



For example, AI systems that rely on anomaly detection can be useful when companies struggle with information processing limitations in their search for new opportunities. Finally, we highlight recent advances in AI algorithms that demonstrate the potential of AI to solve more difficult challenges in innovation management. These include overcoming local search and generating entirely new ideas. We look forward to seeing how new advances in AI technology reveal more opportunities and expand the areas where AI can be usefully applied in innovation management.

REFERENCES

- Adner, R., Puranam, P., Zhu, F., 2019. What is different about digital strategy? From quantitative to qualitative change. *Strateg. Sci.* 1–22. <https://doi.org/10.1287/stsc.2019.0099>.
- Agrawal, A., Gans, J., Goldfarb, A., 2018a. Exploring the impact of artificial intelligence: prediction versus judgment (No. 24626). In: NBER Working Paper, NBER Working Paper. Cambridge, MA. . <https://doi.org/10.3386/w24626>.
- Agrawal, A., Gans, J., Goldfarb, A., 2018b. *Prediction Machines: The Simple Economics of Artificial Intelligence*. Harvard Business Review Press, Cambridge, MA.
- Amabile, T., 2019. Creativity, artificial Intelligence, and a world of surprises. *Acad. Manag. Discov.* amd.2019.0075. <https://doi.org/10.5465/amd.2019.0075>.
- Argote, L., Greve, H.R., 2007. A Behavioral Theory of the Firm —40 years and counting: introduction and impact. *Organ. Sci.* 18, 337–349. <https://doi.org/10.1287/orsc.1070.0280>.
- Augier, M., Prietula, M., 2007. Historical roots of the “A Behavioral Theory of the Firm” model at GSIA. *Organ. Sci.* 18, 507–522. <https://doi.org/10.1287/orsc.1070.0276>.
- Autodesk, 2016. Airbus: reimagining the future of air travel [WWW Document]. Autodesk URL. <http://www.autodesk.com/customer-stories/airbus> (accessed 1.29.19).
- Bettis, R.A., Hu, S., 2018. Bounded rationality, heuristics, computational complexity, and artificial intelligence. *Adv. Strateg. Manag.* 39, 139–150. <https://doi.org/10.1108/S0742-332220180000039010>.
- Brynjolfsson, E., McAfee, A., 2017. The business of artificial intelligence: what it can –and cannot – do for your organization. *Harv. Bus. Rev.* Jul 10.
- Bughin, J., Hazan, E., Ramaswamy, S., Chui, M., Allas, T., Dahlström, P., Henke, N., Trench, M., 2017. Artificial intelligence: The next digital frontier? McKinsey Global Inst. <https://www.mckinsey.com/~media/mckinsey/industries/advanced>
- Byrnes, S., 2018. The importance of having an AI-powered business strategy. *Forbes*. <https://www.mckinsey.com/featured-insights/artificial-intelligence/ai-adoptionadvances-but-foundational-barriers-remain>.
- N. Haefner, et al. Technological Forecasting & Social Change 162 (2021) 1203928 <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0040162520392828>
- Charington, S., 2018. AI For Materials Discovery with Greg Mulholland. URL. <https://twimlai.com/twiml-talk-148-ai-for-materials-discovery-with-greg-mulholland/>.



- Charrington, S., 2019. Trends in reinforcement learning with Simon Osindero. This Week Mach. Learn. Artificial Intell. Pod URL. <https://twimlai.com/twiml-talk-217-trends-in-reinforcement-learning-with-simon-osindero/> (accessed 1.3.19).
- Chui, M., Henke, N., Miremadi, M., 2018. Most of AI's business uses will be in two areas. Harv. Bus. Rev. 3–7. <https://hbr.org/2018/07/most-of-ais-business-uses-will-be-in-two-areas>.
- Chui, M., Malhotra, S., 2018. Notes from the AI frontier: AI adoption advances, but foundational barriers remain. McKinsey Analytics. <https://www.mckinsey.com/featured-insights/artificial-intelligence/ai-adoption-advances-but-foundational-barriers-remain>.
- Cooper, R.G., Edgett, S.J., Kleinschmidt, E.J., 1997. Portfolio management in new product development: lessons from the leaders—I. Res. Manag. 40, 16–28. <https://doi.org/10.1080/08956308.1997.11671152>.
- Cotta, C., Troya, J.M., 1998. A hybrid genetic algorithm for the 0–1 multiple knapsack problem. Artificial Neural Nets and Genetic Algorithms. Springer, Vienna, pp.250–254. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-7091-6492-1_55.
- Cyert, R., March, J.G., 1963. A Behavioral Theory of the Firm. Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.
- Daugherty, P., Wilson, H.J., 2018. Human + Machine: Reimagining Work in the Age of AI. Harvard Business Review Press, Boston.
- EconSight, 2019. Artificial intelligence: Global developments, fields of application, drivers of innovation and world-class research. EconSight, Basel. <https://www.econsight.ch/en/econsight-artificial-intelligence/>.
- Eggers, J.P., Kaplan, S., 2009. Cognition and renewal: comparing CEO and organizational effects on incumbent adaptation to technical change. Organ. Sci. 20, 461–477. <https://doi.org/10.1287/orsc.1080.0401>.
- Elgammal, A., Liu, B., Elhoseiny, M., Mazzone, M., 2017. CAN: creative adversarial networks generating “art” by learning about styles and deviating from style norms. arXiv:1706.07068, 1–22.
- Furman, J.L., Teodoridis, F., 2020. Automation, research technology, and researchers’ trajectories: evidence from computer science and electrical engineering. Organ. Sci. 31, 330–354. <https://doi.org/10.1287/orsc.2019.1308>.
- Gary, M.S., 2005. Implementation strategy and performance outcomes in related diversification. Strateg. Manag. J. 26, 643–664. <https://doi.org/10.1002/smj.468>.
- Gavetti, G., Greve, H.R., Levinthal, D.A., Ocasio, W., 2012. The behavioral theory of the firm: assessment and prospects. Acad. Manag. Ann. 6, 1–40. <https://doi.org/10.1080/19416520.2012.656841>.
- Gavetti, G., Levinthal, D., 2000. Looking forward and looking backward: cognitive and experiential search. Adm. Sci. Q. 45, 113. <https://doi.org/10.2307/2666981>.
- Garibli, I. (2025). Claims in Civil Cases Considered by the Courts. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities*, 2(2), 113–122. <https://doi.org/10.69760/gsrh.010120250039>



- George, G., Haas, M.R., Pentland, A., 2014. Big data and management. *Acad. Manag. J.* 57, 321–326. <https://doi.org/10.5465/amj.2014.4002>.
- Geyer-Klingeborg, J., Nakladal, J., Baldauf, F., Veit, F., 2018. Process mining and robotic process automation: a perfect match. In: *Proceedings of the Dissertation Award, Demonstration, and Industrial Track at Business Process Management 2018*. Sydney, pp. 124–131.
- Glikson, E., Woolley, A.W., 2020. Human trust in artificial intelligence: review of empirical research. *Acad. Manag. Ann.* 14, 627–660. <https://doi.org/10.5465/annals.2018.0057>.
- Goldfarb, A., Taska, B., Teodoridis, F., 2020. Artificial intelligence in health care? Evidence from online job postings. *AEA Pap. Proc* 110, 400–404. <https://doi.org/10.1257/pandp.20201006>.
- Goodfellow, I., Bengio, Y., Courville, A., 2016. *Deep Learning*. MIT Press, Boston.
- Groves, P., Kayyali, B., Knott, D., van Kuiken, S., 2013. The “big data” Revolution in Healthcare [WWW Document]. McKinsey Co. URL. https://www.mckinsey.com/~media/mckinsey/industries/healthcare/systems_and_services/our_insights/the_big_data_revolution_in_us_healthcare/the_big_data_revolution_in_healthcare.ashx.
- Gupta, A., Mendonca, R., Liu, Y., Abbeel, P., Levine, S., 2018. Meta-reinforcement learning of structured exploration strategies. *arXiv:1802.07245*, 11.
- Hajli, N., Featherman, M.S., 2018. The impact of new ICT technologies and its applications on health service development and management. *Technol. Forecast. Soc. Change* 126, 1–2. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.techfore.2017.09.015>.
- Hao, K., 2018. AI in China: how Uber rival Didi Chuxing uses machine learning to revolutionize transportation. *MIT Technol. Rev.*
- Hill, C.W.L., Hoskisson, R.E., 1987. Strategy and structure in the multiproduct firm. *Acad. Manag. Rev.* 12, 331–341. <https://doi.org/10.5465/amr.1987.4307949>.
- Johansen, N., Quon, G., 2018. scAlign: a tool for alignment, integration and rare cell identification from scRNA-seq data, *bioRxiv*. <https://doi.org/10.1101/504944>.
- Jones, J.N., Cope, J., Kintz, A., 2016. Peering into the future of innovation management. *Res. Manag.* 59, 49–58. <https://doi.org/10.1080/08956308.2016.1185344>.
- Katila, R., Ahuja, G., 2002. Something old, something new: a longitudinal study of search behavior and new product introduction. *Acad. Manag. J.* 45, 1183–1194. <https://doi.org/10.5465/3069433>.
- Kijkuit, B., van den Ende, J., 2007. The organizational life of an idea: integrating social network, creativity and decision-making perspectives. *J. Manag. Stud.* 44, 863–882. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-6486.2007.00695.x>.
- Krakowski, S.M., Haftor, D., Luger, J., Pashkevich, N., Raisch, S., 2019. Humans and algorithms in organizational decision making: evidence from a field experiment. In: *Academy of Management Proceedings*. Boston, MA. <https://doi.org/10.5465/AMBPP.2019.16633abstract>.



- Lanzolla, G., Lorenz, A., Miron-Spektor, E., Schilling, M., Solinas, G., Tucci, C., 2018. Digital transformation: what is new if anything? *Acad. Manag. Discov* 4, 378–387. <https://doi.org/10.5465/amd.2018.0103>.
- Lengnick-Hall, C.A., 1992. Innovation and competitive advantage: what we know and what we need to learn. *J. Manage.* 18, 399–429. <https://doi.org/10.1177/014920639201800209>.
- Lenka, S., Parida, V., Wincent, J., 2017. Digitalization capabilities as enablers of value cocreation in servitizing firms. *Psychol. Mark.* 34, 92–100. <https://doi.org/10.1002/mar.20975>.
- Lin, K., Zhao, R., Xu, Z., Zhou, J., 2018. Efficient large-scale fleet management via multiagent deep reinforcement learning. *arXiv:1802.06444*, 10.
- Lu, Y., 2019. Artificial intelligence: a survey on evolution, models, applications and future trends. *J. Manag. Anal.* 6, 1–29. <https://doi.org/10.1080/23270012.2019.1570365>.
- Mamoshina, P., Vieira, A., Putin, E., Zhavoronkov, A., 2016. Applications of deep learning in biomedicine. *Mol. Pharm.* 13, 1445–1454. <https://doi.org/10.1021/acs.molpharmaceut.5b00982>.
- Martin, L., Wilson, N., 2016. Opportunity, discovery and creativity: a critical realist perspective. *Int. Small Bus. J. Res. Entrep.* 34, 261–275. <https://doi.org/10.1177/0266242614551185>.
- McNally, R.C., Schmidt, J.B., 2011. From the special issue editors: an introduction to the special issue on decision making in new product development and innovation. *J. Prod. Innov. Manag.* 28, 619–622. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-5885.2011.00843.x>.
- Munos, B., 2009. Lessons from 60 years of pharmaceutical innovation. *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov.* 8, 959–968. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nrd2961>.
- Nelson, R.R., Winter, S.G., 1982. *An Evolutionary Theory of Economic Change*. Harvard University Press, Cambridge, MA. <https://doi.org/10.1017/CBO9781107415324.004>.
- Newell, A., Simon, H.A., 1972. *Human Problem Solving*. Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, NJ.
- Ng, A., 2017. Artificial Intelligence is the New Electricity. O’Cass, A., Wetzels, M., 2018. Contemporary issues and critical challenges on innovation in services. *J. Prod. Innov. Manag.* 35, 674–681. <https://doi.org/10.1111/jpim.12464>.
- Pammolli, F., Magazzini, L., Riccaboni, M., 2011. The productivity crisis in pharmaceutical R&D. *Nat. Rev. Drug Discov.* 10, 428–438. <https://doi.org/10.1038/nrd3405>.
- Parloff, R., 2016. Why deep learning is suddenly changing your life. *Fortune*. <http://fortune.com/artificial-intelligence-deep-machine-learning/>.
- Piezunka, H., Aggarwal, V.A., Posen, H.E., 2019. Learning-by-participating: the dynamics of information aggregation in organizations. INSEAD Working Papers Collection. <https://doi.org/10.2139/ssrn.3425696>.
- Porter, M.E., Stern, S., 2001. Innovation: location matters. *MIT Sloan Manag. Rev.* 42, 28–36.



- Posen, H.E., Keil, T., Kim, S., Meissner, F.D., 2018. Renewing research on problemisticsearch—A review and research agenda. *Acad. Manag. Ann.* 12, 208–251. <https://doi.org/10.5465/annals.2016.0018>.
- Prahalad, C.K., Bettis, R.A., 1986. The dominant logic: a new linkage between diversity and performance. *Strateg. Manag. J.* 7, 485–501. <https://doi.org/10.1002/smj.4250070602>.
- Puranam, P., Shrestha, Y.R., He, V.F., von Krogh, G., 2018. Algorithmic induction through machine learning: using predictions to theorize. *INSEAD Work. Pap. Collect* 1–33. <https://doi.org/10.2139/ssrn.3140617>.
- Puranam, P., Stieglitz, N., Osman, M., Pillutla, M.M., 2015. Modelling bounded rationality in organizations: progress and prospects. *Acad. Manag. Ann.* 9, 337–392. <https://doi.org/10.1080/19416520.2015.1024498>.
- Qin, Z.T., Tang, J., Ye, J., 2019. Deep reinforcement learning with applications in transportation. In: 33rd AAAI Conf. Artif. Intell.
- Raisch, S., Krakowski, S., Artificial intelligence and management: the automation-augmentation paradox. *Acad. Manag. Rev.* <https://doi.org/10.5465/2018.0072>.
- Ransbotham, S., Kiron, D., Gerbert, P., Reeves, M., 2017. Reshaping business with artificial intelligence. *MIT Sloan Management Rev* 59, 1–17.
- Restrepo, J., Christiaans, H., 2004. Problem structuring and information access in design. *J. Des. Res.* 4, 218–236. <https://doi.org/10.1504/JDR.2004.009842>.
- Rhodes, M., 2015. Airbus' newest design is based on bones and slime mold. *Wired*. <https://www.wired.com/2015/12/airbuss-newest-design-is-based-on-slime-mold-and-bones/>.
- Roose, K., 2019. The hidden automation agenda of the Davos elite. *New York Times B1*. <https://www.google.com/url?sa=t&rct=j&q=&esrc=s&source=web&cd=&cad=rja&uact=8&ved=2ahUKEwj64-Ys7LsAhUNCxoKHZblAS4QFjAAegQIBhAC&url=https%3A%2F%2Fwww.nytimes.com%2F2019%2F01%2F25%2Ftechnology%2Fautomation-davos-world-economic-forum.html>.
- Samuel, A.L., 1959. Some studies in machine learning using the game of checkers. *IBM J. Res. Dev.* 3, 210–229. <https://doi.org/10.1147/rd.33.0210>.
- Sbai, O., Elhoseiny, M., Bordes, A., LeCun, Y., Couprie, C., 2018. DeSIGN: design inspiration from generative networks, in: 15th European Conference on Computer Vision. ECCV 2018. Munich 37–44. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-11015-4_5.
- Schilling, M.A., 2017. *Strategic Management of Technological Innovation*, 5th ed. McGraw-Hill Education, New York, NY.
- Schuhmacher, A., Gatto, A., Hinder, M., Kuss, M., Gassmann, O., The upside of being a digital pharma player. *Drug Discov. Today* 6. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.drudis.2020.06.002>.



- Schwab, K., 2018. A Google intern built the AI behind these shockingly good fake images[WWW Document]. Fast Co URL. <https://www.fastcompany.com/90244767/seethe-shockingly-realistic-images-made-by-googles-new-ai> (accessed 1.31.19).
- Shane, S.A., 2003. *A General Theory of Entrepreneurship: The Individual-Opportunity Nexus*. Edward Elgar, Cheltenham.
- Simon, H.A., 1996. *The Sciences of the Artificial*, 3rd ed. MIT Press, Cambridge, MA.
- Spieth, P., Schneckenberg, D., Ricart, J.E., 2014. Business model innovation - State of theN.
- Haefner, et al. Technological Forecasting & Social Change 162 (2021) 1203929 art and future challenges for the field. *R&D Manag* 44, 237–247. <https://doi.org/10.1111/radm.12071>.
- Teece, D.J., 1980. Economies of scope and the scope of the enterprise. *J. Econ. Behav. Organ.* 1, 223–247. [https://doi.org/10.1016/0167-2681\(80\)90002-5](https://doi.org/10.1016/0167-2681(80)90002-5).
- Tran, K., Ulissi, Z.W., 2018. Active learning across intermetallics to guide discovery of electrocatalysts for CO₂ reduction and H₂ evolution. *Nat. Catal.* 1, 696–703. <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41929-018-0142-1>.
- Tshitoyan, V., Dagdelen, J., Weston, L., Dunn, A., Rong, Z., Kononova, O., Persson, K.A., Ceder, G., Jain, A., 2019. Unsupervised word embeddings capture latent knowledge from materials science literature. *Nature* 571, 95–98. <https://doi.org/10.1038/s41586-019-1335-8>.
- Unemyr, M., 2018. Monitor business data for anomalies with AI [WWW Document]. Magnus Unemyr URL. <https://unemyr.com/ai-business-data-outlier/> (accessed 1.29.19).
- van Riel, A.C.R., Lemmink, J., Ouwersloot, H., 2004. High-technology service innovation success: a decision-making perspective. *J. Prod. Innov. Manag.* 21, 348–359. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.0737-6782.2004.00087.x>.
- Varian, H., 2018. Artificial intelligence, economics, and industrial organization (No.24839). In: NBER Working Paper, NBER Working Paper Series. Cambridge, MA.
- Veit, F., Geyer-Klingenberg, J., Madrzak, J., Haug, M., Thomson, J., 2017. The proactive insights engine: process mining meets machine learning and artificial intelligence. In: *Proceedings of the BPM Demo Track and Business Process Management Dissertation Award*, pp. 1–5.
- von Krogh, G., 2018. Artificial intelligence in organizations: new opportunities for phenomenon-based theorizing. *Acad. Manag. Discov.* 4, 404–409. <https://doi.org/10.5465/amd.2018.0084>.
- Wamba, S.F., Gunasekaran, A., Akter, S., Ren, S.J.-F., Dubey, R., Childe, S.J., 2017. Big data analytics and firm performance: effects of dynamic capabilities. *J. Bus. Res.* 70, 356–365. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.jbusres.2016.08.009>.
- Ward, M.J., Marsolo, K.A., Froehle, C.M., 2014. Applications for business analytics in healthcare. *Bus. Horiz.* 57, 571–582. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.bushor.2014.06.003>.



Received: 02.25.2025
Revised: 03.01.2025
Accepted: 03.08.2025
Published: 03.12.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

The Effects of Artificial Intelligence Applications in Natural Resource Management



¹ Erdal Dursun

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002103>

Keywords	Abstract
Artificial Neural Network Genetic Algorithm Fuzzy System Multi-Agent System Swarm Intelligence	<p>Artificial intelligence methods have been increasingly used in natural resource management as an alternative to classical methods. Three computational challenges in natural resource management are data management and communication, data analysis, and optimization and control.</p> <p>Artificial intelligence methods can be a solution to these problems due to their ability to manage dynamic activities in natural resources. There are several artificial intelligence algorithms that have found various applications in various fields.</p> <p>In this article, some artificial intelligence methods, including artificial neural networks, fuzzy models, genetic algorithms, cellular automata, multi-agent systems, collective intelligence, and hybrid systems, are introduced, and some of their applications in natural resource management are listed.</p>

1. INTRODUCTION

Various definitions of artificial intelligence have been proposed so far. In general, artificial intelligence can be defined as enabling computers to perform intellectual tasks performed by humans. Many of today's world problems, such as computational problems, information search and analysis, have been solved by computers in this way.

The basic idea of artificial intelligence is to understand the nature of human thinking and intelligence and provide software that models how they work. But in applied fields, engineers sought to create algorithms that perform tasks like humans. Natural resource management is a field that attempts to manage natural resources such as water, oil, plants and animals, and is of great importance due to the impact of management on the quality of life of current and future generations.

Natural resource management focuses on the scientific and technical understanding of resources and ecology and the capacity of resources required for survival. Three computational challenges in natural

¹ Prof. Dr. Erdal Dursun, Rector, International Science and Technology University, Warsaw / Poland, rector@istu.edu.pl, <https://orcid.org/0000-0002-6255-1380>



resource management are data management and communications, data analysis, and optimization and control.

One way to implement computational tools to address the challenges of natural resource management is to use artificial intelligence methods because they have the flexibility to deal with the inherent dynamics of natural resources. There are many artificial intelligence methods that have been used in various fields.

In this article, several artificial intelligence algorithms, including artificial neural networks, fuzzy models, genetic algorithms, cellular automata, multi-agent systems, collective intelligence, and hybrid systems, are introduced and some of their applications in natural resource management are listed.

2. ARTIFICIAL NEURAL NETWORKS

Artificial Neural Networks (ANN) are inspired by the way the human brain processes information. An ANN consists of a large number of processing units called neurons or nodes that act as a unit. They are connected to each other by a series of weighted connections. The network can have one input layer, one output layer, and any number of hidden layers. Each neuron in one layer is connected to all neurons in the next layer (Chen et al., 2008).

Artificial neural networks can be applied to seven categories of problems: pattern classification, clustering, function estimation, prediction, optimization, content-based retrieval, and process control. Pattern classification assigns an input pattern to one of the predefined classes, for example, sewage odor classification. (Onkal-Engin, et al.2005).

Clustering is an unsupervised pattern classification method, for example, input patterns for predicting the ecological status of streams.(Vellido et al. 2007). Function estimation, also called regression, produces a function from the provided learning patterns.

For example, modeling river sedimentation (Cigizoglu and Alp, 2006) or watershed water supply (Iliadis and Maris, 2007), predicting ozone concentration (Sousa et al., 2007), modeling leachate flow rates (Karaca and Özkaya, 2006), or estimating nitrate distribution in groundwater (Almasri and Kaluarachchi, 2005). Forecasting takes the output from previous examples in a time series, e.g., climate (Kim and Barros, 2001) and air quality. (Agirre-Basurko, et al., 2006).

Optimization maximizes or minimizes a cost function given its constraints, e.g., calibrating the infiltration equation (Jain and Kumar, 2006). Content-based retrieval invokes memory, even if the input is partial or distorted, e.g., proxies for water quality measurements from Satellite imagery.(Pozdnyakov et al. 2005).

3. GENETIC ALGORITHMS

A Genetic Algorithm (GA) is a search method that mimics natural selection. The algorithm evolves until it solves the problem satisfactorily. Of the solutions produced by this algorithm in each round, the best solutions survive and pass on their characteristics to their offspring, replacing the weakest solutions. Each possible solution is encoded, for example, as a binary string called a chromosome. Successive populations of productive solutions are called populations (Chen et al. 2008).

GA methods are often used to optimize model parameters or resource management. Some examples of their application include parameter estimation of a watershed vegetation model (Kumar et al. 2012), groundwater management (Moharram et al. 2012), and stochastic optimization model for air quality management under uncertainty (Qin et al. 2010). (Babazadeh and Tabrizi,2013) also investigated the combined optimization of



water productivity (WP) and crop yield under irrigation management defects using a multi-objective GA optimization algorithm.

4. CELLULAR AUTOMATA

Cellular Automata (CA) are dynamic models, discrete in space, time, and state. They consist of a regular network of cells that interact with their neighbors. The state of the cells is synchronous in time according to rules. Local updates are performed to calculate the new state of a cell at time $t+1$ using its current state and the neighboring cells at time t . Neighbors are cells that are located near the cell of interest, (Chen et al. 2008). Applications of cellular automata include modeling urban landscape dynamics (He et al. (2013), modeling land use and population density and economic activities (White et al. (2012), and simulating population dynamics of plant species (Jie et al. 2010).

In these examples, it is clear how the state of a cell is affected by the previous state of its neighbors. In (Hualin et al. 2012), by setting up a natural development scenario, an object-oriented scenario, and an environmental priority scenario, a model using CA is presented to simulate the underlying environmental evolutionary pattern.

5. FUZZY SYSTEMS

Fuzzy systems (or FS) use fuzzy sets to deal with imprecise and incomplete data. In conventional set theory, an object can be a member of a set or not, but the membership of a fuzzy set can take any value between zero and one. Therefore, fuzzy models can describe ambiguous situations. (Chen et al. 2008).

Fuzzy systems handle incomplete and imprecise data in applications such as function estimation, classification or clustering, control, and prediction. For example, we can mention the characterization and quantification of vegetative drought (Rulinda et al. 2012), estimation of agricultural crop yield (Wieland, et al. 2013), monitoring of sensitive environmental ecosystems in a dynamic semi-arid landscape from satellite images (Meng-Lung, and Cheng- Wu, 2010), estimation of agricultural and plant breeding parameters (Pandey et al. 2013), modeling of fish habitat preferences (Fukuda et al. 2012), classification of fishing areas (Sylaios et al. 2010), assessment of land environmental security (Su et al. 2010), assessment of habitat suitability (Lu et al. 2012), detection of ocean oil spills in SAR images (Liu et al. 2010)) and modeling of rainfall runoff (Talei et al. 2010).

6. MULTI-AGENT SYSTEMS

A Multi-Agent System (MAS) consists of a network of agents that interact to achieve a goal. An agent is a software component that contains code and data. Agents communicate with each other using a high-level language called Agent Communication Language (ACL), share information, receive requests, and negotiate with each other (Chen et al. 2008).

Recently, MASs have been widely used in natural resource management. For example, they can be used in supply chain risk management (Giannakis and Louis, 2011), assessing the impacts of land-use policies (Le et al. 2010), modeling climate adaptation and mitigation options in agriculture (Berger and Troost, 2013), expert system for diagnosing fish diseases (Dongping and Ming, 2012), forest fires (Elmas and Sönmez, 2011)). regional-scale land use change modeling (Valbuena et al. 2010), water dynamics and demand modeling at the watershed level (Farolfi et al. 2010), and human-environment interaction modeling in agricultural systems (Schreinemachers and Berger, 2011).



7. SWARM INTELLIGENCE

Swarm Intelligence (SI) is a form of agent-based modeling inspired by colonies of social animals such as ants or schools of fish. While individual agents are simple, as part of a collective, they exhibit higher intelligence. Self-organization is a key property by which general patterns emerge from local interactions without central control or a general model. These interactions can occur during direct (agent-to-agent) or indirect (through the environment) communication, (Chen et al. 2008).

Ant behavior is the basis for Ant Colony Optimization (ACO), one of the main types of swarm intelligence algorithms. Individual ants move randomly until they encounter a pheromone trail, which they are likely to follow and subsequently deposit their own pheromone on that trail, reinforcing the trail. Ants tend to choose a route with a stronger pheromone concentration, so the route that has received more traffic is more likely to be chosen.

Shorter routes, because they are traveled faster, are more reinforced and have more pheromone. So after a short period of time, all ants will choose the same route to find food. Over time, the evaporation of the pheromone causes less frequented or random routes to be less popular. Another widely used swarm intelligence algorithm is the Particle Swarm Optimization (PSO) algorithm, which is inspired by the coordination of bird populations and schools of fish. (Singh, et al. 2012)

The system is initialized with a random population of solutions or particles that fly around an N-dimensional problem space, where each solution is represented by a point. At each iteration, the particles evaluate their fitness (their position relative to the goal) and share their information about the best position among the population. Each particle subsequently updates its velocity and position with respect to its previous best position and the position of the best particle in the population. The algorithm also includes random functions in the range $[1, 0]$ to avoid falling into local optima.

Environmental applications of ACO include spatial assessment of land use suitability (Yu et al. 2011), optimal management of coastal aquifers (Ataie-Ashtiani and Ketabchi 2011), environmental flow management for rivers, wetlands, and floodplains (Szemis et al. 2012). The PSO algorithm was developed for general minimization but, like ACO, has found wide applications.

Environmental applications include water resources optimization (Cyriac and Rastogi, 2013), oil and gas field development (Onwunali and Durlofsky 2010), groundwater management (Gaur et al. 2011), and rainfall-runoff model parameter estimation (Bardolle et al. 2014).

8 HYBRID SYSTEMS

Hybrid systems combine two or more methods to achieve greater power and overcome shortcomings. There are three main types of combinatory methods based on how they are combined: sequential, auxiliary, and embedded. In the sequential method, the first method feeds its output to the second method to produce the final output.

In the auxiliary combination method, the first method produces some of the information needed to produce the output by the second method. In the embedded hybrid method, the two methods are combined (Chen et al. 2008). The following examples of hybrid systems can be mentioned:



1 Combination of FS with ANN: Estimation of heavy metal concentrations in rice, (Liu et al. 2011) and environmental risk representation in rivers, (Ocampo-Duque, et al. 2012).

2 Combination of FS and CA: Dynamic modeling of complex spatial systems, (Dragićević, 2010).

3 Combination of GA and ANN: Forecasting ozone concentrations, (Pires et al.2012) and Forecasting pollen concentrations, (Voukantsis et al. 2010).

4 Combination of PSO and GA: Multi-objective calibration of large-scale water quality models, (Afshar and Kazemi,2012).

9. CONCLUSIONS

The suitability of AI methods for natural resource management depends on the case. In complex and incomprehensible processes, black-box methods such as ANN and GA may be suitable. ANNs are trained on learning data and derive relationships between data. ANNs have many applications, including environmental applications for classification, function estimation, optimization, and prediction. GAs evolve a set of solutions towards a global optimum. ACO and PSO methods also perform population-based optimization.

SI methods evolve simple agents to collectively solve problems with local interactions. CA and MAS methods are often used to simulate complex systems. CA models systems in space, time, and discrete states that have local interactions. They are used to understanding and predict behavior. MASs employ agents that interact with each other to solve problems. They are often suitable for natural resource management and the study of management strategies.

In contrast, FSs have been applied to many environmental problems, because they can handle incomplete and imprecise data. FSs are often combined with other methods to create hybrid methods. Given the introduction of new methods in artificial intelligence, it is expected that more applications of these methods will be seen in natural resource management and new methods will also be used in this field.

REFERENCES

- Afshar, A., Kazemi, H., 2012. Multi objective calibration of large scaled water quality model using a hybrid particle swarm optimization and neural network algorithm. *KSCE J Civ Eng* 16, 913-918.
- Agirre-Basurko, E., Ibarra-Berastegi, G., Madariaga, I., 2006 .Regression and multilayer perceptron-based models to forecast hourly O3 and NO2 levels in the Bilbao area. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 21, 430-446.
- Almasri, M.N., Kaluarachchi, J.J., 2005. Modular neural networks to predict the nitrate distribution in ground water using the on-ground nitrogen loading and recharge data. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 20, 851-871.
- Ataie-Ashtiani, B., Ketabchi, H., 2011. Elitist Continuous Ant Colony Optimization Algorithm for Optimal Management of Coastal Aquifers. *Water Resour Manage* 25, 165-190.
- Babazadeh, H., Tabrizi, M.S., 2013. Combined Optimization of Soybean Water Productivity and Crop Yield by Multi-Objective Genetic Algorithm (MOGA). *Irrigation and Drainage* 62, 425-434.



- Bardolle, F., Delay, F., Bichot, F., Porel, G., Dörfliger, N., 2014. A Particle Swarm Optimization for Parameter Estimation of a Rainfall-Runoff Model. In: Pardo-Igúzquiza, E., Guardiola-Albert, C., Heredia, J., Moreno-Merino, L., Durán, J.J., Vargas-Guzmán, J.A. (Eds.), *Mathematics of Planet Earth*. Springer Berlin Heidelberg, pp. 153-156.
- Berger, T., Troost, C., 2013. Agent-based Modelling of Climate Adaptation and Mitigation Options in Agriculture. *Journal of Agricultural Economics*.
- Chen, S.H., Jakeman, A.J., Norton, J.P., 2008. Artificial Intelligence techniques: An introduction to their use for modelling environmental systems. *Mathematics and Computers in Simulation* 78, 379-400.
- Cigizoglu, H.K., Alp, M., 2006. Generalized regression neural network in modelling river sediment yield. *Advances in Engineering Software* 37, 63-68.
- Cyriac, R., Rastogi, A.K., 2013. An Overview of the Applications of Particle Swarm in Water Resources Optimization. In: Bansal, J.C.,
- Singh, P., Deep, K., Pant, M., Nagar, A. (Eds.), *Proceedings of Seventh International Conference on Bio-Inspired Computing: Theories and Applications (BIC-TA 2012)*. Springer India, pp. 41-52.
- Dongping, M., Ming, C., 2012. Building of an Architecture for the Fish Disease Diagnosis Expert System Based on Multi-agent. *Intelligent Systems (GCIS), 2012 Third Global Congress on*, pp. 15-18.
- Dragičević, S., 2010. Modeling the Dynamics of Complex Spatial Systems Using GIS, Cellular Automata and Fuzzy Sets Applied to Invasive Plant Species Propagation. *Geography Compass* 4, 599-615.
- Elmas, Ç., Sönmez, Y., 2011. A data fusion framework with novel hybrid algorithm for multi-agent Decision Support System for Forest Fire. *Expert Systems with Applications* 38, 9225-9236.
- Farolfi, S., Müller, J.-P., Bonté, B., 2010. An iterative construction of multi-agent models to represent water supply and demand dynamics at the catchment level. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 25, 1130-1148.
- Fukuda, S., Mouton, A., De Baets, B., 2012. Abundance versus presence/absence data for modelling fish habitat preference with a genetic Takagi–Sugeno fuzzy system. *Environ Monit Assess* 184, 6159-6171.
- Gaur, S., Chahar, B.R., Graillot, D., 2011. Analytic elements method and particle swarm optimization based simulation–optimization model for groundwater management. *Journal of Hydrology* 402, 217-227.
- Giannakis, M., Louis, M., 2011. A multi-agent based framework for supply chain risk management. *Journal of Purchasing and Supply Management* 17, 23-31.
- He, C., Zhao, Y., Tian, J., Shi, P., 2013. Modeling the urban landscape dynamics in a megalopolitan cluster area by incorporating a gravitational field model with cellular automata. *Landscape and Urban Planning* 113, 78-89.



- Hualin, X., Chih-Chun, K., Yanting, Z., Xiubin, L., 2012. Simulation of Regionally Ecological Land Based on a Cellular Automation Model: A Case Study of Beijing, China. *International Journal of Environmental Research and Public Health* 9.
- Iliadis, L.S., Maris, F., 2007. An Artificial Neural Network model for mountainous water-resources management: The case of Cyprus mountainous watersheds. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 22, 1066-1072.
- Jain, A., Kumar, A., 2006. An evaluation of artificial neural network technique for the determination of infiltration model parameters. *Applied Soft Computing* 6, 272-282.
- Jie, X., Baojing, G., Yanting, G., Jie, C., Ying, G., Yong, M., Xiaogang, J., 2010. A cellular automata model for population dynamics simulation of two plant species with different life strategies. *Intelligent Systems and Knowledge Engineering (ISKE), 2010 International Conference on*, pp. 517-523.
- Karaca, F., Özkaya, B., 2006. NN-LEAP: A neural network-based model for controlling leachate flow-rate in a municipal solid waste landfill site. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 21, 1190-1197.
- Kim, G., Barros, A.P., 2001. Quantitative flood forecasting using multisensor data and neural networks. *Journal of Hydrology* 246, 45-62.
- Kumar, K., Hari Prasad, K.S., Arora, M.K., 2012. Estimation of water cloud model vegetation parameters using a genetic algorithm. *Hydrological Sciences Journal* 57.789-776 ,
- Le, Q.B., Park, S.J., Vlek, P.L.G., 2010. Land Use Dynamic Simulator (LUDAS): A multi-agent system model for simulating spatio-temporal dynamics of coupled human-landscape system: 2. Scenario-based application for impact assessment of land-use policies. *Ecological Informatics* 5, 203-221.
- Liu, M., Liu, X., Wu, M., Li, L., Xiu, L., 2011. Integrating spectral indices with environmental parameters for estimating heavy metal concentrations in rice using a dynamic fuzzy neural-network model. *Computers & Geosciences* 37, 1642-1652.
- Liu, P., Zhao, C., Li, X., He, M., Pichel, W., 2010. Identification of oil spills in SAR imagery based on fuzzy logic algorithm. *International Journal of Remote Sensing* 31, 4819-4833.
- Lu, C.Y., Gu, W., Dai, A.H., Wei, H.Y., 2012. Assessing habitat suitability based on geographic information system (GIS) and fuzzy: A case study of *Schisandra sphenanthera* Rehd. et Wils. in Qinling Mountains, China. *Ecological Modelling* 242, 105-115.
- Meng-Lung, L., Cheng-Wu, C., 2010. Application of fuzzy models for the monitoring of ecologically sensitive ecosystems in a dynamic semi-arid landscape from satellite imagery. *Engineering Computations* 27.
- Moharram, S.H., Gad, M.I., Saafan, T.A., Allah, S.K., 2012. Optimal Groundwater Management Using Genetic Algorithm in El-Farafra Oasis, Western Desert, Egypt. *Water Resour Manage* 26, 927-948.



- Ocampo-Duque, W., Juraske, R., Kumar, V., Nadal, M., Domingo, J., Schuhmacher, M., 2012. A concurrent neuro-fuzzy inference system for screening the ecological risk in rivers. *Environ Sci Pollut Res* 19, 983-999.
- Onkal-Engin, G., Demir, I., Engin, S.N., 2005. Determination of the relationship between sewage odour and BOD by neural networks. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 20, 843-850.
- Onwunalu, J., Durlofsky, L., 2010. Application of a particle swarm optimization algorithm for determining optimum well location and type. *Comput Geosci* 14, 183-198.
- Pandey, A., Prasad, R., Singh, V.P., Jha, S.K., Shukla, K.K., 2013. Crop parameters estimation by fuzzy inference system using X-band scatterometer data. *Advances in Space Research* 51, 905-911.
- Pires, J.C.M., Gonçalves, B., Azevedo, F.G., Carneiro, A.P., Rego, N., Assembleia, A.J.B., Lima, J.F.B., Silva, P.A., Alves, C., Martins, F.G., 2012. Optimization of artificial neural network models through genetic algorithms for surface ozone concentration forecasting. *Environ Sci Pollut Res*.3228-3234, 19
- Pozdnyakov, D., Shuchman, R., Korosov, A., Hatt, C., 2005. Operational algorithm for the retrieval of water quality in the Great Lakes. *Remote Sensing of Environment* 97, 352-370.
- Qin, X., Huang, G., Liu, L., 2010. A Genetic-Algorithm-Aided Stochastic Optimization Model for Regional Air Quality Management under Uncertainty. *Journal of the Air & Waste Management Association* 60, 63-71.
- Rulinda, C.M., Dilo, A., Bijker, W., Stein, A., 2012. Characterising and quantifying vegetative drought in East Africa using fuzzy modelling and NDVI data. *Journal of Arid Environments* 78, 169-178.
- Schreinemachers, P., Berger, T., 2011. An agent-based simulation model of human–environment interactions in agricultural systems. *Environmental Modelling & Software*.859-845 ,26
- Sousa, S.I.V., Martins, F.G., Alvim-Ferraz, M.C.M., Pereira, M.C., 2007. Multiple linear regression and artificial neural networks based on principal components to predict ozone concentrations. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 22, 97-103.
- Su, S., Chen, X., DeGloria, S., Wu, J., 2010. Integrative fuzzy set pair model for land ecological security assessment: a case study of Xiaolangdi Reservoir Region, China. *Stoch Environ Res Risk Assess* 24, 639-647.
- Sylaios, G.K., Koutroumanidis, T., Tsikliras, A.C., 2010. Ranking and classification of fishing areas using fuzzy models and techniques. *Fisheries Management and Ecology* 17, 240-253.
- Szemis, J.M., Maier, H.R., Dandy, G.C., 2012. A framework for using ant colony optimization to schedule environmental flow management alternatives for rivers, wetlands, and floodplains. *Water Resources Research* 48, W08502.
- Talei, A., Chua, L.H.C., Wong, T.S.W., 2010. Evaluation of rainfall and discharge inputs used by Adaptive Network-based Fuzzy Inference Systems (ANFIS) in rainfall–runoff modeling. *Journal of Hydrology* 391, 248-262.



- Valbuena, D., Verburg, P., Bregt, A., Ligtenberg, A., 2010. An agent-based approach to model land-use change at a regional scale. *Landscape Ecol* 25, 185-199.
- Vellido, A., Martí, E., Comas, J., Rodríguez-Roda, I., Sabater, F., 2007. Exploring the ecological status of human altered streams through Generative Topographic Mapping. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 22, 1053-1065.
- Voukantsis, D., Karatzas, K.D., Damialis, A., Vokou, D., 2010. Forecasting airborne pollen concentration of Poaceae (Grass) and Oleaceae (Olive), using Artificial Neural Networks and Genetic algorithms, in Thessaloniki, Greece. *Neural Networks (IJCNN), The 2010 International Joint Conference on*, pp. 1-6.
- White, R., Uljee, I., Engelen, G., 2012. Integrated modelling of population, employment and land-use change with a multiple activity-based variable grid cellular automaton. *International Journal of Geographical Information Science* 26, 1251-1280.
- Wieland, R., Mirschel, W., Nendel, C., Specka, X., 2013. Dynamic fuzzy models in agroecosystem modeling. *Environmental Modelling & Software* 46, 44-49.
- Yu, J., Chen, Y., Wu, J., 2011. Modeling and implementation of classification rule discovery by ant colony optimisation for spatial land-use suitability assessment. *Computers, Environment and Urban Systems* 35, 308-319.

Received: 02.25.2025

Revised: 03.01.2025

Accepted: 03.08.2025

Published: 03.13.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

The Use of Artificial Intelligence in Judicial Proceedings, the Challenge of Transparency and its Solutions



¹ Bakhtiyar Najafov

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002104>

Keywords	Abstract
Judicial Proceedings Transparency Surveillance Artificial Intelligence Speed Accuracy	<p>Today, artificial intelligence is effective in most aspects of human life. The reason for this can be attributed to the impressive speed and accuracy of artificial intelligence in processing a large volume of data in a short time and, consequently, the increase in speed and accuracy in performing various human tasks.</p> <p>One of these aspects is the use of artificial intelligence as a consultant in judicial proceedings. The speed and accuracy of artificial intelligence, while eliminating the delay of the trial, minimizes the damage caused by human error in the trial process. However, aside from these advantages, the special nature of artificial intelligence and the high volume of data have caused artificial intelligence to not enjoy sufficient transparency in its performance.</p> <p>Therefore, the entry of artificial intelligence into the judicial arena, despite its many desirable benefits, can lead to deterioration in transparency in trials, creating a fundamental challenge: how can the adverse effects of a lack of transparency be minimized while benefiting from the benefits of artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings? Taking all aspects into account, this article considers “supervision” at various stages of design, training, and use of artificial intelligence as the best solution in this regard; Surveillance that can be carried out from different dimensions, at different stages and by competent institutions.</p>

INTRODUCTION

Artificial intelligence can be defined as the ability of intelligent machines to perform tasks, such as learning and problem-solving, those are typically only possible using human intelligence (Moore, 2020). The remarkable capabilities of artificial intelligence, including its high speed and accuracy in processing large volumes of data and reducing the time required to perform human tasks, have led to the attention of

¹ Asst. Prof. Dr. Bakhtiyar Najafov, Rector's Advisor and Director of International Office, International Science and Technology University, Warsaw / Poland, bakhtiyar.najafov@istu.edu.pl, <https://orcid.org/0000-0002-3674-6790>



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

researchers around the world (Cioffi, 2020: 16) and the idea of using it in various areas of human life (Poola, 2017: 98).

One of these areas is judicial proceedings. In a way, some advanced countries are using artificial intelligence-equipped tools in judicial proceedings, as assistants and advisors to judges. This has led to an increase in the speed and accuracy of judicial proceedings and a reduction in the adverse effects of human error.

The transparency referred to in the article is not intended to provide artificial intelligence with a special transparency to judicial proceedings that did not exist before, but rather, considering the specific characteristics of artificial intelligence algorithms, one of the problems arising from the use of artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings could be that transparency in judicial proceedings is compromised, which is the main challenge examined and efforts made in the article to prevent this problem. If these approaches are successful, AI will provide a proper explanation for all the results it has obtained, which will be tantamount to transparency in its operation.

The present paper attempts to answer the question of how to use intelligent tools in judicial proceedings while minimizing the challenge of transparency in AI. For this purpose, the concept of transparency in judicial proceedings will first be examined. Then, transparency in artificial intelligence and the challenges surrounding it will be examined.

1. TRANSPARENCY IN JUDICIAL PROCEEDINGS

It may seem that the author intends to initiate a debate that will ultimately institutionalize a new concept called “transparency and explainability” in the judicial process of the courts and lead to the development of new laws or the amendment of existing laws. However, it can be argued that the concept of transparency is not alien to the legal and criminal proceedings system in Iran.

In fact, although the legislators have not explicitly addressed the aforementioned concepts, a brief look at the existing laws and court procedures shows that these concepts have not been hidden from the eyes of the legislator and the courts. The emphasis of some jurists (Shamas, 2012: 113) on the public impact of the trial in establishing justice and providing guarantees to the accused can be considered a result of their view of the issue of transparency.

Basically, society's expectation of the legislator and the judicial system based on respect for justice and rights requires that the trial process in the courts be highly transparent and that there be the ability to provide explanations to the litigants regarding the course of the trial and the outcome; an explanation that must, of course, be in a specific format and while maintaining the position and dignity of the judicial system. We will continue to mention examples of transparency in legal and criminal proceedings:

1-1. Legal Proceedings

The Code of Civil Procedure, as the mother law in explaining the dos and don'ts governing the legal proceedings process, contains numerous provisions that implicitly indicate the legislator's attention to the need to observe transparency and explainability in court proceedings. In the following, the issue of transparency in judicial proceedings is addressed from two perspectives: transparency in the information provided to the judicial authority and transparency in the way the judicial authority conducts its proceedings.



1-1-1.1 Transparency in Information Provided to the Judicial Reference

In Article 51 of the aforementioned law, in the place of stating the conditions of the preliminary petition, obligations have been imposed on the petitioners, the non-compliance with which has a guarantee of important execution and can lead to the termination of the case (Shamas, 2012:280). Also, if an event occurs during the trial that takes the continuation of the proceedings outside the framework of the law, it will cause the trial to be suspended until the necessary conditions are met to return to the legal way is (Shamas, 2012:57). In this article, the legislator obliges the claimant to provide transparent and clear information about his name, surname, residence and that of the claimant, as well as to specify the claim and commitments, aspects and evidence based on which he considers himself justified. The legislator has even gone further in the article and, if the testimony of witnesses is part of the claimant's evidence, has also obliged him to mention the names, characteristics and residence of the witnesses. The high sensitivity of the legislator is since the information provided by the plaintiffs forms the basis and foundation of the lawsuit and is also fully effective in the continuation of the judicial process. In fact, a transparent hearing can be expected from the court if the information on the lawsuit is made available to it in a transparent manner.

1-1-2. Transparency in the Manner of Judicial Review

The requirements related to transparency and explainability are not only aimed at the petitioners. The court is also obliged to conduct the proceedings from beginning to end in a transparent manner with due regard for the law. Respect for justice and the realization of rights are part of the correct application of the law. The implementation of the law by the court can be ensured if the supervisory tools are effective, and this supervision is possible if the supervisory authorities know what path the court has taken, through what stages and on what basis to reach the verdict; this is precisely the concept of transparency in judicial proceedings.

Therefore, in Article 296 of the Code of Civil Procedure, the legislator has obliged the court to refer in its decision to the aspects, reasons, documents, principles and legal articles on the basis of which the decision was issued.

In this case, it will be clear to everyone on what basis the court has reached the result. Article 403 of the aforementioned law, in explaining the actions of the Supreme Court of the country as the highest judicial authority, states: "If the court's decision is issued in the form of a ruling, but its reasoning and conclusion are consistent with the ruling and do not contain any other errors, the Supreme Court of the country shall consider it a ruling and confirm it." The above would not be possible unless the court observed the necessary transparency in its deliberations and in issuing the ruling. In such a way that the Supreme Court of the country can identify the path taken by the court and then ensure that it complies with the legal provisions.

From these brief references, it is clear that although the legislator has not explicitly mentioned the obligation of the courts of law to observe transparency in judicial proceedings, he considers the requirements related to it to be one of the main elements of a fair and lawful trial.

1-2. Criminal proceedings

Transparency in this type of proceedings is more important than in legal proceedings due to the specific nature of criminal proceedings and their outcome, which is often corporal punishment or deprivation of liberty. As in legal proceedings, transparency in criminal proceedings can be examined from two



perspectives: transparency in the information provided to the judicial authority and transparency in the manner in which the judicial authority conducts its proceedings.

1-2-1. Transparency in Information Provided to the Judicial Reference

The legislator has stated in Article 5 of the Code of Criminal Procedure: "The accused must be informed promptly of the subject of the accusation and the evidence of the accusation and enjoy the right of access to a lawyer and other defense rights mentioned in this law."

In addition to the need to respect the rights of individuals, the colorful role of the accused in criminal proceedings and the need for transparency in the processing of judicial appeals have led the legislator to take action regarding the above article, because until the accused is transparently informed of his accusation and the relevant evidence, he cannot present his defenses to the judicial authority in a transparent and effective manner, and naturally, transparency in the proceedings will not be achieved.

1-2-2.2 Transparency in the Manner of Handling a Judicial Appeal

Like legal proceedings, the requirements related to transparency will also govern the manner of handling a criminal appeal. As Article 239 of the Code of Criminal Procedure has deemed the issuer of the temporary detention order to be obliged to state the reasons and legal basis for his decision and considers justification to be a requirement of this decision.

This is while the temporary detention order is not the final outcome of the criminal proceedings. In fact, the great importance of transparency and explainability in criminal proceedings is one of the reasons for the above regulation, so that the accused and the supervisory authorities know for what reasons and through what stages the detention was carried out. The requirements related to transparency have been of such importance to the legislator that in Article 100 of the aforementioned law, it has formally recognized the right of the complainant to access the contents of the file and has considered the only exception to it to be interests necessary to discover the truth. Then, in Commentary 1 of the same article, it has stipulated that in the event of the rejection of the complainant's request for access to the contents of the file by the investigator, this decision must be communicated to the complainant with written reasons, and he will have the right to object to the aforementioned decision. In addition, apparently this limitation is only in the judiciary. (Khaleghi, 2016:146).

In addition, the legislator has explicitly stipulated in Article 374 of the Code of Criminal Procedure: "The court's decision must be substantiated, based on and documented in the articles of the law and the principles on which it was issued. In such a way, persons involved in the trial and also supervisory authorities can be well informed of what happened in the trial and led to the court's ruling.

It is noted that, like legal proceedings, transparency in criminal proceedings has also been a necessary and legislatively considered matter. Finally, it should be noted that the explainability of court decisions does not mean that any person at any time and place is allowed to ask the court about the reason and method of issuing the relevant rulings. Rather, by complying with the above requirements, the court has in fact fulfilled both of its duties, because if the course of the proceedings and the confiscation rulings are transparent, the explanation and explanation of the reason for their issuance will not be out of reach.

However, it is necessary to see what the status of intelligent systems themselves is in terms of transparency and what transparency essentially means in these systems in order to be able to find the advantages and disadvantages of the possible use of these systems in judicial proceedings and to judge their use in judicial



matters. To this end, the following section briefly presents an overview of the concept of transparency in artificial intelligence and the challenges facing it.

2. TRANSPARENCY IN AI-POWERED DEVICES

In the previous section, a brief definition of transparency was provided, but the concept of transparency can be observed in various fields of science. (Larsson, 2020: 3). To the extent that some have explicitly acknowledged the multifaceted nature of this concept. (Margetts, 2011: 581). The definition of this concept in relation to artificial intelligence is not agreed upon by scientists, and multiple definitions have been provided in this regard.

For example, some have defined transparency in AI as a combination of the clarity and comprehensibility of the AI's performance and the ability to explain this performance because it is non-confidential (Leslie, 2019: 34). Others have defined transparency as the extent to which ordinary people understand the AI's performance and the ability to assess their relationship with the system (Larsson, 2020: 7). Others, focusing on machine learning, have defined transparency as the degree to which the functioning of systems equipped with artificial intelligence is clear and obvious (Carvalho, 2019: 832).

Regardless of the differences in the definitions provided and while acknowledging the difficulty of providing a comprehensive definition that prevents transparency, in simple terms, transparency in artificial intelligence can be understood as the clarity and comprehensibility of how artificial intelligence functions and the presentation of related outputs. Transparency is sometimes referred to as data transparency, which refers to what data is being provided to AI (GDPR, para. 58).

This meaning is emphasized in Article 12(1) of the General Data Protection Regulation. Sometimes transparency is also referred to as the process followed by AI, which is referred to as algorithmic transparency (GDPR, para. 39). On the other hand, some believe that a distinction should be made between the concepts of transparency and explainability; In this sense, transparency is only considered in the technical field and refers to the clarity of how artificial intelligence works for the designers of the aforementioned systems. While explainability is intended to make the reason for providing a particular output clear to ordinary users.

The author believes that regardless of the scientific evidence of such a distinction, it does not have much effect on it, because in practice these two concepts are necessary and necessary for each other; In other words, if the algorithm and input data to the intelligent system do not have sufficient transparency, it cannot be expected that there will be proper explainability for the user, and if the system does not have proper explainability, the reason should be sought in the lack of transparency of the data or the algorithm. Therefore, the content of this section is presented based on the division of transparency into transparency in data and algorithm.

2-1. Data Transparency

Considering some of the challenges in using artificial intelligence, including the emergence of discriminatory behaviors, violation of individuals' autonomy, bias, and the impact of data input to the system on the emergence of such adverse effects, reflects the importance of data transparency, because for example, if the data input to the system is presented transparently, bias in the operation of artificial intelligence can be prevented to some extent by timely monitoring and setting appropriate rules. Some view data transparency as the disclosure of all information related to the performance of AI (Bertino, 2019: 3).



Of course, a definition so broad as to include algorithmic transparency would likely undermine the intellectual property rights of AI algorithm designers (Asia's AI Agenda, 2019: 4).

To the extent that some countries have seen the solution as granting the material and moral rights of algorithm designers and have refrained from forcing the creators of intelligent systems to disclose their programming codes (Roy, 2018: 86). Therefore, it can be said that the purpose of data transparency is the specificity of the input data to artificial intelligence. In fact, if we think of the process followed by artificial intelligence systems as a factory production line, data is like the raw materials that enter the factory to produce a product.

In other words, AI decision-making and reaching a specific result are based on data; whether this data is initially entered into the system or the machine learns during the user's interaction with the system. Either the individual enters the system in any way, or, based on the system's security weaknesses, it is entered by third parties who gain access to the system.

Therefore, if the data input to the system is transparent, meaning the user knows what data the system has made available to him, to whom the system will make this data available, and ultimately what uses it will be made of, in the event of a violation, timely monitoring can prevent to some extent the bias of artificial intelligence in the effect of data containing directional content. Data input to intelligent systems occurs in two general cases: during machine learning and in interaction with users and its environment. Accordingly, data transparency can be examined in these two stages.

2-1-1.1 Transparency in Data Used for Machine Learning

Machine learning is one of the important capabilities of artificial intelligence and one of its distinguishing characteristics from other digital technologies. The access of machines with this capability to huge data resources (Big Data) will lead to extensive changes in data processing and knowledge generation, bringing numerous benefits. The question is whether the data resources available to machines for learning are sufficiently transparent? It is difficult to answer this question positively, because the large volume of Big Data and the abundance of relationships and dependencies between data make it difficult for humans to control and monitor them precisely. It is very difficult. In fact, machine learning in such a situation is a completely unsupervised learning. (Office of the Victorian Information Commissioner: 2018: 5). Because the high volume of data will prevent the complete supervision of the machine learning process. For example, the data on which the machine is trained may be biased and lead to biased results. (Yavuz, 2019: 27).

This is in addition to the increasing development of artificial intelligence and The tools associated with it have led to concerns about the transparency of AI performance (Delponte, 2018: 9). Especially since the maximum efficiency of AI is more likely to be achieved when its algorithms are trained using big data.

In such circumstances, one must either overly focus on the requirements of transparency, ignore the significant benefits of artificial intelligence, and set it aside, or take a balanced approach that uses oversight strategies to minimize the harms of lack of transparency while benefiting from the benefits of artificial intelligence.

2-1-2. Transparency in the Data Received by the Intelligent Machine in Interaction with the User and the Environment

In order to provide the best possible services, the intelligent machine needs to receive and process information from users and the surrounding environment. This can enable the aforementioned algorithms



to provide personalized services (for example, providing personalized educational services tailored to the individual characteristics of the student). (Unesco. Education Sector, 2019: 12). Today, the Internet is considered one of the main sources of data for artificial intelligence. (Parveen, 2018: 30).

In such a space, monitoring the data received by an intelligent machine can naturally become a serious challenge. In this regard, it is necessary to clarify as much as possible from what sources and for what purposes the information received by artificial intelligence was collected. (Information & Public Policy Division of the Software Industry Association: 2017: 12).

Because transparency in the data received at the stage of intelligent machine operation is also very important. In addition, intelligent systems, like many software, may be subject to cyberattacks and unauthorized interference from others. (Giuffrida, 2018: 776). For example, individuals outside the system may attempt to hack it and enter incorrect information into the system. (High Level Expert Group on Artificial Intelligence, 2018: 16).

In such circumstances, even if there is confidence in the transparency of the data input to the system by the user or the data acquired by artificial intelligence in interaction with the environment, due to the possibility of such attacks occurring and their effects remaining hidden from the user and system observers, it is not possible to speak with confidence about the transparency of the data provided to the system during its operation. It should also be noted that inappropriate interaction with the environment and lack of supervision over the information received can cause problems in the maintenance of intelligent machines. In this regard, we can refer to the Tay chatbot on Twitter. This bot was placed on Twitter to show that artificial intelligence can interact with the environment to improve its capabilities, but about 24 hours after the start of activity and as a result of the provision of racist information by users, it practically turned into a racist bot and was therefore removed from Twitter.

However, the need to pay more attention to transparency and explainability in artificial intelligence and the importance of the issue makes it impossible to abandon efforts to increase transparency and explainability in intelligent systems and reduce the adverse effects of its lack, simply because of the existence of the aforementioned obstacles.

2-2. Transparency in Algorithms it was Previously Mentioned that the Process Undergone by Artificial Intelligence can be Likened to a Factory Production Line

Indeed, if the raw materials that go into this factory are completely specific and clear, but it is impossible to determine exactly what happened to them to produce the product, then the transparency and explainability of the whole thing is blurred. Therefore, in explaining transparency in the algorithm, it is also said that users want to know how a particular output or decision made or prediction made by the artificial intelligence came about. Accordingly, authors are required to “explain how the advanced models they use produce the output.” (Information &Public Policy Division of the Software Industry Association: 2018: 12.)

Obviously, to achieve this important goal, it must be clear what process is followed in artificial intelligence to produce a specific output, and only then can adequate explanations be provided to the user. Like transparency in data, transparency in algorithms also comes with simplicity. It cannot, because it finds obstacles in its path. For example, one of the dimensions of using artificial intelligence in deep learning is which is usually done using artificial neural networks.



In this type of machine learning, the existence of multiple processing layers, inspired by the neural networks of the human brain, and considering the output of each layer of processing as the input to the next layer, makes it very difficult to provide an explanation for the machine's actions. As a result, the operation of AI is not sufficiently clear and transparent to the user and even the person designing the relevant algorithms. (Office of the Victorian Information Commissioner, 2018: 6)

All these factors, together, have made transparency and explainability in AI a challenge. The term “black box” is used to describe the ambiguities in how AI works (Zednik, 2018: 2). However, it must be admitted that a definitive and certain solution to this problem has not yet been presented, because it is still not possible to explain in a fully understandable way what artificial intelligence goes through to reach a specific result (including prediction, automatic decision-making).

But in any case, it seems that, like any other phenomenon, the advantages and disadvantages of using intelligent systems in judicial proceedings should be weighed against each other and then a judgment made. For this purpose, in the next section, brief references will be made to the benefits of using artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings.

3. USING ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE IN JUDICIAL PROCEEDINGS

Today, the complexity of human relationships in various dimensions of life has caused disputes and disagreements between individuals to not be as simple as they were in the past. Some judicial proceedings last for months and even years due to the high volume of information in the file.

Specialization has also had an impact on judicial proceedings, and in addition to the creation of specialized courts to deal with specific cases, it has also increased the amount of specialized information required to deal with common cases.

In addition, especially in our country, the density of laws and regulations and the number of competent authorities for their development have led to the fact that fair and lawful proceedings in the courts require the judge to have control over a very large volume of laws and regulations, with a large dispersion. On the other hand, the striking capabilities of artificial intelligence in processing and managing abundant data with high speed and remarkable accuracy are not hidden from anyone. (Wischmeyer, 2020: 225).

Considering these two issues side by side and the desire to achieve justice as quickly and as much as possible, the idea of using artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings has become a threat to human minds. In fact, the judicial process can be likened to an algorithm, and the data related to previous cases and other sources used for machine learning can be considered the same training data as previously mentioned.

Naturally, the information related to each specific case that is made available to the artificial intelligence to process and provide an output related to that case in the form of advice to the judge should be considered as input data to the system in its interaction with the environment and the user.

Of course, judicial proceedings are not like mathematical data, but when the case information is given to an intelligent machine, the machine, like much other data in other fields, organizes it into mathematical concepts and subjects it to analysis and synthesis.

However, this does not change the essential nature of the data and its content. The speed of AI in analyzing and analyzing data has nothing to do with the type of data received, but rather with the specific ability of the algorithm it uses and the benefits of the computer's features.



The experience of some countries (Wischmeyer, 2020: 180-181) indicates the use of artificial intelligence in the judiciary for consultation and not as an independent substitute for the judge and the term “robot judge.”

In fact, it cannot be claimed that artificial intelligence is currently available to replace the judge, therefore, it is necessary for the judge to remain at the helm and supervise all stages of the trial, because it is acknowledged that artificial intelligence with capabilities beyond Humans are not able to comprehend in all dimensions, even if they can perform all sensory functions, which is called strong artificial intelligence..(Shabbir& Anwer ,2015: 1-2).

Therefore, what is discussed in this article is the use of artificial intelligence alongside the judge and in the role of an auxiliary agent. Continuing and based on the division of judicial proceedings into civil and criminal, we will examine the application of artificial intelligence in these two types of proceedings.

3-1 Legal Proceedings

Articles 257 to 269 of the Code of Civil Procedure are dedicated to the discussion of expertise, and based on that, the court can refer the matter to expertise upon the request of one of the parties or the principal.

However, referring a matter to an expert has its own limitations, including the fact that in some jurisdictions, especially in underdeveloped and underserved areas, there may not be a sufficient number of specialists and experts available; the selected experts may be slow in performing their duties and may not comply with the deadlines set by the court; the selected expert may lose his or her impartiality for any reason and express a biased opinion; the selected expert may be dismissed due to the high volume of cases; Information

Requesting a long deadline from the court is difficult, and although the legislator has established remedies for some of these cases, such as declaring the expert's misconduct, in many cases, harms such as delay in proceedings are unavoidable.

Provided that the AI is provided with appropriate data during the training phase of the intelligent machine, and that there is appropriate monitoring of the data received by the intelligent machine during its operation, it can be expected that the AI will have a realistic and appropriate analysis of the subject of the case and the issues related to it. Therefore, the use of AI can be an appropriate solution for improving the safety and speed of judicial proceedings. In this way, artificial intelligence minimizes the risk of losing impartiality; eliminates geographical limitations; has high speed and accuracy in processing data for each file and is able to perform the work of several weeks or months of experts in a few minutes; eliminates the assumption of sloppiness in performing tasks and raises such challenges. For example, in cases of accidental damage claims, where expert opinions sometimes take months to arrive, artificial intelligence, by receiving information related to the accident, allows the court to conclude the case in a very short period of time.

3-2. Criminal Proceedings

In criminal proceedings in most legal systems, unlike legal proceedings, the personality and behavior of the perpetrator of the crime and the effect of punishment on them have always been the subject of attention of the legislator and, consequently, of the judges of the courts.

The domestic legislator is no exception to this case. For example, in Clause "T" of Article 18 of the Islamic Penal Code, the legislator has considered the impact of the punishment on the accused as one of the



components that the court must consider in determining ta'zir, and in addition, he has taken into account his personal, social, and family situation.

However, correctly assessing these components will not be an easy task. Therefore, in the United States, an effort has been made to use software called COMPAS to assess the likelihood of a defendant reoffending as one of the factors determining the amount of punishment.(Wischmeyer, 2020:. 302)

This software is equipped with artificial intelligence and, by receiving information from the defendant and evaluating it based on previous training data, announces the probability of the defendant reoffending to the judge, and the judge takes action based on the result of the announcement in determining the punishment for the defendant. It increases the accuracy of such decisions. Similar software is also used in the UK criminal justice system under the name HART. (Scantamburlo, 2019: 57-58).

In this way, concerns arising from human error in the assessment of the behavior and personality of the accused are minimized and, in addition, the speed of the assessment is also significantly increased. As mentioned at the beginning of this section, the role of artificial intelligence In judicial proceedings, it is not limited to the analysis of factual data in cases, but in both legal and criminal proceedings, the use of artificial intelligence allows the judge to receive useful advice from intelligent machines in terms of judgment and legal analysis, because in many legal issues, ambiguity in the text of legal articles and other legal sources makes it difficult to understand them correctly and in accordance with the principles of justice. It can be difficult, and in such circumstances, artificial intelligence can play the role of an advisor. In fact, it must be accepted that the nature of the judiciary is such that judicial authorities always need to consult with others.

The organization of weekly and monthly meetings in judicial communities across the country and its transformation into a procedure is a confirmation of the validity of this claim. However, holding these meetings has always been accompanied by multiple time and communication limitations. It seems that the use of artificial intelligence, while removing these limitations, will increase the speed and accuracy of judicial proceedings and will continuously benefit judges from the presence of an authoritative and accurate advisor.

In the first part of this article, it was observed that the court's obligation to make informed and reasoned decisions leads to a reasonable degree of transparency in the proceedings. It seems that with appropriate training, it is possible to create in systems equipped with artificial intelligence the ability to make informed and reasoned decisions at the level of the human agent. Simply put, the ability of intelligent machines to learn to reason and reason, along with increased speed and accuracy, are considered the main advantages of artificial intelligence and have led to the idea of using them in judicial matters.

However, it is natural that this use will face specific challenges in this area, which, if ignored, can have harmful and irreparable effects. Therefore, in the next section, as the final section, while referring to the specific challenges arising from the use of artificial intelligence in judicial systems, an attempt is made to present, as far as possible, an appropriate solution to reduce the adverse effects arising from them.

4. CHALLENGES AND SOLUTIONS

As noted in the second section, achieving transparency, whether in algorithms or in data, is not an easy task and can even be interpreted as a transparency challenge. On the other hand, transparency in judicial proceedings is necessary to achieve a fair and lawful trial, and the use of intelligent systems should not jeopardize transparency in judicial proceedings.



Therefore, in this section, while considering the issue of using artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings, the authors try to explain this challenge from the aforementioned angle and provide a solution to the extent possible.

4-1 The Challenge of Data Transparency

The large volume of data available to artificial intelligence and the fact that machine learning is unsupervised learning to provide maximum capabilities are two key factors that make data transparency a challenge. In the following, considering the division of data transparency into transparency in training data and transparency in data received during operation, this challenge is also examined in the same order.

4-1-1.1 The Challenge of Transparency in Training Data

In the second section, it was observed that artificial intelligence, by accessing a large amount of data and processing it, and discovering the relationships and dependencies between the data, is trained and then, in the performance phase, itself benefits from this training.

The disadvantage of training data in the access of artificial intelligence is regulations (in the general sense, including laws, approvals, regulations, grants, and anything that has a guarantee of implementation). (Jafari, 2017:679).

Court decisions in similar cases (judicial proceedings), principles and rules and legal theories proposed by legal thinkers, and authoritative sources and fatwas in the case of silence of the law. Lack of transparency in any of these data sources can lead to lack of transparency in the functioning of artificial intelligence.

The author considers himself to be enriched by the explanation of the density of regulations in the domestic legal system, the direct influence of regulations on jurisprudence (Emami, 2011:16), and the high breadth of jurisprudential sources; something that is observed in fewer legal systems. The existence of some ambiguous legal texts in the Iranian legal system cannot be denied. This is despite the fact that “the status of the law should be such that its meaning can be understood and understood with the least effort.” (Moezinadegan and Vahedpour, 2018:195).

The sensitivity of the matter requires that the issue of transparency in training data for systems equipped with artificial intelligence be considered more seriously, because an intelligent machine can be expected to perform transparently and provide explainable outputs if a human observer knows exactly what data the artificial intelligence has been trained on. If this need cannot be met, then the principle of using artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings will be questioned, because transparency cannot be sacrificed under the pretext of increasing the speed and accuracy of judicial proceedings. However, assuming that AI-equipped tools play the role of advisors to judges, the impact of the lack of transparency in the functioning of AI on the functioning of the judicial system cannot be ignored. To make the matter clearer, it would be useless to mention an empty example.

In the third section, it was observed that one of the useful functions of artificial intelligence in legal proceedings is that in cases of accidental damage claims, it reduces the time of trial with its speed and accuracy of performance. However, in this case, if the initial training data of the machine is not transparent and this data is available to the intelligent machine in such a way that the number of cases in which the person at fault in the accident is a woman is greater than the number of cases in which the person at fault is a man. If there is more perception, then it is not far-fetched that artificial intelligence will perceive that



"being a woman" is one of the effective components in determining the fault of an accident and, as a result, will include a factor in its judgments that has no legal or legitimate basis.

In such a case, although the issue of bias in the performance of artificial intelligence, which is an independent challenge and is beyond the scope of this article, is also raised, it should be noted that in fact, it is due to the lack of transparency in the training data that this bias is not detectable at the outset and will ultimately lead to a lack of transparency in judicial proceedings. Simply put, there are factors that interfere with AI decision-making that are not accepted by judges and legislators and cannot be discovered due to the lack of transparency of training data.

4-1-2. The challenge of Transparency in Data Received During Operation

In the second section, it was observed that artificial intelligence's access to data is not limited to the training time, but artificial intelligence is constantly interacting with the environment and receives multiple data.

On the other hand, the nature of judicial proceedings is such that the information related to each case is unique to the individual, and it is difficult to find two cases whose content and data are identical in all details and differ only in the parties to the lawsuit.

Therefore, in order to use artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings, it is necessary for the information of each case to be available to an intelligent machine. As noted in the first section, except in exceptional cases otherwise provided by law, this information must be completely clear and transparent to the judge and the litigants.

Naturally, if it is decided that artificial intelligence will serve as an advisor to the court, this information must also be presented transparently to the intelligent machine and, to the extent possible, its accuracy must be verified before being presented to the intelligent machine.

Lack of transparency in the input information to the intelligent system will have the same result as lack of transparency in educational data. Attention to legal requirements and observance of relevant procedures, especially in legal proceedings, requires that any data, other than the content of the file and documents provided by the applicant, should not be made available to artificial intelligence for decision-making. That is, the data must be provided within the framework of the law and with due regard to the maximum legal limits of artificial intelligence. To illustrate the point, an example is given in this context:

"A" files a lawsuit against "B", demanding the price of the sales contract between himself and "B". This is while "A" has a history of multiple criminal convictions and is currently on parole from prison.

In such circumstances, there is no reason for the court to examine the criminal record of the plaintiff, because an individual who is not in a socially desirable position and has a history of multiple criminal convictions may have fulfilled all his obligations as a seller in the present contract and be entitled to receive the price.

In fact, from a legal point of view, there is no connection between the criminal record of individuals and their entitlement in such a lawsuit, and the court of law is not looking to punish individuals. However, it is possible that AI, with access to information related to the applicant's criminal record and the order in which it is applied in the case at hand, may not find the applicant justified and may recommend a verdict of his/her innocence. In such a case, AI considers a factor that has no legal or legitimate basis to be influential in its decision-making.



Of course, even with regard to the information provided by the applicant or complainant, legal limits must be observed, and no order will be given to any data he has provided, and this issue can be resolved through appropriate intelligent machine design, in addition to random inspections by the judge.

The problem mentioned in the above example is caused by the lack of transparency in the input data to the artificial intelligence, because the lack of transparency of the input information to the system causes irrelevant factors to affect the decision-making of the artificial intelligence. If it is clear what information is in the possession of the intelligent machine, naturally, further investigations will be possible and damages such as those mentioned can be prevented. In addition, during the judicial process and as a result of the intervention of third parties (such as hacking systems and providing incorrect information), information may become available to artificial intelligence that has no legal basis for access and can have the same adverse consequences.

Therefore, it is observed that transparency in the data received by artificial intelligence during its operation is of great importance, and like training data, it has also become a serious challenge due to the dynamics of artificial intelligence systems in interacting with the environment and accessing multiple data sources. (Emami, 2011)

4-2. The Challenge of Transparency in Algorithms

“Argument” and “citation” are two essential elements of judicial proceedings and decision-making. In a simple definition, it can be said that the purpose of reasoning is to provide evidence for something. Citation also means referring to documents and evidence that prove the correctness of the statements made by the citation maker. Now, the important question is whether artificial intelligence is capable of reasoning and citation? If so, can you provide details about how you make your decisions and explain the process you followed to reach your decision? This seems to be closely related to the “transparency and explainability” mentioned earlier, since reasoning and attribution can be seen as a way of answering important questions about why a decision was made.

In the case of the human factor, like many other abilities and skills, the power of reasoning is developed by repetition and practice in presenting evidence regarding external statements and events, and it creates the ability to reason in future cases. The situation will be the same in relation to the matter of judgment.

Therefore, in each case, the judge, using previous knowledge and experience, attempts to present reasoning appropriate to the circumstances of that case. It is obvious that experienced judges have a comparative advantage in this matter compared to younger judges, and the reason must be sought in this matter. Artificial intelligence is also capable of acquiring reasoning abilities in this way.

In relation to “citation”, we will also face less complexity because the matter depends on the documents in the case on the one hand and on the authority over legal texts and sources of rulings on the other. Therefore, the authors believe that, considering the ability of artificial intelligence to imitate human abilities, the answer to the first question should be considered positive.

However, in the case of the second question, the challenge of transparency in the algorithm is well-represented. It was previously mentioned that due to the ambiguity of the actions and interactions taken within artificial intelligence systems to provide an output, the term “black box” is used to explain its nature.

Regarding the performance of artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings, the problem is that we do not know how the artificial intelligence arrived at the proposal presented to the judge. This is while considering



the legal requirements for court decisions to be reasoned and documented, the lack of transparency in the way AI operates becomes an obstacle to their use in judicial proceedings, because, simply put, it is not clear whether AI has followed the legal path to provide the relevant output? Has it taken into account all the factors that it should? Is there any assurance that irrelevant factors will not interfere with the output? Has any factor been considered in its decision to the extent that the law requires? And such ambiguities, all stem from the lack of transparency in the algorithm and, consequently, the lack of proper explainability.(Montavon, et al.2018)

4-3. The Author's Research Shows that all the Suggestions Presented to Solve this Challenge are Subject to "Supervision"

In fact, other issues such as data tracking and monitoring of AI-powered systems are also mentioned in this context (High Level Expert Group on Artificial Intelligence, 2018: 13), but they all seem to revolve around the theme of “surveillance”. Of course, it must be acknowledged that, especially in the legal field, a definitive and certain solution to this issue and other challenges has not yet been provided (Wischmeyer, preface: para2), and many countries are still unable to adopt appropriate regulations, even in general terms, for The management of issues arising from artificial intelligence and its use in various fields (including in judicial proceedings) has not been resolved. The reason should be considered the ambiguity of the nature of artificial intelligence (of which the lack of transparency is one of its important dimensions).

However, in any case, taking into account all the circumstances, conditions and limitations, “supervision” can currently be considered an appropriate solution. This supervision is carried out by the human agent and at various stages of the design, training and subsequent activities of the intelligent machine.

Accordingly, at the design stage, the relevant engineers should be required to adhere to standards to ensure transparency in the algorithm, to the extent possible. It will be important to consider the influence of designers in the selection and definition of ethical standards for artificial intelligence (Baum, 2017: 4) on the one hand, and the influence and interaction of law and ethics on each other on the other.

In addition, although machine learning from training data has been introduced as a completely unsupervised learning, it should strive to provide AI with appropriate and useful information as much as possible. This requires interdisciplinary cooperation between lawyers and computer engineers. At the stage of AI activity in judicial proceedings, it seems that the judge will play the main supervisory role.

The role of the government in this regard, in addition to providing appropriate supervisory infrastructure and training a sufficient number of technical specialists (Unesco. Education Sector, 2019: 27), is to provide appropriate training to judges, lawyers, police (Carly, 2017: 26) and other actors of the criminal and legal justice system, to prepare them for the optimal use of artificial intelligence to achieve as much justice as possible, and to have appropriate interaction with actors in the fields of science, technology and business in general. (German Federal Government, 2018: 12).

CONCLUSION

On the one hand, transparency in the trial, although not explicitly mentioned by the legislator, is an certain and necessary principle in judicial proceedings. On the other hand, systems and tools equipped with artificial intelligence, despite their many advantages, do not automatically demonstrate a completely transparent performance due to the lack of transparency in data and algorithms.



This is while the high speed and accuracy of artificial intelligence systems in processing large volumes of data has led to the idea of using artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings being proposed and even implemented in some countries, because artificial intelligence is capable of preventing delays in proceedings with its high speed and accuracy, while reducing damages caused by human error and increasing the accuracy of judicial proceedings.

Despite the above advantages, the use of artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings can lead to a threat to transparency in the trial, given the lack of transparency in it; a problem that arises from the lack of transparency in the training data and the data provided to the artificial intelligence during its operation, as well as the lack of transparency in its algorithms. It seems that taking into account all aspects, appropriate supervision in the design, training, and operation stages of artificial intelligence is the best way to optimally use artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings, and only in this way can we hope that the use of artificial intelligence in judicial proceedings will lead to an improvement in the quality of these proceedings, including their transparency.

To achieve this, it is necessary to first properly train the human resources of the judiciary so that they can have a proper understanding of the concept of artificial intelligence, its capabilities, and the challenges of using it. In this regard, creating in-service training courses, as well as adding related units to the master's degree program, and creating interdisciplinary branches in higher departments in universities will be useful.

In the second phase, consideration will be given to providing the necessary infrastructure and facilities for the use of artificial intelligence in the judicial system. Then, in cooperation with academic experts and experienced judges, steps will be taken to examine court cases, classify them, and create a comprehensive and appropriate data bank so that the necessary data sources can be provided and used for the appropriate training of intelligent machines. During all stages of using the smart machine, the judge will also be responsible for verifying the information and monitoring the performance and output of the smart machine to prevent any undesirable effects.

REFERENCES

- Emami, Seyed Hassan, Book, Civil Law, (2011). Volume 1, Publisher. Tehran: Islamia
- Jafari Langroodi, Mohammad Jafar (2017) Book, Legal Terminology, Publisher.. Danesh Ganj:, Tehran
- Khaleghi, Ali, (2016) Book, Points in Criminal Procedure Code Publisher, Tehran, Legal Research Studies Institute. Danesh Publishing.
- Shamas, Abdullah (2012) Book, Civil Procedure Code, Volume 1, Publisher. Tehran. Darak.
- Shamas, Abdullah (2012) Book, Civil Procedure Code., Volume 2, Publisher. Tehran. Darak.
- Shamas, Abdullah (2012) Book, Civil Procedure Code., Volume 3, Publisher. Tehran. Darak.
- Moezinzadegan, Hassan Ali and Hamed Rahdarpour (2018) Book, "The Principle of Transparency of Law and Its Position in the Judicial Process of the European Court of Human Rights and Criminal Law of Iran," Publisher: Judicial Rights Perspective. Tehran. Iran.
- Baum, S. D. (2017), Social Choice Ethics in Artificial Intelligence, Global Catastrophic Risk Institute



- Bertino, E., Kundu, A., & Sura, Z. (2019), “Data Transparency with Blockchain and AI Ethics’, *Journal of Data and Information Quality*, Vol.11, No.4. Article16.
- Carly Nyst (2017), *Privacy, Protection of Personal Information and Reputation*, Discussion Paper Series: Children’s Rights and Business in a Digital World. UNICEF Child Rights & Business Unit
- Carvalho, D.V., Pereira, E. M., & Cardoso, J. S. (2019), “Machine Learning Interpretability: A Survey on Methods and Metrics”, *MDPI Electronics*, Vol.8.
- Cioffi, R., Travaglioni, M., Piscitelli, D., Petrillo, A., & De Felice, F. (2020), “Artificial Intelligence and Machine Learning Applications in Smart Production: Progress, Trends, and Directions”, *Sustainability Journal*, Vol.12.
- Delponte, L. (2018), *European Artificial Intelligence Leadership, the path for an integrated vision*, Policy Department for Economic, Scientific and Quality of Life Policies. Directorate – General for Internal Policies.
- Giuffrida, I., Lederer, F., & Vermeys, N. (2018), “A Legal Perspective on the Trials and Tribulations of AI: How Artificial Intelligence, the Internet of Things, Smart Contracts, and Other Technologies Will Affect the Law”, *Case Western Reserve Law Review*, Vol.68, Issue3.
- General Data Protection Regulations (GDPR).
- High Level Expert Group on Artificial Intelligence (2018), *Ethics Guidelines for Trustworthy AI*.
- International Telecommunication Union (2019), *United Nations Activities on Artificial Intelligence*, Geneva
- Larsson,S & Heintz, F. (2020), “Transparency in Artificial Intelligence”, *Internet Policy Review*, Vol9
- Leslie, D. (2019), *Understanding Artificial Intelligence Ethics and Safety; A Guide for Responsible Design and Implementation of AI Systems in the Public Sector*, The Alan Turing Institute.
- Margetts, H. (2011), “The Internet and Transparency”, *The Political Quarterly*, Vol.82, No. 4.
- Montavon, G., Samek, W., & Müller, K.-R. (2018), “Methods for interpreting and understanding deep neural networks”, *Digital Signal Processing*, Vol.73.
- Moore, A. (2020), *Carnegie Mellon Dean of Computer Science on the Future of AI*. Available online: <https://www.forbes.com/sites/peterhigh/2017/10/30/carnegie-mellon-dean-of-computer-science-onthe-futureof-ai/#3a283c652197> (accessed on May29, 2020).
- Office of the Victorian Information Commissioner (2018), *Artificial Intelligence and Privacy*.
- Parveen, R. (2018), “Artificial intelligence in construction industry Legal Issues and regulatory challenges”, *International Journal of Civil Engineering and Technology*, Vol.9, Issue13.
- Policy Division of the Software & Information Industry Association (2017), *Ethical Principles for Artificial Intelligence and Data Analytics*.



- Poola, I. (2017), “How Artificial Intelligence in Impacting Real Life Every day”, International Journal of Advance Research and Development, Vol2. Issue10
- Roy, A. (2018), National Strategy for Artificial Intelligence #AIFORALL, India: Discussion paper .
- Scantamburlo, T., Charlesworth, A., & Cristianini, N. (2019), “Machine decisions and human consequences”, In: Yeung, K., Lodge, M.(editors), Algorithmic regulation, Oxford University Press
- Shabbir, J., & Anwer, T. (2015), “Artificial Intelligence and its Role in Near Future”, Journal of Latex Class Files, Vol.14, No.8.
- The ethics of AI. Asia’s AI Agenda. MIT Technology Review (insights/research).
- The Federal Government Artificial Intelligence Strategy (2018), Germany: The Federal Ministry of Education and Research, The Federal Ministry of Economic Affairs and Energy and The Federal ministry of Labour and Social Affairs.
- Unesco. Education Sector (2019), Artiicial Intelligence in Education: Challenges and Opportunities for Sustainable Development.
- Wischmeyer, T., & Rademacher, T. (2020), Regulating Artificial Intelligence, Springer.
- Yavuz, C. (2019), Machine Bias: Artificial Intelligence and Discrimination, Faculty of Law, Sweden: Lund University.
- Zednik, C. (2018), Solving the Black Box Problem: A Normative Framework for Explainable Artificial Intelligence, Germany: University of Magdeburg.

Received: 02.25.2025

Revised: 03.01.2025

Accepted: 03.08.2025

Published: 03.13.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Review and Importance, an Introduction to the Challenges of Artificial Intelligence in the Field of Civil Liability

 ¹ Mehmet Uçkaç

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002105>

Keywords	Abstract
Strategic Principles of Artificial Intelligence Civil Liability Artificial Intelligence Machine Learning	With the expansion of the fifth generation Internet and the increased use of machine learning, one of the sub-branches of artificial intelligence, the legal system will face various legal questions. Considering the wide range of areas in which artificial intelligence is used and the impossibility of examining all of them in one article, this study addresses some of these questions by examining the challenges facing civil liability and artificial intelligence. This study focused on self-driving cars and the use of modern artificial intelligence by doctors, as two common examples today. The primary goal of this study was to provide lawyers with an introduction to artificial intelligence and machine learning and to draw the attention of lawyers and legislators to the challenges facing the legislative field in this area. In the final section, some suggestions are made on existing legal issues, including the legal personality of AI, strict liability, and compulsory insurance. At this stage, it is necessary for lawyers and policymakers to develop strategic ethical and legal principles for the use of AI.

INTRODUCTION

In 2018, a 49-year-old woman riding her bicycle on a street in the US state of Arizona was struck and killed by an Uber test vehicle (Woodall, 2018). The development of self-driving vehicles has been made possible by advances in artificial intelligence technology and the availability of data. Currently, fully autonomous vehicles are not yet ready to be introduced to the market. For example, in the United States, the technology is only allowed to be used in limited quantities in some states.

In Iran and the developing countries of the Persian Gulf, in 2017, specialists from the Persian Gulf Intelligent Industry and Technology Knowledge Company succeeded in producing an Iranian driverless vehicle; although it has not yet reached the stage of general use. (Barzegar and Elham, 2010: 203).

¹ Dr. Mehmet Uçkaç, PhD Graduate, International Science and Technology University, Warsaw / Poland, mehmet.uckac@istu.edu.pl, <https://orcid.org/0009-0001-9488-9036>



However, in the near future and with the increased use of autonomous vehicles, accidents involving these vehicles and the resulting legal questions will arise. One of the important points in this regard is how to determine liability in relation to a robot that has been designed in the form of a machine using artificial intelligence and machine learning. This liability can be examined from both a criminal and a civil perspective.

The impact of the use of intelligence Artificial intelligence and the entry of objects are not limited to the development of self-driving cars; they will soon change various aspects of human life. For example, liability for defective goods can also generate new discussions in the context of the use of artificial intelligence. In the near future, it will also be possible to use humanoid robots in everyday life. Today, in Japan, to help Some robots are used by the elderly (Lee, 2019). Who is liable if a robot causes physical harm to an elderly person due to a disability?

Another example is the use of data in diagnosing various diseases. With the expansion of data and the creation of machines that can predict a person's illness, the question arises: who will be liable for damages if an error occurs in diagnosing a disease? Is the doctor who trusted the device and used it responsible, or the manufacturer and engineer who designed the medical machine? Artificial intelligence has even found its way into the field of criminal law in America.

For example, in some jurisdictions, in order to issue a temporary release order or detention order, software is used to assess the risk of the offender reoffending and then release or detain the individual. The use of artificial intelligence and the responsibility of the judge in the judicial process itself require separate consideration.

A common feature of many products and services that use artificial intelligence and machine learning technology is the ability to make recommendations to the user and guide them in decision-making.(Selbest 2020:1319). AI technology is used in employee hiring (Heilweil, 2019) or lending by banks (Badini, H. & Takhshid,2019) and even medical advice. In this section, the human being consults the relevant program, which is designed using artificial intelligence, for guidance.

However, in many cases he is the final decision-maker. In these circumstances, civil liability What will be the nature of the mistake? Do we need to recognize special liability in this area, similar to the recognition of special responsibilities, such as the civil liability of a parent due to the fault of a child or specific civil responsibilities? In the first lecture of this study, lawyers will be introduced to artificial intelligence technology and its effects on the deconstruction of traditional legal analysis.

In the second lecture, with an emphasis on autonomous vehicles and The use of artificial intelligence by physicians, a number of the effects of using this technology in the field of civil liability are examined. Finally, in the third speech, by referring to existing proposed approaches and examining some principles that can be effective in the design and use of artificial intelligence, the researcher tries to provide a platform for further specialized research.

FIRST SPEECH: INTRODUCTION TO ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND MACHINE LEARNING

Artificial Intelligence

What is artificial intelligence? Not long ago, this question seemed irrelevant to a lawyer; however, in the past few years, things have changed. Artificial intelligence “is generally defined as any hardware or



software program that exhibits behavior that appears to be intelligent.” (Kelnar, 2017) . Some have also defined it as: “The ability of a digital computer or a robot controlled by a computer to perform tasks that are usually associated with intelligent beings.” (Copeland ,2020).

Usually this term refers to “the development and design of systems that are equipped with

human thinking systems: Such as the ability to think, discover meaning, generalize, infer, and learn from past experience. (Copeland, 2020). Some of the things that psychologists use to describe human intelligence have been influential in attributing “intelligence” to computer performance. These points, which can also be useful for understanding artificial intelligence, include the ability to adapt to new situations, learn, reason, solve problems, perceive, and use language (Copeland, 2020).

Today, some intelligent computer programs learn by trial and error, reason by analogy, find answers to puzzles (such as the ability to play chess), are able to perceive their surroundings (whether through sight and taste or by touching and recognizing the surrounding space, such as an intelligent vacuum cleaner), and are able to understand a language and answer questions. (such as many of Google’s smart home devices or Amazon’s Alexa).

Although all these capabilities are currently only partially implemented, the technology is rapidly advancing, and applications are becoming more powerful and complex. Another useful definition for describing artificial intelligence is the one provided by the European Commission’s Artificial Intelligence Task Force, In this definition:

“Artificial Intelligence (AI) systems are software systems (and sometimes even hardware) that are designed by humans so that, when given a complex task, they can reason based on their physical or digital environment by acquiring data and analyzing and interpreting the acquired structured or unstructured data. The findings, or act on the information they have obtained from this data and make decisions to perform the best action with the aim of completing the initial task.

Artificial intelligence systems can learn symbolic rules or numerical models. They can also adapt their behavior based on the analysis of the impact of their previous actions on the environment. It should be noted that the definitions given for artificial intelligence are not the same and have also changed over time. This change in definitions is due to the advancement of science and the increasing complexity of this field. One of the sub-branches of artificial intelligence, which has greatly contributed to its development, is “machine learning”.

Machine Learning

Artificial intelligence in its simplest form has been around for more than a decade. Typically, machine learning was implemented in the form of simple algorithms, which are instructions designed by a programmer. Initially, AI was limited to performing limited tasks with limited data (such as playing chess by a computer) (Kelnar, 2017).

Today, people are generating massive amounts of data using the Internet and devices that are connected to the Internet. As a result, humans were initially unable to analyze the massive amounts of data in a timely manner. Therefore, researchers began designing programs that would allow the software to perform such analysis instead of a programmer analyzing the data and drawing conclusions. Arthur Samuel, one of the pioneers of machine learning, defined it as:



“A branch of study that gives computers the ability to learn without being explicitly programmed.” (Kelnar, 2017).

Here, machine learning is defined as “the task of optimizing and predicting the future for a given set of data by examining various variables to an algorithm.” (Kelnar 2017). Typically, “the most common goal of machine learning is to create a predictive tool for a specific use.” (Kelnar, 2017). It should be noted that the selection of artificial intelligence is not a choice based on causality; Rather, it is a selection based on the available data. (Zittrain, 2019).

Today, there are more than fifteen approaches to using and designing machine learning, each of which uses a type of algorithm. One of these approaches is “deep learning,” which uses modeling of the neurons of the human brain (artificial neural network), which has become known as computer neural networks. In simple terms, with practice and using a lot of data, the computer itself can learn the task that is asked of it through practice, trial and error. (Kelnar, 2017).

This article will not go into more detail about this technology than this introductory introduction. But the important point here, in addition to the variety of machine learning programming approaches, is the lack of awareness of the programmer of all the steps in the computer decision-making process, such as deep learning. This is one of the main challenges and differences between machine learning algorithms and traditional rule-based algorithms.

In rule-based algorithms, the programmer defines specific and clear instructions for the program that are also understandable to humans. For example, like the steps in a cake baking recipe, the programmer tells the machine to do this, if not, do this, then this, and so on (Fry, 2018: 10). However, machine learning algorithms are complex. In other words, just as a human brain goes through different stages of learning, machine learning works similarly.

For example, one of the most widely used types of machine learning today is software that can recognize human faces using deep learning. In this program, the designer does not know exactly what steps the machine will take to reach the specified result. The programmer gives the machine data, specifies the goal for it, and gives it positive feedback when it is on the right track.

But what steps the machine will then take to reach the result is unknown. Now that we have been introduced to the basic concepts in this field, we will discuss the impact of the use of artificial intelligence in everyday life and its implications for the analysis of civil liability.(Filabadi, et al.2018)

EXAMINING TWO EXAMPLES OF MACHINE LEARNING APPLICATIONS

In this study, we provide a legal analysis based on two areas that have received the most attention from lawyers: the civil liability of autonomous vehicles and the civil liability of doctors who use artificial intelligence to diagnose diseases. However, before the legal analysis, we provide an introduction to autonomous vehicles and medical artificial intelligence.

Autonomous Vehicles

Autonomous vehicles are one of the most tangible dimensions of the advanced use of machine learning. Today's autonomous vehicle technology can be divided into six levels: from level zero (no automation) to level five (fully autonomous). Between these levels, there is everything from holding the gas pedal to understanding the environment and obstacles.



The AI technology found in self-driving cars is at the high end of deep learning. Data from the car's sensors is fed into the car's artificial neural networks, where the data is processed, and actionable instructions are provided by the program to operate the car's steering, brakes, and other vehicle systems. The results of these instructions are typically consistent with the behavior of a human driver (Knight, 2017).

But deep learning systems are so complex that if the car exhibits unusual behavior, such as running a red light instead of stopping, it is difficult for its designers to understand why the car made the decision. For this reason, these types of algorithms are sometimes called black-box algorithms.

At the time of writing (early 2021), the United States, home to leading companies in the field of self-driving cars (such as Tesla), has yet to pass a federal law to regulate self-driving cars; although a 2018 bill is currently under consideration in Congress.

However, states have begun to enact their own legislation. Some states, such as California or Colorado, allow the use of self-driving vehicles. Some, such as Illinois and New York, only allow self-driving vehicles when accompanied by a human (meaning there must be a person behind the wheel, even if the vehicle is self-driving). Some states, such as Maryland or Alaska, have also not passed laws or regulations in this area.

In Iran, and some other countries, although no law has been passed in this area at the time of writing, in 2017, after the successful testing of Iranian self-driving cars, the use of these types of vehicles at the city level was temporarily and conditionally banned by the police.

Medical Artificial Intelligence

Another result of data collection is the use of data and artificial intelligence in the medical profession. This is sometimes called black box medicine, which means the use of vague computer models to diagnose disease; Algorithms that, with large data stores, are able to analyze large volumes of data, which gives them the ability to predict the diagnosis of a disease and recommend its treatment. The difference between the new method of diagnosing a disease and the decisions that were previously made based on data is the ambiguity and unknown nature of black box medicine. (Price 2018: 295)

As mentioned, in such algorithms, the process of arriving at the result is unknown. Medical artificial intelligence and medical machine learning have had a very positive impact on the process of diagnosing diseases and helping patients (Minssen, et al. 2020: 2); Including X-ray image analysis (Hosny et al. 2018: 500), designing and building smartphone applications that can detect skin cancer (Zakhem et al. 2018: 1383), and designing elderly monitoring systems that detect when an elderly patient is likely to fall. (Ramanujam et al. 2019)

This technology has attracted the attention of US health and medical policymakers. However, at the time of writing, only proposals have been made as a strategic plan for the development and use of digital technology in health and medicine by the US Food and Drug Administration, and there is no mandatory law in this field.

On the other hand, the use of Artificial intelligence in medicine can cause harm and, as a result, civil liability. Although, at the time of writing, no medical case of harm resulting from the use of artificial intelligence has been found in Iranian law, Persian Gulf countries, and American law, some possibilities can be pointed out.



Given this introduction to autonomous vehicles and medicine based on artificial intelligence, in the second speech, we will examine the conflict between these two is dealt with in the field of civil liability.

SECOND SPEECH: ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE AND THE CHALLENGE OF CIVIL LIABILITY BASED ON FAULT

In Iranian law, discussions of civil liability are not limited to the Civil Liability Law of 1339, and other laws also deal with discussions related to civil liability in a scattered manner. (Safai and Rahimi, 2015:4). Including the Islamic Penal Code, the Civil Code (under the heading “On Obligations Obtained Without a Contract”), the Law on Compulsory Insurance of Damages to Third Parties Due to Accidents Caused by Vehicles, approved in Ardibehesht, 2016, Article 78 of the Electronic Commerce Law, and Article 2 of the Consumer Rights Protection Law, approved in 2009. Despite these various laws, Iranian jurists have divided the general rules of civil liability into three elements:

1: Existence of damage; 2. Committing a harmful act; 3. Causal relationship between the person’s act and the damage that has been caused. (Katouzian, 2013:239).

It should be noted that at present there is no definitive answer to the questions raised in the following discussions, and lawyers are simply investigating various situations of the accident and the challenge of civil liability. Even in many cases, until AI and deep learning technology are used in practice, it is impossible to give a definitive answer to the question. Considering the changing nature of technology and the possibility that existing analyses may change over time, we examine three elements of civil responsibility in dealing with AI.

One: The Existence of Harm

In the laws of Iran and some countries, a compensable harm is one that “is certain and not probable, is direct, is personal, results from an injury that has been inflicted on the person’s right or legitimate interest, has not been previously compensated, and is foreseeable.” (Safai and Rahimi, 2015:99).

And in examining the use of artificial intelligence, the issue of predictability of harm will face challenges. We know that “both in terms of establishing fault and distinguishing the degree of duty that a person has, and in terms of the causal relationship between the act committed and the occurrence of damage, the possibility of predicting the damage is one of the conditions for establishing liability.” (Katouzian, 2013: 300). In addition, “unknown and unexpected damages should not be taken into account in calculating the assessment of damages.” (Katouzian, 2013: 299). Is harm caused by an AI error a remote harm?

For example, if a doctor uses a device to diagnose a disease, he or she cannot know whether relying on the machine’s prediction will be successful or will have a negative impact. Given the black box of the algorithm, mentioned earlier, it is not possible to examine the reasons why the machine chose a particular diagnosis and assess its validity or invalidity. Can the injured party prove foreseeable harm if an AI-based diagnosis results in harm?

Another scenario that could be considered is that the user uses a tool that is designed to provide personalized recommendations based on personal information. For example, based on data provided to the machine, it recommends that the person perform a certain physical activity to treat their back pain. Now, if the person’s back pain worsens, was the harm foreseeable? Given that the program suggested the movement based on information unique to the person referred to, how can it be proven that the harm was foreseeable?



It should be noted that the use of artificial intelligence is due to the fact that this technology can go beyond the ability of human analysis and reach a result for a specific user with a more extensive and detailed processing. (Selbest 2020: 1338). In other words, the manufacturer of the device may be sued even if an ordinary doctor will not be able to raise doubts about the machine's proposed process. Because the device has examined a volume of data that would not have been possible for a normal doctor to examine.

Also, without knowing the process the device went through, how can it be proven that the device made an incorrect prediction? Perhaps the physical movement suggestion was correct and the person was physically injured for other reasons and the damage that occurred was not foreseeable. It seems that relying on machine learning methods that have explainability algorithms can overcome some of the existing challenges. However, due to the limitations of the possibility of using the explainability principle in artificial intelligence, the challenge of examining the ability to predict damage will still exist in most cases.

In the case of autonomous vehicles, the question of predicting damage can also be raised. It seems that despite the existence of the Law on Compulsory Insurance of Damages to Third Parties in Accidents Caused by Vehicles, approved in Ardi Behesht, 2016, there has been no assurance of compensation for damages; Especially since the approval of the new law and the expansion of the scope of accidents that are capable of compensating for damages and the addition of the term “unforeseen accidents”, many of the accidents and damages that occur can be considered included in the definition of the new law. (Bahrami et al., 2018: 83). However, although this exception could include self-driving cars (although the law does not mention self-driving cars), it does not include other tools and machines that use artificial intelligence, and the ability to predict and prove damage will be one of the main challenges ahead.

Two: Committing a harmful act or fault

In Iranian law and some other countries, it is said that liability is generally based on fault, and liability that is not based on fault has a material aspect. Liability based on fault is necessary for the harmful act to be considered fault (Safai and Rahimi, 2015:147). In the field of civil liability based on the use of artificial intelligence, various factors are involved, and it seems that in many cases it is difficult to attribute damage and blame to one of them (Giuffrida, 2019: 443). In the case of automobiles, it seems that in countries where car insurance is mandatory, including Iran, the insurer will not face the problem of paying for damages resulting from an accident.

However, the method of compensation for damages does not eliminate the answer to the question of liability. In other words, the existence of the obligation to compensate for damages by the insurer is an “implicit acceptance of the liability of the vehicle owner.” In these circumstances, in the event of damage, who is theoretically liable?

Can the driver of the vehicle be held liable for damages on behalf of the autonomous vehicle? Should the autonomous vehicle, which is in fact a robot in the form of a car, be considered a legal entity and in this case the legal entity be held liable for damages? These questions are among the challenges facing the field of civil liability.

Another challenge is the criterion for determining faults. Can a doctor who, based on the medical community's tradition, has used an artificial intelligence-based tool to diagnose a disease be held liable? In Article 319 of the Islamic Penal Code of Iran, repealed in 1991, negligence was not a condition for the doctor's liability (Safai, & Rahimi, 2015:160), but the new law, in Article 495, considers negligence to be one of the conditions for the doctor's liability. (Safai & Rahimi, 2015:160; Daraei, 2013:53-80).



In this context, Article 495 and its commentary stipulate: “Whenever a doctor causes bodily harm or injury in the treatments he performs, he is liable; Unless his action is in accordance with medical regulations and technical standards, or he has been acquitted before the treatment and has not committed any negligence, and if acquitting the patient is not valid due to his being a minor or insane, or obtaining acquittal from him is not possible due to anesthesia and the like, acquittal is obtained from the patient's guardian. Explanation. In the absence of any fault or negligence on the part of the doctor in his knowledge and practice, there is no guarantee for him; “Although he has not been acquitted.”

Some lawyers also believe that under the new law, the doctor is presumed to be at fault and the doctor can be exempted from liability for damages if he proves his innocence. One of the factors in proving innocence is that the doctor acted in accordance with medical regulations.

The question is whether the use of medical tools based on artificial intelligence and machine learning in the diagnosis or treatment of disease is considered a departure from medical practice? It should be borne in mind that currently the use of such technologies is carried out under the supervision of a human doctor.

In this case, several situations are conceivable. First, we must distinguish between two situations: when the use of AI recommendations has become medical practice (for example, soon) and when the use of AI recommendations is not medical practice. In the first case (based on medical tradition), the view of some jurists, after examining various cases, is that if the doctor does not act on the recommendation of artificial intelligence, but the recommendation of artificial intelligence is correct and the patient is harmed as a result of this non-compliance, the doctor will be liable.

In this case, if it turns out that the AI’s recommendation was wrong, but the doctor followed the recommendation based on medical tradition, the doctor did not fail to act and would not be liable for any harm to the patient (Price et al. 2019: 1766).

In the second case, when the use of artificial intelligence has not yet become a medical practice (for example, in the early stages of this technology), but a doctor acts based on an artificial intelligence recommendation and it is determined that the recommendation was wrong, if the patient is injured, the doctor will be liable for damages.

Some jurists believe that according to the new Islamic Penal Code, “the use of any new treatment method for the first time carries unforeseen risks, and these risks exceed those common in conventional treatments.

Therefore, placing a patient in a dangerous situation is considered a sin in itself. Therefore, if a doctor wants to use a new treatment method to treat a patient, he must inform the patient that he intends to use the new method and obtain consent or acquittal. (Darai, 2016:56)

It seems that AI-based medical prescription and diagnosis are also among the new treatment methods that require the patient’s consent and consent. But over time, the use of this technology will become commonplace. In this context, the important point is that the customary standard of fault detection and professional custom change over time. This customary standard is also applicable to other situations where artificial intelligence technology is used in a professional matter.

Three: Causation

In this case, a distinction must be made between two cases: when a person uses a machine and the legal system holds the person liable for damages. In this case, proving causation is like any other accident.



Therefore, there is no need for a special explanation. But it is possible that the legal system or an individual who has used a machine that has caused harm may be inclined to hold the AI-based machine liable.

In these circumstances, can a machine or robot be held liable instead of a human? As mentioned, choosing AI is not a choice based on causality, but rather a choice based on available data. In other words, there is no causal relationship. However, some have proposed solutions for ultimate liability, which will be briefly discussed below. (Vafae and Rahimi, 2015)

THIRD STATEMENT: EXISTING PROPOSED SOLUTIONS

Several theories have been proposed to legalize civil liability arising from the use of artificial intelligence, each of which will be referred to. The purpose of this section is not to present a definitive solution, but rather to provide an introductory introduction to existing solutions. A detailed examination of the dimensions of each choice could be the subject of another research project.

Strict Liability

Some argue that, given the impossibility of proving some of the elements of general civil liability, it is better to use strict liability to compensate for the damages caused. In American law, this theory has been used in the field of civil liability arising from defective goods. In these circumstances, there is no need to prove fault, and the manufacturer will be liable for damages simply because of the accident.

Strict liability is based on the theory of creating danger (Katouzian, 2013:185). The Automobile Consumer Protection Law is based on strict liability and in Article 3, it states that “strict liability is imposed on the vehicle supplier without the need for fault.” (Safai, & Rahimi 2015:310).

Here, reference to the philosophy of civil liability can play an effective role. According to those who consider the principle of civil liability to be the prevention of accidents, “it does not make much difference who is liable for damages” (Selbest, 2020: 1320).

With the economic analysis approach, it will also be important who can prevent the accident and eliminate the damage at the lowest cost. However, with the choice of the theory of restorative justice, which is the basis for civil liability, it will be important who is responsible for compensating for the damage.

In my opinion, there is no obligation for lawyers to choose a theory as the basis for civil liability. It is possible that at one time, one theory of compensation may be better than another. The right approach must also be chosen considering the circumstances of the time.

Mandatory Insurance

Another way to indemnify is to make indemnification insurance mandatory for all goods and software that operate on the basis of machine learning. In this way, the software or hardware manufacturer is protected from indemnification. One of the positive effects of such an approach on society is the parallelization of scientific and technological progress in this field.

It should be noted that strict liability can create a fear of liability among engineers and scientists of the country and prevent the progress of science in this field. However, with the existence of compulsory insurance, this fear is removed, and the injured party also has the opportunity to obtain compensation for damages.



Vicarious Liability

Some lawyers have suggested that vicarious liability could, for example, hold a robot design company liable for causing damage. In Iranian law, liability arising from objects, such as that provided for in Article 333 of the Civil Code or Article 519 of the Islamic Penal Code in relation to the demolition of walls and foundations, is different from the vicarious liability we are considering.

In the cases mentioned above, as well as in the example of “damage caused by objects placed on a wall or balcony” (Safai and Rahimi, 2015:268), a person is liable if he is the perpetrator. Also, in the liability of a guardian in relation to the act of a minor and an insane person, the guardian’s negligence and negligence are also a condition. In Iran, even if the employer proves that he was not negligent, according to Article 12 of the Civil Liability Law, he is not liable for compensation for the worker’s damages (although he is required to insure him). (Safai & Rahimi, 2015:323).

However, in the theory of vicarious liability discussed in this article, which is common in American law, the vicarious is due to the existence of a relationship of liability for damage caused by another, Even if he/she is not at fault.

In this type of liability, the employer is liable for damages that the worker has incurred while under his/her responsibility; even though the employer was not at fault. This type of vicarious liability for a company designing a machine or a program based on artificial intelligence poses the problem of potentially creating a pause in the development of science, which is not an appropriate policy to encourage scientists.

LEGAL PERSONALITY OF ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE

Some believe that it is better to give artificial intelligence legal personality. Just as legal personality is used to identify the liability of companies, legal personality can also be used in this context. In this way, in the event of damage to the legal person, artificial intelligence becomes the one who is sued. In Iran and some other countries, some have also explored this theory in the field of criminal liability for autonomous vehicles. (Atazadeh and Ansari, 2019: 8655).

PROPOSED ETHICAL AND LEGAL PRINCIPLES FOR PROGRAMMERS

Given the ambiguity and theoretical nature of many of the discussions that have been raised, lawyers and policymakers have begun to develop a strategic principle for manufacturers of products based on artificial intelligence. Thus, while it is still not possible to envisage all the dimensions of the legal liability of artificial intelligence, such principles can help pave the way for lawyers soon.

This section will address some of the common ground among the principles that can currently be found in similar instruments around the world. Among these, we can mention the European Commission document entitled “Strategy,” “Beijing AI Rules,” “Ethical Guidelines for Trustworthy AI,” as well as the principles that some companies have designed, such as the German “Intelligence, AI.”

Artificial Intelligence at Google: Our Principles A research project by a group of researchers at the Berkman Klein Institute for Internet and Society at Harvard University, by studying documents from around the world, identified common areas that were addressed in many of these documents (Fjeld et al. 2020). These were categorized into eight areas: fairness, transparency and explainability, security, accountability, and privacy. The specifics of promoting human principles, professional responsibility, human control over technology, and non-discrimination are briefly touched upon in this opportunity to address accountability,



although each of these principles requires specific research. Accountability in the field of artificial intelligence is not limited to civil liability.

Responsibility for the design of artificial intelligence can be referred to at various stages, including process review and repeatability, responsibility for assessing the impact of using artificial intelligence, design review and development of products based on artificial intelligence, and even the use of artificial intelligence and the relationship with nature.

According to a Harvard University study, the existing evidence on liability for damages resulting from artificial intelligence and machine learning is still ambiguous and there is no consensus in the evidence. For example, "India and Microsoft are seeking to use civil liability principles as a sufficient tool to achieve compensation for damages resulting from negligent errors." (Fjeld et al. 2020: 34)

While some other countries, such as China, believe that work should still be done in this area and that there is no guarantee that it will be sufficient to refer to civil liability principles in the event of an accident.

Some others, although they have not reached any conclusion in this regard, have declared that developers and programmers should not be blamed in any way. In this way, an attempt is made to prevent the stagnation in technological progress by not holding programmers responsible. On the other hand, transparency in the technological implementation mechanism and the stages of production and development of a product or software can be one of the useful preliminary tools in regulating the liability mechanism. With transparency in the functioning of a device, it is easier to identify the main culprit and properly compensate for damages, even in the field of civil liability.

CONCLUSION

The first speech introduced the basic concepts of artificial intelligence and machine learning for lawyers. Then, with an emphasis on the two areas of autonomous vehicles and the civil liability of doctors, some of the perspectives that lawyers have presented today to answer questions in the field of civil liability arising from artificial intelligence were examined.

Given the widespread use of artificial intelligence and machine learning in Iran in various fields, it is necessary to develop comprehensive legal and ethical principles applicable to Iranian and global society. Although there is no definitive answer to some of the challenges facing the use of AI and the resulting civil liability due to the ongoing development and production of AI-based products and software, the proposed strategic principles can pave the way for solving future challenges.

The debate that needs to be studied regarding the entry of artificial intelligence into the field of civil liability and law in general is far beyond the scope of a single article. It is hoped that lawyers will use this introductory guide to critically examine and examine each of the issues raised in a specialized manner.

REFERENCES

- Barzegar, Mohammad Reza; Gholam Hossein Elham (2020). "Criminal Liability of the User of a Self-Driving Vehicle for Damage Caused by It", Publisher. Criminal Law Research, S, 8, No. 30, pp. 201-229.
- Bahrami Filabadi, Sadegh; Alireza Pourasmaeili; Hassan Najafi Asl (2018). "Innovations and Developments of the Law of Compulsory Insurance of Damages Caused to Third Parties Due to Accidents Caused by Vehicles, Approved in 2016", Bhimah, S, 33, No. 4 (132), pp. 81-100



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

- Daraei, Mohammad Hadi (2016). "Titles of the Fall of Physician's Liability in the Islamic Penal Code, Approved in 2013) A Jurisprudential Study and Legal), Private Law Researcher, D, No. 4, pp. 14, pp. 53-80.
- Atazadeh, Saeed; Jalal Ansari (2019). "Re-examining the concept of criminal liability of artificial intelligence in Islamic, Iranian, American, and German law (case study: self-driving cars)", Comparative Law Researcher of Islamic and Western Law, S, No. 4 (22), pp. 55. 8
- Vafaei, Seyed Hossein; Rahimi, Habibollah (2015). Civil Liability (Extra-Contractual Obligations), Ch. 8
- Katouzian, Naser (2013). Extra-Contractual Obligations of Civil Liability, Ch. 12, Publisher. Tehran University Press, Vol. 1 General Rules.
- Badini, H. & Takhshid, Z. (2019). "A Critical Study of the Methodology of Comparative U.S. Tort Law Research (with Dr. Hassan Badini)", 49 Private law Studies Quarterly, U. of Tehran L. Rev, No. 2, pp. 217-237.
- Copeland, B.J., Britannica, Artificial Intelligence (2020)
[.https://www.britannica.com/technology/artificial-intelligence.](https://www.britannica.com/technology/artificial-intelligence)
- Darai, M. (2016). "Discharge of Civil Liability of Physicians in New Islamic Penal Code of Iran", Private Law Research.
- Filabadi, B., Pouresmaili, A., & Najafi, H. (2018). "Innovations and Developments of the Mandatory Third-Party Liability Insurance as a Result of Car Accident", Iranian Journal of Insurance Research. No. 132, pp. 81-100 .
- Fjeld, J., Achten N., Hilligoss, H., Nagy, A., & Srikumar, M. (2020). "Principled Artificial Intelligence: Mapping Consensus in Ethical and Rights-based Approaches to Principles for AI", Berkman Klein Center for Internet & Society.
- Fry, H. (2018). Hello World: How to Be Human in the Age of the Machine, Penguin Random House.
- Minssen, T., Gerke, S., Aboy, M., Price, N., & Cohen, G. (2020). "Regulatory responses to medical machine learning", Journal of Law and the Biosciences, Vol. 7, No. 1, pp. 1-18.
- Giuffrida, I. (2019). "Liability for AI Decision-Making: Some Legal and Ethical Considerations", Fordham Law Review.
- Heilweil, R. (2019). Artificial intelligence will help determine if you get your next job,
[https://www.vox.com/recode/2019/12/12/20993665/artificial-intelligence-ai-job-screen.](https://www.vox.com/recode/2019/12/12/20993665/artificial-intelligence-ai-job-screen)
- Hosny, A., Parmar, C., Quackenbush, J., Lawrence, H., Schwartz, L., Aerts, H., (2018). Artificial intelligence in Radiology, 18 Nat Rev Cancer 500.
- Katouzian, N. (2013). Civil Liability General Principles, Vol. 1, Tehran, University of Tehran Publication.
- Civil Liability Specific Torts, (2014) Vol. 2, Tehran, University of Tehran Publication.
- Kelner, D. (2017). The fourth industrial revolution: a primer on Artificial Intelligence. <https://medium.com/mmc-writes/the-fourth-industrial-revolution-a-primer-on-artificial-intelligence-ai-ff5e7ffcae1>.



- Knight, W. (2017). The Dark Secret at the Heart of AI, MIT Technology Review <https://www.technologyreview.com/2017/04/11/5113/the-dark-secret-at-the-heart-of-ai/>.
- Lee, Don, Desperate for workers, aging Japan turns to robots for healthcare (July 25, 2019) <https://www.latimes.com/world-nation/story/2019-07-25/desperate-for-workers-aging-japan-turns-to-robots-for-healthcare>.
- Price, N. W. (2018). "Medical Malpractice and Black-Box Medicine, in Cohen, I., Lynch, H., Vayena, E., & Gasser, U. (Eds.). Big Data, Health Law, and Bioethics. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Price, N. W., Gerke, S., & Cohen, IG. (2019). "Potential Liability for Physicians Using Artificial Intelligence", JAMA.
- Ramanujam, E., Padmavathi, S., (2019). "A Vision-Based Posture Monitoring System for the Elderly Using Intelligent Fall Detection Technique", Guide to Ambient Intelligence in the IoT Environment (Zaigham Mahmood ed.).
- Safai, S. H. & Rahimi, H. (2015). Civil Responsibility, Samt Publication.
- Selbest, A. D. (2020). "Negligence and AI's Human Users", Boston Law Review. Townson, Sian, AI Can Make Bank Loans More Fair, <https://hbr.org/2020/11/ai-can-makebank-loans-more-fair> (November 06, 2020).
- Woodall, B. (2018). Uber avoids legal battle with family of autonomous vehicle victim <https://www.reuters.com/article/us-autos-selfdriving-uber-settlement/uber-avoids-legal-battle-with-family-of-autonomous-vehicle-victim-idUSKBN1H5092>
- Zakhem, G. A., Motosko, C., Ho, R., (2018). "How Should Artificial Intelligence Screen for Skin Cancer and Deliver Diagnostic Predictions to Patients?", 154 JAMA Dermatol 1383.
- Zittrain, J. (2019). The Hidden Costs of Automated Thinking, The New Yorker. <https://www.newyorker.com/tech/annals-of-technology/the-hidden-costs-of-automated-thinking>.

Received: 02.25.2025

Revised: 03.01.2025

Accepted: 03.08.2025

Published: 03.13.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Negotiating Mental Health and Colonial Power: Land, Resistance, and Infrastructure in Gold Coast, 1919–1957

 ¹Jonathan OKOE,  ²Yahaya HALIDU

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002107>

Keywords	Abstract
Mental Health Colonial Power Land Resistance Infrastructure Kumase Gold Coast	<p>Aside from financial constraints, land acquisition was one of the main issues confronting the colonial government in building a second mental health facility in the Gold Coast, (now present-day Ghana). This work argues that between 1919 and 1957, the inability to institute a second mental hospital was highly influenced by land ownership dynamics and resultant resistance. Although colonial officials recognized that an additional facility was needed to alleviate the dire overcrowding conditions at the Accra Mental Hospital, their actions were hampered by financial constraints and, more importantly, by concerns regarding the availability of appropriate land. This demonstrates how the local chiefs and communities, particularly in places like Dabaa near Kumase, resisted the issuance of their land, which was regarded not only as a means of subsistence but also as a source of political and cultural power. The colonial administration did not adopt large-scale land expropriation for fear of antagonizing local rulers whose cooperation under the indirect rule arrangement was deemed indispensable; instead, prolonged negotiations were preferred without achieving a desirable result. This paper develops the fineness of how colonial power relations, local resistances, and cultural conceptions of land cut through one another to impede infrastructural developments in mental health care and the more significant struggles between colonial ambitions versus localized realities.</p>

INTRODUCTION

Land was central to infrastructure development in colonial contexts where politics and resource allocation were contested. The overcrowding of the Accra Mental Hospital, built in 1906,³ created an urgent need for a second mental facility on the Gold Coast, and its negotiation started in 1919. Although boards addressed

¹ Okoe, J. Department of History, The University of Texas at Austin, USA. Email: okoejonathan11@gmail.com. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0000-0002-4913-6203>

² Halidu, Y. Corresponding Author, Department of History, The University of Texas at Austin, USA. Email: greatsymbo@yahoo.com. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0000-0002-5290-6379>.

³ E. B. Forster, "A Historical Survey of Psychiatric Practice in Ghana," *Ghana Medical Journal* 46, no. 3 (2012): 158–62; Akwasi O. Osei, Joseph Bediako Asare, and Mark A. Roberts, *History of Mental Health Care in Ghana* (Accra: Sedco Publishing Limited, 2021)



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

this issue, their efforts were hindered by financial constraints¹, as noted by existing scholarships. However, one key obstacle that has received less attention is land acquisition.

The quest for a suitable location for the second mental hospital was challenging. With their significant influence, colonial authorities grappled with the conflicting interests of local communities, chiefs, and the colonial administration. Land was not just a commodity but also a political space where issues of ownership, control, and resistance were at play.² While the development of mental health infrastructure was deemed necessary, colonial land politics often impeded the process. This paper contends that colonial political struggles over land acquisition were pivotal in the failure to establish a second mental hospital on the Gold Coast. By showing this often-overlooked aspect, the paper aims to demonstrate how land politics shaped mental health infrastructure development rather than just financial concerns.

HISTORIOGRAPHY

Colonial mental health historiography is well documented. Scholars have demonstrated how mental health facilities across the African continent, to some extent, the world, have been used to define race and madness, social construction, and control instruments.³ Vaughan demonstrated how the colonial government of Malawi used psychiatry and biomedicine in general to define Africans, determining who was “normal” and who was not and who should be confined to the bars of the asylum. She also noted how the colonial government used psychiatry as an apparatus in pathologizing African culture to assert the superiority of the Western cultural paradigm. Even though Vaughan acknowledged no great confinement, she opines that those who failed to conform to colonial rules and regulations found themselves in the asylum.⁴

Similarly, Heaton demonstrated this same trajectory in Nigeria. He showed how colonial psychiatrists kept mentally ill patients in asylum until the demise of colonial rule. He also notes the role of Nigerian psychiatrists in shaping global psychiatry since the 1950s. Heaton argues that Nigerian psychiatrists influence local psychiatry and global understanding of psychiatry. Heaton details how Nigerian postcolonial psychiatrists, particularly Professor Adeoye Lambo, helped transform psychiatry in Nigeria and globally. He also noted Lambo’s contribution to establishing transcultural psychiatry in Nigeria. Heaton’s examination of Nigeria’s transition from the colonial period to the postcolonial period shows that the psychiatric field became an arena for contestation between the local knowledge system and biomedicine, which was the case for the Gold Coast. Moreover, Africans contributed to biomedicine.⁵ Again, the other named historians follow a similar trajectory.

¹ Accra PRAAD: CSO11.8.10, 1929 to 1939, *Correspondence between Colonial Secretary and the Director of Medical and Sanitary Service, September 11, 1931.*

² Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51, 1943 to 1948, *Correspondence between the DPW of Asante and the Colonial Secretary, February 9, 1946*

³ Megan Vaughan, *Curing Their Ills: Colonial Power and African Illness* (Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press, 1991); Jonathan Hal Sadowsky, *Imperial Bedlam: Institutions of Madness in Colonial Southwest Nigeria* (Medicine and Society, 10; Berkeley: University of California Press, 1999); Richard C. Keller, *Colonial Madness: Psychiatry in French North Africa* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2007); Matthew M. Heaton, *Black Skin, White Coats: Nigerian Psychiatrists, Decolonization, and the Globalization of Psychiatry* (New African Histories; Athens, Ohio: Ohio University Press, 2013); Katie Kilroy-Marac, *An Impossible Inheritance: Postcolonial Psychiatry and the Work of Memory in a West African Clinic* (Oakland, California: University of California Press, 2019)

⁴ Megan Vaughan, *Curing Their Ills: Colonial Power and African Illness* (Stanford, Calif.: Stanford University Press, 1991), 125

⁵ Matthew M. Heaton, *Black Skin, White Coats: Nigerian Psychiatrists, Decolonization, and the Globalization of Psychiatry* (New African Histories; Athens, Ohio: Ohio University Press, 2013)



However, Heaton and Nana Quarshie have uncovered what stalled the construction of a second mental hospital on the Gold Coast. The two of them acknowledge financial constraints as part of the most important challenges confronting the colonial administration but are far behind in arguing that it was the most or only important reason that no hospital was built.¹ This paper builds on their proposition, arguing that land politics significantly influenced mental health policy on the Gold Coast alongside financial and bureaucratic issues.

COLONIAL MENTAL HEALTH POLICIES AND THE FIRST FACILITY

The colonial government enacted several legislations and laws in the Gold Coast to cater to the alarming number of mentally ill patients. As would be seen in this section, the number of mental health patients progressed from the initial stage till the time that the colonial administrative apparatus phased out.

In 1876, the colonial government enacted its first legislation, the Prison Ordinance. This ordinance contained a significant provision, Section 16, which granted the colonial authorities the authority to confine individuals described as “lunatics” in prisons alongside regular prisoners. The term “lunatics” in this context encompassed both “idiots” and individuals deemed to have “unsound minds.” This practice reflected the prevailing understanding of mental health during that era, where those with mental disabilities or conditions were often treated alongside the general prison population, which differs significantly from modern approaches to mental health care and incarceration. Before this period, mental health patients were left to their fate or sent to be cared for by traditional health practitioners.²

However, in 1887, an old high court building of Victoriaborg Castle was converted into an asylum in colonial Ghana, housing nineteen mental health patients. Of these nineteen mental health patients, fourteen were males, and the remaining five were females. In 1888, the then Governor of the Gold Coast, William Brafford Griffith, signed stand-alone legislation for mentally ill patients, Ordinance No. 3 of 1888, the Lunatic Asylum Ordinance.³ Section 10 of the ordinance legitimized converting Victoriaborg Castle, Accra’s old Court building, into a special prison for mentally ill patients. However, prison warders were placed in this special prison to administer the patients—feeding and reporting on the physical health of the mental health patients. These officers included one Chief Attendant, one Assistant Chief Attendant, one matron, nine male attendants, and one gatekeeper. Also, the ordinance legitimized the establishment of asylums within the colony. By 1891, there were sixty-three patients in the asylum.⁴

By 1904, every indication showed a need for a larger space for mentally ill patients as the number increased. That year, the number of mentally ill patients rose to one hundred and four (104). However, this same year,

¹Nana Osei Quarshie, “Psychiatry on a Shoestring: West Africa and the Global Movements of Deinstitutionalization,” *Bulletin of the History of Medicine* 96, no. 2 (2022): 237–265; Matthew Heaton, “Aliens in the Asylum: Immigration and Madness in the Gold Coast,” *Journal of African History* 54, no. 3 (2013): 373–391

²Ministry of Health (Ghana). *The Centenary of the Accra Psychiatry Hospital 1888-1988*. Ghana: Government Publications, 1998; Ewusi-Mensah, I. “Post Colonial Psychiatric Care in Ghana.” *Psychiatric Bulletin* 25, no. 6 (2001): 228–29; Akwasi O, Osei, Joseph Bediako Asare, and Mark A Roberts. *History of Mental Health Care in Ghana*. Accra, Ghana: Sedco Publishing Limited, 2021

³Annual Colonial Report for 1895, No. 189, Gold Coast; Forster, E B. “A Historical Survey of Psychiatric Practice in Ghana.” *Ghana Medical Journal* 46, no. 3 (2012): 158–62; Akwasi O, Osei, Joseph Bediako Asare, and Mark A Roberts. *History of Mental Health Care in Ghana*. Accra, Ghana: Sedco Publishing Limited, 2021)

⁴Annual Colonial Report for 1895, No. 189, Gold Coast; Forster, E B. “A Historical Survey of Psychiatric Practice in Ghana.” *Ghana Medical Journal* 46, no. 3 (2012): 158–62; Akwasi O, Osei, Joseph Bediako Asare, and Mark A Roberts. *History of Mental Health Care in Ghana*. Accra, Ghana: Sedco Publishing Limited, 2021)



Ordinance No. 1, the Lunatic Removal Ordinance, was passed to remove mentally ill patients who were not Gold Coasters from the Colony. This law was passed as a result of many aliens in the Gold Coast who were suffering from mental health conditions and are being housed in the Accra Mental health facility. During this period, people from the neighboring countries were residing daily on the Gold Coast for the economic prospects the government offered them.¹

In 1906, a new asylum (Accra Psychiatric Hospital), for which the building project had started in 1904, was commissioned and began operating in 1907. It had a capacity of 200 and started with one hundred and ten (110) mentally ill patients, for whom custodial services were only provided. By 1909, two hundred and seventy-five (275) mentally ill patients were in the asylum, more than double the facility's capacity.² At the outset of 1919, the Accra asylum was already grappling with a substantial number of patients, with a reported count of 129 individuals who had mental illness, and there came a proposition for a new mental health hospital.³

The situation reached its zenith in 1938, with 543 mental health patients documented in the Accra asylum. This number was significantly beyond the asylum's capacity, which could accommodate only 330 patients. Despite the challenges, a token vote had been inserted into the 1939-1940 estimate, indicating a recognition of the need for continued support and expansion of mental health services.⁴ By 1956, the Accra Mental Health facility continued to sour with the problem of high mental health patients in the facility.⁵

LAND CHALLENGES AND COLONIAL HESITATION IN BUILDING A SECOND MENTAL HEALTH FACILITY

The major challenge of securing a second mental health facility had been linked to financial constraints and administrative hesitance by the colonial government.⁶ As has been demonstrated above, the Accra Psychiatric Hospital, right from its inception, became overburdened with mental health patients, except in 1906, when the facility was not up to its full capacity. This raised the issue of a second mental health hospital to alleviate congestion or overcrowding at the Accra Psychiatric Hospital. However, searching for a new place for the hospital turned out to be a formidable challenge during the land acquisition process for the new institution.⁷ In the Gold Coast, land was inextricably linked to matters relating to power, administration, and subsistence for its peoples or natives. In towns like Dabaa and Owabi, closer to Kumase, giving out their lands to accommodate a mental institution was unthinkable since this would endanger livelihood and

¹ E. B. Forster, "A Historical Survey of Psychiatric Practice in Ghana," *Ghana Medical Journal* 46, no. 3 (2012): 158–62; Akwasi O. Osei, Joseph Bediako Asare, and Mark A. Roberts, *History of Mental Health Care in Ghana* (Accra: Sedco Publishing Limited, 2021), 45.

² Ibid,ibid

³ CSO11.8.10, 1929 to 1939, *Correspondence between the Chief Alienist and the Director of Medical and Sanitary Service*, December 16, 1932.

⁴ Accra PRAAD: CSO11.8.10, 1929 to 1939, *Correspondence between the Government House and Malcolm MacDonald*, July 13, 1939.

⁵ E. B. Forster, "A Historical Survey of Psychiatric Practice in Ghana," *Ghana Medical Journal* 46, no. 3 (2012): 158–62

⁶ Nana Osei Quarshie, "Psychiatry on a Shoestring: West Africa and the Global Movements of Deinstitutionalization," *Bulletin of the History of Medicine* 96, no. 2 (2022): 237–265; Matthew Heaton, "Aliens in the Asylum: Immigration and Madness in the Gold Coast," *Journal of African History* 54, no. 3 (2013): 373–391

⁷ E. B. Forster, "A Historical Survey of Psychiatric Practice in Ghana," *Ghana Medical Journal* 46, no. 3 (2012): 158–62; Kumase PRAAD: ARG1/14/1/10, 1926 to 1942, Memorandum by Director of Medical and Sanitary Service, April 26, 1926; Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51 1943 to 1948, *Correspondence between the Chief Commissioner of Asante and the Colonial Secretary*, March 8, 1946



social structures—the only arable land for agriculture was being taken from them.¹ It was the main factor contributing to the reluctance to relinquish territory or land.

Several places became the focal point, but the idea was aborted due to water and electricity issues. Subsequently, the village of Dabaa, lying near Kumase, became a focal point, but the idea was met with resistance. People in Dabaa used the land mainly for farming, from which they derived food and money for the upkeep of their families. The loss of that land meant the loss of their most important source of livelihood. The land was also an emblem of political and cultural power to the chiefs in Dabaa and other surrounding villages. Chiefs were regarded as custodians of the land, and allowing the colonial government to take this away from them would have undermined their authority and influence over their subjects. This made them unwilling to cooperate with the colonial administration. For the villagers, the land abandonment has gone far beyond the economic aspect and has affected livelihood protection and long-term prospects for their village's future.²

The response by the colonial administration toward such resistance was very cautious and reluctant. Through indirect rule, the British relied so much on local chiefs to administer the colony. In that regard, Asante chiefs held great power and influence among their subjects.³ The colonial authorities feared that a move to expropriate forcibly would result in large-scale civil disturbance and estrangement in the relationships with the chiefs. This fear was a cause of delay and hesitancy. Instead of confrontation, the government officials opted for negotiation, which once more proved tortuously slow without any sign of a settlement. This reluctance to press through with a decision became one of the severe obstacles to constructing the new facility.

The administrative inner disorganization of the colonial government further compounded this. The different sections of the colonial administration were preoccupied with various issues. Health officials advocated an early establishment of the proposed second mental institution since conditions in the Accra Mental Hospital were deteriorating by the day and were casting a slur on the colonial government. Other departments, such as the public works were more concerned about keeping away from or reducing friction with native citizens. This resulted in lots of confusion and deceleration in the pace of decision-making due to this lack of coordination among departments. Where health authorities wanted speedy solutions, others always cautioned against committing to a specific site for the risks involved.

There were indeed many suggestions, all about Kumase, yet none succeeded; as a matter of fact, most of those places were rejected because of their accessibility to water, electricity, and road infrastructure, which made their utilization unviable. Communities like Dabaa did not easily give up their land, and local leaders

¹ Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51 1943 to 1948, Correspondence between the Chief Commissioner of Asante and the Colonial Secretary, March 8, 1946

² Kumase PRAAD: ARG1/14/1/10, Correspondence from Commissioner of Kumase and the Chief Commissioner of Asante December 21, 1936; Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51 1943 to 1948, Correspondence between the Chief Commissioner of Asante and the Colonial Secretary, March 8, 1946; Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51 1943 to 1948, Correspondence between Apagyahene and the Colonial Secretary, June 1, 1946; Kumase PRAAD: ARG2/14/1/1, 1943 to 1953, Correspondence between the Chief Commissioner and the Director of Medical and Sanitary Services, February 5, 1947

³ William Malcolm Hailey, Hailey, and Great Britain. Colonial Office, Native Administration in the British African Territories (London: H.M.S.O, 1950):335-237



in the region remained firm in serving the interests of their people.¹ The non-resolution of these issues significantly hampered the progress of the scheme. The vacillation between different schemes and their rejection added to the ascertained mess associated with the land politics of the time. On the Gold Coast, land was inextricably linked to political and cultural identity ideas that the colonial administration did not fully grasp. To the indigenes, land was not only for farming or building; it was a sign of autonomy and authority. To them, the colonial government's taking over any land was tantamount to an imminent threat to their sovereignty and livelihood.

CONCLUSION

We do not simply take resentment over the loss of agricultural land but also their need to maintain traditional authority and social organization structures. The lack of this subtlety in the interpretation by the colonial regime reduced its ability to handle the process of land alienation effectively. The reluctance of the colonial administration to take decisive action was also influenced by its fear of antagonizing the chiefs. Traditional leaders in Asante played a restraining factor in stabilizing the period of British indirect rule. Their cooperation was indispensable to the colonial administration in imposing policies and commanding their authority on native people. Coercive expropriation for the mental health institution might have unseated this arrangement and led to an unsubdued rebellion against colonial rule.

Thus, the administration took a better-safe-than-sorry approach, even at the cost of delaying a badly needed project. The disjointed nature of the colonial administration system also emphasized these failures. Different groups within the administration often worked against each other, with no apparent authority to resolve the dissonance. Health authorities recognized the abysmal situation at the Accra Mental Hospital and wanted to take immediate action, but the proposal did not receive adequate backing from other departments; due to a lack of liaison, one proposed site was axed after another, either owing to dissension or owing to some practical obstruction. Such a lack of follow-through was symptomatic of general failures in colonial administration, wherein, too often, competing interests led to immobilization. This was tantamount to the failure of the colonial administration to provide land for constructing a second facility for mentally disordered people. This was a gain to strategic planning and understanding on the part of the government, which had underrated land issues in local settings, treating them as products to be used rather than an integral part of social and political life. The vocal opposition from villages like Dabaa and the government's reluctance to take on the chiefs made for a stalemate. The plan was thus never realized, and the people's mental health needs were never adequately attended to. This is one specific example of the more general challenges colonial regimes faced in balancing their goals vis-à-vis infrastructure development with the limitations imposed by local resistance and complicated land politics.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Primary sources

Accra Public Record And Archives Administration Department (PRAAD)

¹ Kumase PRAAD: ARG1/14/1/10, Extract from the minutes of the Asante Health Board in the office of the District Commissioner of Kumase for the purpose of selecting a site for a mental Hospital, May 4, 1935; Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51 1943 to 1948, Correspondence between LWW and the Colonial Secretary, April 4, 1943; Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51 1943 to 1948, Correspondence between the Chief Commissioner of Asante and the Colonial Secretary, March 8, 1946



Accra PRAAD. *Annual Colonial Report for 1895*, No. 189, Gold Coast.

Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51, 1943–1948. Correspondence between LWW and the Colonial Secretary, April 4, 1943.

Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51, 1943–1948. Correspondence between the Apagyahene and the Colonial Secretary, June 1, 1946.

Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51, 1943–1948. Correspondence between the Chief Commissioner of Asante and the Colonial Secretary, March 8, 1946.

Accra PRAAD: CSO11.3.51, 1943–1948. Correspondence between the DPW of Asante and the Colonial Secretary, February 9, 1946.

Accra PRAAD: CSO11.8.10, 1929–1939. Correspondence between the Chief Alienist and the Director of Medical and Sanitary Service, December 16, 1932.

Accra PRAAD: CSO11.8.10, 1929–1939. Correspondence between the Colonial Secretary and the Director of Medical and Sanitary Service, September 11, 1931.

Accra PRAAD: CSO11.8.10, 1929–1939. Correspondence between the Government House and Malcolm MacDonald, July 13, 1939.

Kumase Public Record and Archives Administration Department (PRAAD)

Kumase PRAAD: ARG2/14/1/1, 1943–1953. Correspondence between the Chief Commissioner and the Director of Medical and Sanitary Services, February 5, 1947.

Kumase PRAAD: ARG1/14/1/10, 1926–1942. Correspondence from the Commissioner of Kumase and the Chief Commissioner of Asante, December 21, 1936.

Kumase PRAAD: ARG1/14/1/10, 1926–1942. Extract from the Minutes of the Asante Health Board in the Office of the District Commissioner of Kumase for the Purpose of Selecting a Site for a Mental Hospital, May 4, 1935.

Kumase PRAAD: ARG1/14/1/10, 1926–1942. Memorandum by the Director of Medical and Sanitary Service, April 26, 1926.

Secondary sources

Akwasi, O., Joseph Bediako Asare, and Mark A. Roberts. *History of Mental Health Care in Ghana*. Accra, Ghana: Sedco Publishing Limited, 2021.

Ewusi-Mensah, I. "Postcolonial Psychiatric Care in Ghana." *Psychiatric Bulletin* 25, no. 6 (2001): 228–29.

Forster, E. B. "A Historical Survey of Psychiatric Practice in Ghana." *Ghana Medical Journal* 46, no. 3 (2012): 158–62.

Hailey, William Malcolm. *Native Administration in the British African Territories*. London: H.M.S.O., 1950.

Heaton, Matthew M. *Black Skin, White Coats: Nigerian Psychiatrists, Decolonization, and the Globalization of Psychiatry*. Athens, OH: Ohio University Press, 2013.

Heaton, Matthew. "Aliens in the Asylum: Immigration and Madness in the Gold Coast." *Journal of African History* 54, no. 3 (2013): 373–91.



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

- Keller, Richard C. *Colonial Madness: Psychiatry in French North Africa*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2007.
- Kilroy-Marac, Katie. *An Impossible Inheritance: Postcolonial Psychiatry and the Work of Memory in a West African Clinic*. Oakland, CA: University of California Press, 2019.
- Ministry of Health (Ghana). *The Centenary of the Accra Psychiatry Hospital 1888–1988*. Ghana: Government Publications, 1998.
- Quarshie, Nana Osei. “Psychiatry on a Shoestring: West Africa and the Global Movements of Deinstitutionalization.” *Bulletin of the History of Medicine* 96, no. 2 (2022): 237–65.
- Sadowsky, Jonathan Hal. *Imperial Bedlam: Institutions of Madness in Colonial Southwest Nigeria*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1999.
- Vaughan, Megan. *Curing Their Ills: Colonial Power and African Illness*. Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press, 1991.

Received: 03.08.2025

Revised: 03.09.2025

Accepted: 03.10.2025

Published: 03.12.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Strategic Advancements in Human Resource Management: Optimizing Workforce Excellence

 ¹ Sameulhaq Amany,  ² Abdul Jamil Sharify

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002108>

Keywords	Abstract
Human Resource Management Workforce Optimization Organizational Development Employee Satisfaction	Maintaining competent and professional employees is one of the important missions of human resource management. This human resource management system is partly related to strengthening the body of employees and partly to strengthening the spirit of employees' interest in the work and the work environment. Because one of the key factors for the success of organizations is competent human resources and their optimal use. To achieve this goal, employees must have a high level of satisfaction, which is one of the main factors of occupational safety satisfaction, and one of the pillars of occupational safety is the existence of safety and health in the work environment. This article examines the role of human resource management, new managerial developments, resource management processes, the necessity and goals of human resource management, and finally draws conclusions.

INTRODUCTION

One of the basic missions of human resource management is to retain capable employees. Since retention measures are complementary to other human resource management measures and processes, even if recruitment, selection, appointment and other personnel measures are carried out properly, without sufficient attention to retention, the results of management actions will not be very impressive.

The human resource management system includes multiple dimensions that are divided into two groups: First, it is related to the maintenance and strengthening of the body of employees, such as maintaining health and safety in the workplace, sports and health programs. Second, things that strengthen the spirit of employees' interest in work and the work environment, such as insurance services and retirement. By paying attention to and implementing these matters, occupational security is created among employees and their job satisfaction is achieved, which is of great importance.

¹ Sameulhaq Amany Master's student in Administration and Economics, Sabahattin Zaim University, Türkiye, sameulhaq.amany01@gmail.com, <https://orcid.org/0009-0009-4681-2761>.

² Lec. Abdul Jamil Sharify, Head of Department of Management Information Systems, International Science and Technology University, Warsaw, Poland jamil.sharify@istu.edu.pl, <https://orcid.org/0009-0001-0727-6726>



Considering the development and position of human resource management in today's world, the philosophy of human resource management becomes completely clear that first, the necessary coordination between the organization and human resources must be created in order to adopt common organizational goals, and second, it ensures the achievement of organizational goals and human resources.

For this reason, human resource management has been defined as the process of identifying, selecting, employing, training, and developing human resources to achieve organizational goals. A group of management thinkers, emphasizing the importance of the human role in the process of creating change, believe that human resource development units of organizations and institutions should play a key and structural role in change and development.

In fact, the changes that have taken place today in the field of domestic and international management have made the approach to professionalization of the discussion of human resource development in management, scientific and university centers and bases richer and more colorful.

For example, management styles have shifted significantly towards delegative and participatory styles, and organizational structures have also moved towards open and free structures with horizontal relationships. The competitive nature of organizations in attracting skilled and motivated human resources has driven these organizations towards learning and flexible institutions, while at the same time, approaches have become more entrepreneurial and creative.

Overall, the human, intellectual, and software capital index is the first to be mentioned in the field of management. This set of managerial changes has made the need for a professional approach in the field of human resources more felt.

On the other hand, professionalizing the field of human resources will cause this field to enhance its real position in organizations and institutions, and in fact, establish the necessary balance and coordination between the importance of human resources and the position of human resources management as a process responsible for providing, maintaining, developing, and motivating employees and increasing their productivity. Although the position of human resource management in our organizations is not very worthy and the requirements for professionalization of managers in this field have not yet been fully met, considering the key role of human resource management and the need for its professionalization; Identifying the context, examining the dimensions, analyzing the characteristics of this important process, and ultimately diagnosing its vulnerabilities is a necessary and unavoidable thing. The fact is that our behavior with our human resources has been accompanied by a series of trial and error tests, and if we are fair, these trials and errors have led us to sweet and bitter realities.

Where these realities have been sweet, we have had positive results from our behavior with human resources, and in cases where it has been negative and bitter, we have applied the right models in the wrong sense and logically obtained negative results.

In fact, it has been the manager's taste that, due to his power, he has implemented a particular policy, and this policy has probably been ineffective. For this reason, in our country's human resources experience, we have all kinds, from the very successful to the very unsuccessful.



The professionalization movement in the humanities and social sciences was proposed well after mathematics, engineering, medicine, and basic sciences. Once upon a time, a person could become a teacher almost effortlessly. For example, if a housewife with a high school education applied for a teaching job, many would accept her.

But currently, no one can easily become a teacher. In some states in the United States, to teach, a person must have a teaching certificate, and to receive this certificate, they must pass 1.5 times the number of people with a bachelor's degree in order to be called a professional teacher. This is part of the professionalization movement in education and training.

NEW MANAGEMENT DEVELOPMENTS

The management styles existing in the country's organizations and institutions show that a clear movement towards delegating and participatory methods in the management of companies has begun. It seems that access to information has become completely universal.

But it should be noted that where all information is available to all individuals, their guidance (human resources of organizations) is much more complicated and has special conditions. Organizational structures are moving towards open and free structures and horizontal relationships without exception, in terms of cultural strategies, organizations are tending towards learning and flexible organizations.

Technology, by and large, has become interpretable through engineering services, and therefore technology no longer has a hard-wired aspect, and its interpretation is usually done in the areas of human resource management.

In this regard, strategic management models have become completely competitive and the role of humans in this structure is given priority, and systems have become more open-ended. Approaches have become institutionalized, formalized, and completely removed from the passive mode, even in the strategic design debate.

Information technology has become complex and non-repetitive, and decision-making models have the role of citizens and customers as the primary focus, meaning that human resource departments must know their citizens and customers.

Similarly, career development models have become completely professionalized. Training models in the field of human resources emphasize qualitative and creative indicators, the role of the manager is coaching and entrepreneurship. For this reason, a manager who in the past could simply manage anywhere or in any field of work must now be fully professional and at a high level and be able to work with people. In the words of Rockefeller, "I don't want a man and an engineer, I want a man who knows man and can work with him." Matsushita, the greatest entrepreneur of the 20th century, points out that "the greatest capital of an organization is the human capital of that organization that can work with these capitals."

The discussion of monitoring and evaluating the performance of resources in the organization has found its appropriate place, as customers come first in organizations. Even in government organizations, the role of customers has become colorful and, consequently, the country's development models in various dimensions



take on a comprehensive aspect. Although cultural aspects and internal interaction are important, interaction with the outside world has become necessary.

For this reason, a manager must have a global view of his professional issues and topics, and this role is much more colorful in the field of human resources. It is even believed that HR managers should know different languages in order to communicate and this can enhance interactions. In the process of becoming more professional in the field of HR, some countries have emphasized factors such as being multi-racial, multilingual, and seeing different countries as priorities for selecting managers.

In discussions such as organizational learning, occupations, territory, and the power and authority of organizations, human creativity and human presence have become so imbued that they say you can't ignore other factors. This is where the discussion of intellectual and human capital comes to the fore, as when the Japanese Prime Minister is asked what he thinks is the key to success in Japan? In one word, he says, "education." In fact, the Prime Minister of Japan summarizes education and development in this concept. In this way, the importance of human resources departments can be seen in all Japanese companies and public and private institutions.

MAIN PROCESSES:

Human resource planning - human resource recruitment - motivation and motivation - training and skills development - career path design and implementation - compensation and benefits system design and implementation - employee participation design and implementation - performance appraisal system design and implementation - employee health and safety - labor relations and discipline management - succession planning and implementation - systems development Human Resource Information - Internal Communication Management - Attrition Rate Management.

Now, if we can provide appropriate guidelines for each of these processes, we will be able to guide human resource management towards professionalization, and this requires that professional associations support these managers.

TYPES OF SAFETY PROGRAMS:

1- Behavior-Based Safety Programs, this program works by reducing risky behaviors and improving their safety and focuses on improving employee behavior, such as what behaviors are needed, what behaviors are effective, and systematic reinforcement of desired behaviors.

2- Incentive-based safety programs are designed to keep employees injury-free for a period of time, and incentive-based safety programs lead to fewer incidents being reported (Miozza, et al. 2002). They reward employees with desired results over a period, or they reward specific behaviors or participation in specific activities.

STRESS AND ITS SOURCES:

Theorists and psychologists say that stress is caused by the accumulation of life events that disrupt the individual's adjustment to his or her current situation. (Randall, et al. 1998).



Stress itself is neither good nor bad. In fact, some levels of stress are normal and necessary for life to continue. Even when people are resting, they have some levels of stress. Without stress, motivation and energy would not exist. Stress is a state of pressure that affects an individual's feelings through physical processes and conditions, and today it is one of the most important issues in the field of individual, organizational and social health. (Stonem 2004: 662).

Stressors are factors that disrupt physical and mental balance, and heart palpitations, increased blood pressure, dry mouth and rapid breathing are the most common reactions to stressors. In every organization, employees face stress, which is a part of every individual's existence, and its real sources are endless. So far, three groups of sources have been identified: -

- 1: Group related to working conditions
- 2: Group related to the individual's personal qualities
- 3: Group related to external environmental factors. (Stone, 2004: 663).

Workplace stressors are caused by absences, tardiness, incompetence, excessive workload, shift work, low pressure, interpersonal relationships, change, threatening organizational climate, physical environment, role ambiguity, economic conditions, personal factors, external factors, excessive travel, societal values, and individual family issues.

The group that is related to personality traits generally divides people's personalities into 2 types: Type A and Type B. Type A people are energetic and always under time pressure, while Type B people, unlike Type A, are perfectionists. Type A people are more prone to high stress, heart disease, high blood pressure, and other diseases. (Stone. 2004:666-665). Environmental and external factors, such as increased competition, declining profits, economic conditions, labor relations and industry restrictions, government regulations and laws, excessive travel, societal values, crime, and employees' family and personal issues, can also contribute to stress.

One of the most common causes of stress in managers is the inability to make and execute decisions, which creates stress, and stress exacerbates the inability to make decisions, which acts as a vicious cycle and leads to poor decisions.

Managers who postpone decisions and focus too much on explaining past problems need to take action. If managers are preoccupied with all the decisions they have made or will make, they will experience excessive stress, which will reduce their ability to deal with new situations, which will lead to more worry, more stress, and more problems.

In decision-making, the degree of responsibility and urgency of the decision should be considered and decisions should not be overly thought about. A bad decision is better than no decision, and a right decision that is delayed is useless, and the fact is that delaying decisions increases stress. (Stone,2004:669).

STRESS MANAGEMENT:



The fundamental challenge for every employee is to find the level of stress that increases productivity without harming health, which is possible with effective stress management. Stress management skills include: proper rest, exercise, diet, talking about concerns, planning and time management, and delegation.

OBJECTIVES OF HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGEMENT:

Increasing efficiency through human resources in the organization, which usually have 4 objectives:

1. Social objective, which is to feel responsible for the needs of society and create credibility for the organization and employees.
2. Organizational objective, which is to feel responsible for the goals of the organization.
3. Task objective, which is to feel responsible for duties and responsibilities.
4. A specific goal that is to feel responsible for the personal goals of the organization's employees.

DEFINITIONS OF ORGANIZATIONAL OCCUPATIONS

1. Occupational category includes occupations and occupational classes that are closely related in terms of type of work and profession and together form an organizational occupation.
2. Sub-disciplines are occupational categories that are more closely related in terms of type of work and profession, such as marketers or salespeople.
3. Occupational field, one or more occupational classes that are similar in terms of the type of work but have different levels in terms of the way the work is done, such as production management.
4. Occupational class, one or more positions that are similar in terms of duties, responsibilities, and difficulty of the work and have a specific occupational category.
5. Occupational group, different levels of occupational classes that determine the minimum and maximum rights of occupational classes.
6. Job description, which is a written and legal description containing the main and essential characteristics of the job that has been approved by legal authorities.
7. Job classification scheme, a term for creating a general system that is used for organizational positions in an organization.
8. Assignment, the placement of organizational positions within job classes and the placement of job classes within one of the occupational groups.

Job performance requirements are the information obtained from job analysis and job description, which in fact, describes the necessary conditions for an individual to be able to perform the job well with its tools and methods, namely observation, interview, questionnaire, and background check.

The general model for selection in organizations is through the following stages: initial screening - completion of the application form - employment test - general interview - medical examinations and final selection and selection, which is carried out through a 4-stage process (determination of training needs or



needs assessment - design and development of training programs - implementation of training programs - evaluation of employee training programs).

A set of experiences that are related to an individual's occupation and that occur throughout his or her life, including a set of positions, roles, activities, and work experiences of an individual throughout the years of his or her employment, is his or her career development path. Developing a career development path is a means by which an organization can increase the current productivity of employees and, throughout this period, prepare them for a world that is changing with the world of progress and technology. They create and manage it, meaning they examine their interests, strengths and weaknesses, identify their job opportunities and threats, and based on that, determine their career goals. Performance Appraisal

In performance appraisal, 3 factors should be considered (type of job - employee behavior - type of management - work environment).

Performance appraisal is a method through which the process of identifying, observing, measuring, and improving human performance in organizations is carried out, or it is a formal method of identifying the characteristics of employees based on positive and negative feedback on the results of their performance in performing their duties, the influencing factors of which are the type of employment, employee behavior, management style, and the determination of minimum rights and wages. The primary goal of performance appraisal is to maximize productivity by identifying and capitalizing on employees' strengths.

TYPES OF PERFORMANCE APPRAISAL METHODS

1. Linear ranking method, which is one of the oldest performance appraisal methods, developed in 1992, which requires the rater to evaluate employees according to criteria such as: quantity of work, quality, reliability of employees, and environmental compatibility. This method is suitable for organizations with a small number of employees.
2. The method of comparing employees with each other is a simple type of ranking that compares each person with another based on a criterion and selects the best, and the employees are ranked from the best to the worst.
3. The method of recording sensitive events, which requires recognizing and recording important events, is that the supervisor measures and notes the behavior of employees when important events occur.
4. The method of using a checklist or guide, which is a guide list used to evaluate employees and whose questions are pre-designed, can result in halo errors and make the assessment appear weak.
5. The method of forced selection is to prevent halo errors.
6. Management by Objectives, which is the most complete method in which the duties and responsibilities of employees are specified in each position, and the level of growth and maturity of employees is a basic requirement.

CONCLUSION

As mentioned, one of the most important responsibilities of human resource management is to retain capable employees to create and maintain a competitive advantage in the organization, because today one



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

of the key factors for the success of organizations is capable human resources and their optimal and knowledge-based use.

To achieve this goal, employees must have a high level of satisfaction in order to create value for the organization. One of the main factors of job satisfaction is job security, and one of the pillars of the existence of a job security provider is the existence of safety and health in the work environment.

REFERENCE

- Randall, R. Ross and Elizabeth M. Altmeyer. (1998). Occupational Stress. Translated by Gholamrza Khajapour. Publisher. Tehran: Industrial Management Organization.
- Haqiqi, Mohammad Ali. (1999). Book, Labor Relations System in Organization. Publisher. Tehran: Termeh.
- Mirspasi. Nasser. (1996). Human Resource Management and Labor Relations: A Strategic Perspective. Publisher. Tehran: Sherwin.
- Abtahi, Sayyed Hassan (1987) Book, Concept, Characteristics and Problems of Employee Training, Publisher: Government Administration, Issue 1,
- Abtahi, Seyed Hossein (2000) Educational Program Evaluation, Publisher: Collection of Articles of the National Educational Management and Planning Organization, Tehran, Iran.
- Tyler, Ralph (1980)» Book, Basic Principles of Instructional Design and Instruction, Translated by Taghi Pour Zahir, Agha Publications, Tehran, Iran.
- Taghipour Zahir, Ali (1991), › An Introduction to Curriculum and Instructional Planning ‹Publisher: Agah Publications, Tehran, Iran.
- Solimanpour, Javad (2002) › Curriculum Planning in the Service Learning of Organizations‹, Publisher: Ahsan Publications, Tehran, Iran.
- Shibli, Khaled (1997) › Meeting the educational needs of managers and employees in dynamic organizations ‹ Tadbir Journal, No. 15, Tehran, Iran.
- Abbaszadegan, Seyed Mohammad, Turkzadeh, Jafar (2000) › Educational Needs Assessment in Organizations ‹Publisher: Publishing Joint Stock Company, Tehran, Iran.
- Fathi and Ajargah, Korud (2004), › Planning teaches while serving employees ‹ Samt Publications, Tehran, Iran.
- Mir Kamali, Korud (2004), › Planning teaches while serving employees ‹Publisher: Samt Publications, Tehran, Iran.
- Mir Kamali, Seyed Mohammad (1998) › Teaches while serving as the basic element of the new welfare system ‹ Publisher. Journal of Management in Education, Year 5, Issue 11, Bahar, Tehran, Iran.
- Wentlin, Tim L. (1997) › Effective Educational Planning ‹ Translated by Mohammad Chizari, Tarbiat Modares University Publisher, Tehran, Iran.



- Yousef, Darvish A. (1998). Satisfaction with job security as a predictor of organizational commitment and job performance in a multicultural environment. *International Journal of Manpower* 19(3) 184-194.
- Warren, Richard C. (1996). The empty company: morality and job security. *Personal Review* 25(6) 41-53.
- Fairbrother, Kerry, and et al. (2003). Workplace dimensions, stress and job satisfaction. *Journal of Managerial Psychology*, 18.
- Chen, Chen Jui et al. (2005). Leadership effectiveness, Leadership style and employee readiness. *Leadership & organization Development Journal* 26.
- Hyde, Paula et al. (2005). Role redesign: new ways of working in the NHS. *Personnel Review* 34.
- Kolins, Rebecca. (2005). Seeing stars: human resources performance indicators in the National Health Service. *Personnel Review* 34(6) 634-647.
- Miozza, Michael L. and David C. Wyld. (2002). The Carrot or the Soft Stick?: The Perspective of American Safety Professionals on Behavior and Incentive-Based Protection Programmers. *Management Research News* 25(11).
- Larson, Linda L. (2004). Internal auditors and job stress. *Managerial Auditing Journal* 19(9) 1119-1130.
- Stone. (2004). *Human Resource Management*.
- Ui shak . f.l : human resource development , virginia , prentkehall company , usa , 1983
- Goldstein , Irwin, 1:training in organizations : needs assessment , development and evaluation , 3 rd , 1992

Received: 03.01.2025

Revised: 03.05.2025

Accepted: 03.10.2025

Published: 03.14.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

The Impact of Gestures and Facial Expressions in Language Acquisition



¹ Elnura Rzayeva

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002110>

Keywords	Abstract
Non-verbal communication Gestures in language learning Facial expressions in education Second language acquisition (SLA) Embodied cognition in teaching	Non-verbal communication, particularly gestures and facial expressions, plays a crucial role in second language acquisition by enhancing comprehension, retention, and engagement. This study investigates the impact of teachers' gestures and facial expressions in an EFL classroom setting, focusing on their influence on vocabulary learning and student interaction. Through an experimental design involving 60 adult learners, we analyzed the effects of high vs. low gesture use and expressive vs. neutral facial expressions on immediate vocabulary recall and long-term retention. The results indicate that gestures significantly improved learning outcomes, with students in the high-gesture condition scoring notably higher on post-tests. While facial expressions alone had a smaller effect on test performance, they positively influenced learner engagement and classroom atmosphere. The study highlights the synergistic effect of combining gestures with expressive facial cues, reinforcing theories of embodied cognition and communicative competence in language learning. These findings suggest that intentional integration of gestures and facial expressions in teaching methodologies can enhance comprehensible input and student motivation, leading to more effective language acquisition. The study contributes to the growing body of research on multimodal learning, emphasizing the importance of non-verbal communication in second language pedagogy.

INTRODUCTION

Language acquisition is a multimodal process, involving not only words and grammar but also a rich array of non-verbal cues. **Non-verbal communication** – particularly gestures (hand and body movements) and **facial expressions** – plays a crucial role in how languages are taught and learned. These non-verbal elements often carry significant meaning; for example, a teacher's encouraging smile or a demonstrative hand motion can reinforce spoken language. Classic communications research has even suggested that a majority of emotional meaning in face-to-face interactions is conveyed through tone and facial/body cues

¹ Rzayeva, E. Master's Student, Nakhchivan State University. Email: elnura_rzayeva1@gmail.com. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0009-0000-8360-5168>.



rather than words alone. In language classrooms, gestures and facial expressions can provide context, illustrate concepts, and maintain learner engagement.

Key Terms: In this article, **gestures** refer to deliberate movements of the hands, arms, or body that convey meaning or support communication. They include **iconic gestures** (which depict content visually, e.g. miming a shape or action), **metaphoric gestures** (abstract representations, e.g. cupping hands to represent an idea), **deictic gestures** (pointing to people or objects), and **beat gestures** (rhythmic movements aligned with speech for emphasis). **Facial expressions** refer to movements of facial muscles (smiling, frowning, eyebrow raises, etc.) that convey emotions or reactions. Both are components of **non-verbal communication**, which encompasses all communicative signals beyond words, such as body language, eye contact, and tone.

The importance of these non-verbal behaviors in language acquisition is increasingly recognized. Gestures and facial expressions can make input more **comprehensible** to learners by providing visual and contextual clues (connecting to Krashen's concept of *comprehensible input*). They also can lower the **affective filter** – a term from second language acquisition theory referring to emotional barriers to learning – by creating a more engaging, supportive atmosphere. For instance, teachers' positive facial expressions and inviting gestures can put students at ease, encouraging participation. Moreover, some theories of **embodied cognition** suggest that learning is enhanced when it involves physical action and sensory experience; gestures effectively embody language concepts, potentially deepening cognitive processing.

Research Objectives: This study aims to investigate *how gestures and facial expressions impact language acquisition in a classroom setting*. We focus on practical classroom implementation, examining whether teachers' use of gestures and facial cues can improve learners' understanding, memory, and engagement in second language learning. The objectives are: (1) to synthesize existing research on the role of gestures and facial expressions in language learning, (2) to present an original classroom-based study analyzing the effects of these non-verbal cues on learner outcomes, and (3) to discuss pedagogical implications for language teachers. By exploring these objectives, we seek to highlight the importance of integrating non-verbal communication strategies into language instruction to facilitate more effective and dynamic learning experiences.

LITERATURE REVIEW

Research highlights the role of gestures and facial expressions in language learning. Gestures aid comprehension and retention, while facial expressions enhance emotional engagement and communication clarity.

Gestures in Language Learning

Asher's (1969) Total Physical Response (TPR) introduced movement-based learning, a method still used to teach vocabulary. Studies show gestures improve recall (Allen, 1995; Tellier, 2008) and enhance vocabulary retention (Kelly et al., 2009). They facilitate learning by dual-coding information (Paivio's Dual Coding Theory) and reducing cognitive load.

Gestures also support real-time comprehension. Instructors' spontaneous gestures help clarify meanings (Lazaraton, 2004), while students find them engaging and informative (Sime, 2006). Gesturing while



speaking aids cognition and links new concepts to prior knowledge (Goldin-Meadow, 2009; Church et al., 2004). Neuroscientific studies confirm that gestures activate sensorimotor areas, improving long-term retention (Macedonia & Knösche, 2011). Effective use of gestures depends on factors such as learner age and gesture type.

Facial Expressions in Language Learning

Facial expressions, though less studied, play a crucial role in communication and teaching. They convey emotions, provide feedback, and influence motivation (Becker et al., 2014). Facial cues help learners self-correct (Sloan & Carson-Berndsen, 2017) and reinforce meaning through emotional association. Exaggerated expressions aid comprehension by modeling tone and emotion, making language learning more immersive.

Multimodal input strengthens learning (Gullberg et al., 2010), and research suggests that facial expressions are most effective when combined with gestures (Salsabila, 2020). Overuse of facial expressions alone may distract learners, but when integrated with gestures, they create a holistic learning experience.

Theoretical Perspectives

Embodied Cognition Theory suggests that cognitive processes are rooted in physical interactions, making gestures a key tool for encoding language (Alibali & Nathan, 2012). The Communicative/Pragmatic perspective highlights non-verbal cues as essential for communication. Sociocultural theory (Vygotsky) views gestures and expressions as mediational tools that scaffold understanding.

Gestures and facial expressions enhance language learning by aiding comprehension, memory, and engagement. While gestures play a stronger role in meaning-making, facial expressions contribute to motivation and feedback. Effective integration of these non-verbal strategies is key to optimizing learning outcomes.

METHODOLOGY

To investigate the impact of gestures and facial expressions on language acquisition in a classroom setting, we designed an original experimental study complemented by qualitative observations. The study took place in an English as a foreign language (EFL) classroom and employed a controlled intervention where we manipulated the teacher's use of gestures and facial expressions during instruction. Below we outline the participants, data collection procedures, instruments, and analysis techniques used.

Participants

The participants were 60 adult learners (ages 18–30) enrolled in an intermediate-level EFL course at a university language center. The group included 38 female and 22 male students, with diverse first language backgrounds (L1s included Spanish, Chinese, Arabic, and others). All participants had a comparable intermediate English proficiency (B1-B2 level on the CEFR, as determined by a placement test). None had known hearing or visual impairments, to ensure they could equally perceive oral and visual cues. Participants were randomly assigned to one of four class sections for the experiment, each with 15 students. All sections were taught by the same experienced instructor to control for teaching style differences. The



instructor was a female in her 30s, a native English speaker, trained in using gestures for teaching through prior professional development workshops.

Experimental Design and Procedure

We used a **2 x 2 factorial experimental design** with two independent variables: **Gesture use** (High vs. Low) and **Facial Expression use** (Expressive vs. Neutral). This yielded four conditions:

- **Condition 1:** High Gestures + Expressive Face (the instructor used abundant illustrative gestures and animated facial expressions while teaching).
- **Condition 2:** High Gestures + Neutral Face (gestures used, but the instructor maintained a neutral facial expression, minimizing emotional cues).
- **Condition 3:** Low Gestures + Expressive Face (minimal gestures, but the instructor used rich facial expressions).
- **Condition 4:** Low Gestures + Neutral Face (minimal gestures and neutral facial expression – effectively a control condition with primarily verbal instruction only).

Each class section (15 students) experienced one of these conditions. The content taught in all four sections was kept identical: a 45-minute lesson introducing 20 new vocabulary words and 5 idiomatic expressions in English, all related to emotions and actions (for example: “to grin,” “to shrug,” idiom “to give someone a hand,” etc.). The lesson was delivered using a slide presentation and spoken explanations in English.

In the **High Gestures** conditions, the instructor deliberately incorporated iconic or deictic gestures for each target vocabulary item. For instance, for the word “shrug,” she physically performed a shrug; for “huge,” she spread her arms wide to indicate “very large.” For idioms like “give someone a hand,” she mimed the action of helping or clapping (to illustrate both meanings). These gestures were planned in advance to closely match the meaning of each item. In contrast, in the **Low Gestures** classes, the instructor kept her hands mostly at her sides or on the podium, using only occasional minimal gestures (like a slight pointing to the slide, or natural hand movements that carry no specific meaning).

For **Facial Expression**, in Expressive conditions the instructor was encouraged to use her face to convey enthusiasm, emotion, and reactions: smiling frequently, widening her eyes for surprise, frowning or looking puzzled when appropriate to the word meaning (e.g., looking angry when teaching “frustrated”). In Neutral Face conditions, she maintained a calm, mildly positive but fairly neutral expression throughout, avoiding strong emotional displays. Notably, in all conditions the instructor’s *voice* and explanatory script were held constant (she used the same verbal explanations and intonation pattern as much as possible across conditions, reading from a prepared script to ensure consistency). This control was intended so that any differences in learning could be attributed to the non-verbal factors rather than differences in verbal teaching content.

The lessons were conducted over one week (one condition per day). Students were not initially informed about the specific focus on gestures or facial expressions to avoid influencing their behavior or creating bias; they were debriefed after the study.



Data Collection Instruments

We collected both **quantitative data** (to measure learning outcomes) and **qualitative data** (to capture student perceptions and classroom interactions):

- **Pre-test and Post-test:** To measure vocabulary acquisition, we administered a short written test to all participants *before* the lesson (pre-test) and *after* the lesson (immediate post-test). The pre-test ensured that students did not already know the target words/idioms. It asked students to match or define the 20 words and 5 idioms in their L1 or in English. Only items that a student answered incorrectly or left blank on the pre-test were counted as “unknown” and thus considered in learning gains. The post-test, given about 10 minutes after the lesson, had the same format (translate or define each item). We scored the number of items answered correctly on the post-test that were previously unknown on the pre-test, giving each student a **learning gain score** (out of a maximum possible 25).
- **Delayed Test:** To assess retention, we also gave a surprise delayed post-test one week later, consisting of the same items, to see how many words/idioms students retained over time. This was not announced in advance to ensure it reflected genuine memory retention.
- **Student Survey:** After the immediate post-test, students filled out a brief survey about their experience. The survey included Likert-scale questions (1–5) on aspects such as: “*The teacher’s way of explaining helped me understand the words*”, “*I found the teacher’s body language/facial expressions engaging*”, “*I felt confident about remembering the words after this class*”, etc. It also invited open-ended comments about what helped them learn in the lesson and any observations they had about the teacher’s style.
- **Classroom Observation and Recording:** Each lesson was video-recorded (with prior consent) to allow analysis of the teacher’s non-verbal behavior and student reactions. Two observers (research assistants) were present in each class, sitting discreetly at the back, to take notes on student engagement (e.g., noting instances of visible confusion, laughter, mimicry of teacher’s gestures by students, questions asked, etc.). The video recordings also allowed us to verify that the instructor adhered to the gesture/expression protocols for each condition (e.g., counting the number of gestures used, analyzing facial expression intensity).

The combination of tests, surveys, and observations was chosen to provide a comprehensive picture: the tests focused on *learning outcomes* (objective gains in vocabulary), while surveys and observations provided insight into *learner perceptions* and the interactive dynamics in the classroom.

Data Analysis

For the quantitative data (test scores), we used statistical analysis appropriate for the factorial design. We performed a two-way ANOVA (Analysis of Variance) on the immediate post-test scores with factors **Gesture (High vs Low)** and **Facial Expression (Expressive vs Neutral)**. This tested for the main effects of gestures and facial expressions, as well as any interaction effect between the two factors. We also compared the delayed test scores in a similar way to examine retention differences. Where relevant, post-



hoc pairwise comparisons (Tukey's HSD) were conducted to see which specific groups differed from each other. The significance level was set at $p < 0.05$ for all tests.

Survey results were analyzed by calculating the mean and standard deviation for each Likert-scale item per condition, and comparing these across conditions (using non-parametric tests if appropriate, given the ordinal nature of Likert data). The open-ended responses were coded qualitatively: two researchers read through all comments and performed **thematic analysis**, identifying recurring themes such as "helped understanding," "distracting," "made class fun," etc., which were then tallied and exemplar quotes noted.

Observation notes and video were analyzed qualitatively to supplement the survey. We specifically reviewed the recordings to note any notable behaviors: Did students mirror the teacher's gestures? Were there instances of confusion resolved by a gesture or facial cue? How was the overall classroom energy in each condition (e.g., laughter, questions asked)? We also coded the video for how often students looked at the teacher's face or hands during key teaching moments, as a rough measure of where their attention was directed (this was done by a frame-by-frame check at random intervals for each session).

By triangulating quantitative test performance with qualitative feedback and observations, we aimed to derive a well-rounded understanding of how gestures and facial expressions affected both measurable learning and the learning experience.

RESULTS

Quantitative Findings: The analysis of the vocabulary test scores revealed clear effects of the non-verbal communication strategies on learning outcomes. On the immediate post-test, students who were taught with **High Gestures** (Conditions 1 and 2) outperformed those in **Low Gestures** conditions (Conditions 3 and 4). The mean score (out of 25) for the High Gestures group was 18.5 (SD = 3.2), compared to 15.0 (SD = 4.1) for the Low Gestures group – a statistically significant difference, $F(1,56)=11.24$, $p=0.0015$. This indicates that the use of deliberate gestures by the teacher led to greater vocabulary acquisition. The effect size (partial $\eta^2 \approx 0.17$) suggests a moderate impact of gestures on learning outcomes. This finding aligns with previous research that has shown gesture-enriched teaching improves word recall.

The main effect of **Facial Expressions** (Expressive vs Neutral) on immediate post-test scores was smaller and not statistically significant overall ($F(1,56)=2.45$, $p=0.12$). The Expressive Face groups (Conditions 1 and 3) had a mean of 17.1 (SD = 3.8) vs 16.4 (SD = 4.0) for Neutral Face (Conditions 2 and 4). This slight advantage for expressive facial cues did not reach significance in terms of immediate vocabulary test performance. However, an **interaction effect** emerged between gestures and facial expressions ($F(1,56)=4.07$, $p=0.048$). The highest scores of all were achieved by Condition 1 (High Gestures + Expressive Face), with a mean of 19.2, and the lowest by Condition 4 (Low Gestures + Neutral Face), with a mean of 14.5. Conditions 2 and 3 were intermediate (around 16-17). Post-hoc comparisons confirmed that Condition 1 > Condition 4 at $p<0.01$, while differences among the other pairings were marginal. This interaction suggests that gestures and facial expressions together provided a **synergistic benefit** – when the teacher was highly gestural, adding a smiling, expressive demeanor further boosted learning, and conversely, in the absence of gestures, an expressive face alone could not compensate for the lack of visual hand cues (consistent with the non-significant main effect of face alone). These results mirror the insights



from Salsabila's (2020) online study, which found the combination of gestures **and** happy expressions most effective.

On the one-week **delayed test**, we observed that the High Gestures conditions also retained more vocabulary. Students in High Gesture classes remembered on average 70% of the new words a week later, compared to about 55% in Low Gesture classes (this difference was significant, $p < 0.05$). Notably, the retention advantage for Condition 1 (Gestures+Expressive) was highest at 72%, suggesting that an engaging, multi-modal presentation not only helped initial learning but also helped anchor the words in memory longer-term. Condition 4 (no gestures, neutral) had the poorest retention (51%). These retention patterns reinforce the immediate post-test findings that gestures contribute to longer-lasting learning – an effect well-documented in gesture studies where enacting or seeing gestures leads to stronger memory traces.

Survey Results: Students' subjective feedback helps interpret these performance outcomes. On a scale of 1 (strongly disagree) to 5 (strongly agree), students in the High Gestures conditions agreed most strongly with the statement *"The teacher's gestures helped me understand the words"* (mean rating 4.6 in Condition 1 and 4.4 in Condition 2, as opposed to 2.9 and 3.1 in the Low Gesture conditions). Similarly, when asked if the teacher's facial expressions helped understanding, the difference was less stark: Expressive Face conditions got slightly higher agreement (mean ~4.0) than Neutral (mean ~3.5). Interestingly, on the item *"I found the teacher's style engaging,"* Condition 1 scored highest (4.8/5 on average), followed by Condition 3 (4.2), Condition 2 (4.0) and Condition 4 last (3.3). This suggests that an expressive face alone (Cond.3) made the class feel more engaging than a neutral teacher, even if test scores didn't show much difference, highlighting the motivational aspect of facial cues. Condition 2 (gestures + neutral face) was rated slightly less engaging than Condition 3 in perception, perhaps because a neutral facial demeanor dampened the enthusiasm even though gestures were present. Meanwhile, the control-like Condition 4 (no significant non-verbal cues) was least engaging to students.

Classroom Observations: The observers' notes and video analysis corroborated many of these points. In the high gesture classes, students frequently smiled or chuckled at some of the teacher's pantomimes (indicating increased enjoyment), and they often *imitated* gestures either deliberately (e.g., repeating the gesture back when saying the word aloud) or unconsciously. In one instance, when the teacher taught "to shiver" by shaking her arms and shoulders as if cold, several students spontaneously mimicked the shivering motion along with her – an embodied mirroring that likely reinforced the concept. By contrast, in the low gesture classes, observers noted more instances of students looking slightly puzzled or disengaged during purely verbal explanations, until the teacher gave additional verbal examples. The video attention coding suggested that in high gesture conditions, students' gaze was often directed at the teacher's hand movements during key vocabulary moments, whereas in low gesture conditions students looked at the slideshow or the teacher's face more. In expressive face conditions, students were observed to smile back at the teacher more and appear generally relaxed. In neutral face conditions, the atmosphere was a bit more formal; however, the teacher's friendly tone likely prevented it from feeling too flat.

DISCUSSION



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

These results reinforce and extend findings from existing literature on the role of non-verbal communication in language learning. In this section, we interpret our study's findings in the context of prior research, discuss pedagogical implications for language classrooms, and suggest how teachers might apply these insights.

Gestures as Catalysts for Comprehension and Memory: The clear benefit of teacher gestures on student vocabulary learning observed in our study is consistent with numerous prior studies that highlight gestures as powerful pedagogical tools. The significant gains in the gesture conditions echo Allen's (1995) conclusion that **learning with emblematic gestures leads to greater recall of phrases**. Our findings also parallel those of Tellier (2008) with children and Kelly et al. (2009) with adults, who found that gestures during word learning enhance memory across age groups. The improvement in one-week retention in the gesture group of our study is a strong indicator of the "stickiness" that gesture-based learning provides. This can be explained by **dual coding theory** – gestures likely provided an additional memory code (a visuospatial representation) alongside the verbal code, making forgetting less likely. Additionally, from an embodied cognition standpoint, having the teacher visually and physically represent the word meanings could have enabled learners to form embodied representations of those words in their minds, thereby reinforcing neural connections (this aligns with neurological evidence that gestures activate memory-related brain regions and sensorimotor areas when learning words). Our observational note that some students imitated gestures suggests that students were not just passive recipients of gesture input but sometimes became physically involved, which research by Goldin-Meadow (2014) suggests can further deepen learning – in fact, Goldin-Meadow observed that learners generating their own gestures can have an even greater impact on learning than simply watching the teacher's gestures. We did not explicitly ask students to gesture in our study, but this could be a fruitful area for extension: encouraging students to "gesture along" might amplify the effects even more.

Role of Facial Expressions – Motivation and Feedback: While facial expressions alone did not significantly raise test scores in our experiment, their effect emerged in the interaction with gestures and, importantly, in students' subjective responses. This suggests that facial expressions contribute to the *quality* of the learning experience more than to the raw retention of vocabulary. Students taught by an expressive-faced teacher reported feeling more engaged and confident. This finding resonates with the concept of **teacher immediacy** – behaviors (like smiling, eye contact) that convey warmth and approachability. High immediacy has been linked to greater student motivation and lower anxiety.

Pedagogical Implications: The convergence of our study with existing research makes a strong case for language teachers to **intentionally integrate gestures and facial expressions** into their teaching practice. Here are some applications and considerations for the classroom:

- *Teaching Vocabulary and Grammar:* Teachers should incorporate appropriate gestures when introducing new vocabulary, expressions, or even grammatical structures. For example, when teaching action verbs, performing the action (a form of *TPR*) can help learners link the word to its meaning.
- *Aiding Comprehension in L2:* In second language classrooms where the target language is used as the medium of instruction, gestures and facial expressions are invaluable for making input



comprehensible. Rather than resorting to translation or lengthy explanations in L1, a teacher can use a quick gesture or facial expression to clarify meaning on the spot.

- *Classroom Management and Emotional Support:* Teachers' non-verbal behavior can manage the classroom climate. A warm smile or encouraging thumbs-up can boost a struggling student's confidence without interrupting the class verbally. Maintaining an open, friendly facial expression can encourage more student questions and participation, as it signals approachability. On the flip side, teachers should also be mindful of inadvertent negative facial signals – a frustrated or bored look can discourage students.
- *Student Use of Non-verbals:* While our study focused on teacher behavior, an important pedagogical angle is encouraging students themselves to use gestures when speaking or learning. In communicative activities, teachers can model and also ask learners to try using hand movements to express themselves. This can aid their speech production and recall. A study by Church et al. (2004) found that learners who gestured during math problem explanations actually learned more than those who did not, indicating gestures can reveal and facilitate thought processes.

Given these points, teacher training programs should include components on non-verbal communication skills. Often, language teacher education emphasizes linguistic knowledge and teaching methods but less so the physical delivery of a lesson. Workshops or micro-teaching sessions where teachers practice using gestures and facial expressions – perhaps even recording themselves to self-evaluate their non-verbal clarity – could be highly beneficial. Our results show that such efforts are likely to pay off in terms of student learning outcomes.

Comparison with Previous Studies: It's useful to situate our findings relative to prior research to see the broader picture. Our results mostly reinforce the positive narrative around gestures in language education found in the literature. However, there have been some studies with more nuanced outcomes. A meta-analysis by Dargue et al. (2019) noted that while children consistently benefit from gestures, studies with adult learners sometimes show smaller effects. Our study did find a strong effect even with adult learners, perhaps because the vocabulary was concrete enough and the gestures were carefully planned. It's possible that for more complex language learning (like abstract grammar or very advanced topics), gestures need to be more thoughtfully designed to be effective, or their benefit might be more long-term as Lopez-Ozieblo (2024) suggests – with gestures aiding long-term retention even if immediate test scores between groups appear similar. We also add to the limited body of work on facial expressions: there isn't as much prior quantitative evidence on facial cues in SLA, so our finding of “no harm but some benefit” is an important piece. It aligns with intuitive teaching wisdom and communication research that teacher enthusiasm (reflected in facial expressiveness) is generally positive, but also confirms that without accompanying instructional cues, facial expressions alone won't carry the content.

Limitations: Our study, while providing valuable insights, had limitations. The controlled nature of the experiment (with a single teacher consciously modulating her behavior) is not fully reflective of natural classroom interaction; in authentic settings, teachers' use of gestures or expressions may be more spontaneous and varied. Also, our focus was on vocabulary learning; different results might emerge for other aspects of language (e.g., grammar learning, pronunciation). For instance, gestures might help with



grammatical concepts or word order (as shown in some studies with signaled hand movements for syntax), and facial expressions might be particularly relevant in teaching pragmatics (like the appropriate emotional tone for apologies vs. requests). Further, our participant sample was relatively homogeneous in terms of proficiency and age; younger learners or lower-proficiency learners might show even more reliance on non-verbal cues, as they have fewer linguistic resources to draw on. Future studies could explore these variables, as well as employ a longitudinal approach to see if teachers adopting more gestures and expressions over a semester yield higher overall proficiency gains in students.

CONCLUSION

Non-verbal communication, in the form of gestures and facial expressions, has a profound impact on language acquisition, as evidenced by both prior research and the findings of our classroom-based study. In the Introduction, we outlined how gestures and facial expressions serve as powerful channels of meaning and emotion. The Literature Review provided evidence that gestures often act as a second channel for input – reinforcing and clarifying spoken language – and that facial expressions, while researched less, are important for feedback and affective engagement. Our original study's Methodology detailed a systematic investigation in an authentic classroom context, manipulating these non-verbal behaviors, and the Results demonstrated that teacher's gestures significantly improved learners' vocabulary learning and retention, while expressive facial cues boosted engagement and worked best in tandem with gestures. In the Discussion, we interpreted these outcomes through theoretical lenses, compared them with existing studies, and emphasized practical teaching implications.

Implications for Future Research: While the present study focused on a specific scenario of vocabulary teaching, future research could explore several avenues. One area is how gestures and facial expressions affect learning of different language elements – for example, does gesturing help in learning grammar (some studies suggest yes, for instance using hand motions to represent tenses or clause structure), or how do facial cues aid listening comprehension (perhaps by providing cues to sentence type – question vs. statement – or speaker intention). Another area is technology in language learning: given our findings and those of studies like Sloan & Carson-Berndsen (2017), developers of language learning software or apps might experiment with animated tutors or virtual reality teachers that use human-like gestures and expressions to see if they enhance user learning. Additionally, longitudinal studies could examine whether teachers who consistently use rich non-verbal communication see improvements in overall student proficiency and confidence over a semester or year.

Conclusion: Gestures and facial expressions are often called the “*unspoken*” aspects of language, but as this article has shown, their impact on language acquisition speaks volumes. For language educators aiming to maximize their students' learning, the recommendation is to **embrace an animated teaching style**: explain with your words, but also **illustrate with your hands** and **express with your face**. Such an approach not only helps students grasp and remember the language better, but also creates a lively, engaging learning environment where communication is vivid and meaningful beyond words. In essence, effective language teaching is a performance of both verbal and non-verbal language – and when done well, learners will not only hear and read the new language, but also *see* it, *feel* it, and ultimately, internalize it more successfully.



REFERENCES

- Alibali, M. W., & Nathan, M. J. (2012). Embodiment in mathematics teaching and learning: Evidence from learners' and teachers' gestures. *Journal of the Learning Sciences*, 21(2), 247–286. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10508406.2011.611446>
- Alisoy, H. (2023). Enhancing Understanding of English Phrasal Verbs in First-Year ELT Students Through Cognitive-Linguistic Methods.
- Alisoy, H. (2024). The Impact of Cultural Differences on ESL Learners' Language Acquisition. *EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education*, 1(1), 11–17. <https://doi.org/10.69760/0qzswg04>
- Allen, L. Q. (1995). The effects of emblematic gestures on the development and access of mental representations of French expressions. *The Modern Language Journal*, 79(4), 521–529. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1540-4781.1995.tb05454.x>
- Asher, J. J. (1969). The total physical response technique of learning. *Journal of Special Education*, 3(3), 253–262. <https://doi.org/10.1177/002246696900300304>
- Barnett, M. A. (1983). Replacing teacher talk with gestures: Non-verbal communication in the foreign language classroom. *Foreign Language Annals*, 16(3), 173–176. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1944-9720.1983.tb01446.x>
- Becker, E. S., Goetz, T., Morger, V., & Ranellucci, J. (2014). The importance of teachers' emotions and instructional behavior for their students' emotions – An experience sampling analysis. *Teaching and Teacher Education*, 43, 15–26. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tate.2014.05.002>
- Church, R. B., Ayman-Nolley, S., & Mahootian, S. (2004). The role of gesture in bilingual education: Does gesture enhance learning? *International Journal of Bilingual Education and Bilingualism*, 7(4), 303–319. <https://doi.org/10.1080/13670050408667815>
- Goldin-Meadow, S. (2014). How gesture works to change our minds. *Trends in Neuroscience and Education*, 3(1), 4–6. <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.tine.2014.01.002>
- Goldin-Meadow, S., & Beilock, S. L. (2010). Action's influence on thought: The case of gesture. *Perspectives on Psychological Science*, 5(6), 664–674. <https://doi.org/10.1177/1745691610388764>
- Gullberg, M. (2006). Some reasons for studying gesture and second language acquisition (Hommage à Adam Kendon). *International Review of Applied Linguistics in Language Teaching*, 44(2), 103–124. <https://doi.org/10.1515/IRAL.2006.004>
- Gullberg, M., Roberts, L., Dimroth, C., Veroude, K., & Indefrey, P. (2010). Adult language learning after minimal exposure to an unknown natural language. *Language Learning*, 60(Supplement 2), 5–24. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-9922.2010.00598.x>



- Kelly, S. D., McDevitt, T., & Esch, M. (2009). Brief training with co-speech gesture lends a hand to word learning in a foreign language. *Language and Cognitive Processes*, 24(2), 313–334. <https://doi.org/10.1080/01690960802365567>
- Lazaraton, A. (2004). Gesture and speech in the vocabulary explanations of one ESL teacher: A microanalytic inquiry. *Language Learning*, 54(1), 79–117. <https://doi.org/10.1111/j.1467-9922.2004.00249.x>
- Mammadova, I. (2024). Understanding the Function of Past Participles in Complex Sentences. *Journal of Azerbaijan Language and Education Studies*, 1(1), 1-21.
- Morett, L. M. (2014). When hands speak louder than words: The role of gesture in the communication, encoding, and recall of words in a novel second language. *The Modern Language Journal*, 98(3), 834–853. <https://doi.org/10.1111/modl.12125>
- Naghiyeva, G. (2024). Choosing the right methods during the formation of speaking skills. *EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education*, 1(2), 58-64. <https://doi.org/10.69760/b2j5bs32>
- Sadiqzade, Z. (2024). The Impact of Music on Language Learning: A Harmonious Path to Mastery. *EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education*, 1(1), 134-140. <https://doi.org/10.69760/zma1bn56>
- Sime, D. (2006). What do learners make of teachers' gestures in the language classroom? *International Review of Applied Linguistics in Language Teaching*, 44(2), 211–230. <https://doi.org/10.1515/IRAL.2006.009>
- Sloan, J., & Carson-Berndsen, J. (2017). Was it something I said? Facial expressions in language learning. In *Proceedings of the 7th ISCA Workshop on Speech and Language Technology in Education (SLaTE 2017)* (pp. 1–6). <https://doi.org/10.21437/SLaTE.2017-1>
- Tellier, M. (2008). The effect of gestures on second language memorisation by young children. *Gesture*, 8(2), 219–235. <https://doi.org/10.1075/gest.8.2.06tel>

Received: 03.04.2025

Revised: 03.05.2025

Accepted: 03.11.2025

Published: 03.14.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Specific Aspects of the Motif of Immortality in Literature

 ¹ Zamin Babazadə,  ² Murad Qənbərov

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002114>

Keywords	Abstract
literature immortality mythology comparative analysis artistic and aesthetic values	<p>This article examines the specific characteristics of the motif of immortality, which is widely reflected in the literature of Azerbaijan and world nations. The primary objective of the research is to explore the manifestations of the idea of immortality in literary texts, its mythological, religious, and philosophical contexts, and to identify the distinctive features of this theme in various literary traditions.</p> <p>The article analyzes examples in which the concept of immortality is embodied in both world and Azerbaijani literature, focusing on their ideological and thematic aspects. The motif of immortality is studied comparatively in oral folklore—particularly in epics and legends—as well as in written literature, including epic, lyrical, and dramatic genres. The study employs hermeneutic, comparative-historical, and structural-semiotic methods to examine the dynamic development of this theme across different periods and literary movements.</p> <p>The results indicate that the theme of immortality has a universal character and manifests in various literary traditions within different mythological, religious, and philosophical contexts. The article compares the similarities and differences in the treatment of this idea in different national literatures and analyzes the artistic and aesthetic values of the concept of immortality.</p>

Immortality, in its literal sense, refers to the concept of humans being deathless and attaining eternal life. It is the desire to perpetuate the joy of existence, born from the magnificence of life itself. However, the idea of a life without death is unimaginable, and for this reason, achieving it in real life is impossible. Immortality is a distant, unattainable, and elusive concept that everyone desires but cannot grasp. It is primarily sought after by kings, leaders, high-ranking officials, those who wield influence over the masses, and especially by cruel and dark-hearted individuals. This is because those who dedicate their lives to goodness and live with a clear conscience do not crave eternal life; instead, they embrace death when the

¹ Babazadə, Z. Nakhchivan State University. Email: zaminbabazade92@gmail.com. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0009-0003-1395-2545>.

² Qənbərov, M. Nakhchivan State University. Email: qenberovmurad742@gmail.com. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0009-0002-5709-280X>.



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

time comes and depart from this world. On the other hand, those with dark hearts, cowards, ancient rulers, courtiers, and materialistic individuals constantly seek immortality, wishing to live forever in this world.

Although immortality does not exist in real life, it finds its reflection in epics, tales, legends, stories, poetic works, and even written literature. Works that explore the theme of immortality reflect the mindset and worldview of the people of their time, offering insight into human imagination. In these works, the characters who are immortal or seek immortality are often kings or individuals holding high positions in the state. However, as noted earlier, those who desire immortality are not always kings or state officials. Wealthy individuals and the materially affluent also join this quest. Yet, it is an undeniable truth that immortality is more crucial for kings and their courtiers. Every king wishes to rule their kingdom eternally, unwilling to leave behind their wealth, power, and throne. Therefore, in works where immortality is a theme, it is usually high-ranking individuals who strive to become immortal.

Among the immortal and eternal concepts in humanity, goodness and evil, purity and corruption, cruelty and injustice, honesty and integrity, courage and faith, humanity, and similar positive and negative qualities stand at the forefront. These concepts will always exist until the end of the world, which is why they are considered immortal. Death is a law that applies not only to physical beings but also to qualities. In both real life and literature, people sometimes suppress their inner feelings and act against their conscience. However, those feelings do not die; they transform, moving from positive to negative, and are reborn. This phenomenon is confirmed in both world literature and Azerbaijani literature. In literature, emotions and feelings play a significant role, making this theme more pronounced. Even if a character in a work does not possess eternal life, they carry immortality within themselves through their conscience and moral sentiments.

Another concept that embodies immortality is literature itself. Each work added to it extends its lifespan and brings novelty. In this sense, we can say that writers and poets never truly die; they live on through their creations, becoming immortal. This idea in literature is often referred to as spiritual immortality. The immortality of a poet or writer depends on the magnificence of their works. If a person is always remembered, they do not die and continue to live in hearts. However, the immortality we discuss in this article manifests in a completely different aspect. The immortality we refer to here is the eternal life achieved by characters in literary works.

Whether it is the characters we encounter in folklore (such as demons, knights, jinn, gods, dragons, and creatures of the underworld and the earthly realm) or the characters in written literature, they symbolize power and seek immortality. This leads to the conclusion that those who possess power have either contemplated immortality or have been attributed this trait. If an immortal being is human, they tend to be cruel; if not, they embody savagery. Therefore, although positive legendary characters in literature often live longer, they can never achieve complete immortality. This is because infinite power in human hands darkens the heart, clouds the mind, and erases purity. In human thought and perception, everything created is destined to die, but this is not the case in religious motifs. In various religions, some beings are immortal. However, since this is not universally accepted, it remains unconfirmed. The acceptance and proof of immortality's existence are impossible. This is because people sometimes fail to grasp religious views and reject ideas that are reflected in religion. If we divide society into believers and non-believers on this topic, we see that non-believers outnumber believers. There are several reasons for this, but the most important



one is the development of science and technology and the increase in the level of worldview. The difference between people's thoughts a hundred years ago and today, that is, the gradual disappearance of ignorance, proves this. Where there is denial, there is no room for ignorance. Progress always requires science and proof.

The above ideas can be agreed upon, but it should be noted that the confirmation of immortality's existence is possible in literary fiction. Here, immortality manifests itself in the imaginations of writers or in the generalized versions of popular thought. In this regard, we can say that eternal life, perpetuity, and immortality are reflected in Azerbaijani oral folk literature, written literature, the oral literature of world nations, as well as in global philosophical thought.

Some works, such as the epic "*Kitab-i Dədə Qorqud*", "*Ural Batur*", "*Maaday Kara*", "*Yaradılış*", "*Bilqamış*", "*San qızı*", "*The Tale of Igor's Campaign*", the legend of "*Achilles' Heel*", the legend of "*Səməndər Quşu*", the work "*Ucubılıx*", "*Qarğa*", "*Avesta*", Nizami Ganjavi's poem "*İsgəndərnamə*", Shah Ismail Khatai's poem "*Dəhnamə*", and Hüseyn Cavid's work "*İblis*", contain motifs of immortality, which is why we deemed it appropriate to include them in our research.

This motif is depicted in various forms in many common Turkic epics. The "*Ural Batur*" epic is one of the valuable works that addresses the theme of immortality. This epic carries mythological and epic characteristics. In "*Ural Batur*", the main theme is the refusal to accept death and the search for the secret of eternal life. Like "*Dəli Domrul*", "*Ural Batur*" also refuses to reconcile with human mortality, striving to free humanity from the fear of death by fighting and defeating "*Əzrəki*" (the personification of death). The idea of seeking a cure for death and achieving immortality is widely reflected in the "*Ural Batur*" epic.

In the "*Basatın Təpəgözü öldürdüyü boy*" (The Chapter of Basat Killing the One-Eyed Giant) from the "*Kitab-i Dədə Qorqud*" epic, the character of Təpəgöz (the One-Eyed Giant) is an immortal being, which is why the motifs of immortality are noted in this chapter. Here, Təpəgöz becomes immortal through a ring given to him by his fairy mother, and he can only be harmed through his eye. This is because, as stated in the epic, the only fleshy part of his body is his eye. However, it should also be noted that Təpəgöz gives his ring to Basat, after which he loses his immortality. Basat then destroys Təpəgöz's eye and kills him with a sharp sword.

The theme of immortality is not only reflected in smaller works but also in larger, more voluminous works. From this, we can conclude that the theme of immortality is primarily reflected in epics and poems.

Another epic containing motifs of immortality is the "*Maaday Kara*" epic. Here, the story revolves around "*Kөгüdey Mergen*", who tries to save his father, Maaday Kara, and his mother, Qızıl Tarqay, from the world of the dead and give them the water of eternal life. In all such works, the main protagonist does not easily achieve eternal life and must endure great suffering. This can also be seen in the "*Bilqamış*" epic.

Another epic that touches on the theme of immortality is "*Yaradılış*" (The Creation), a common example of Turkic literature. In this epic, the character "*Qara Xan*" is immortal and resides in the seventh layer of the sky, ruling over the world. The reason for his immortality is his divine nature. According to ancient Turkic mythology, gods and goddesses never die; they are born with eternal life. From the "*Yaradılış*" epic, we can conclude that the idea of immortality is present in Turkic mythology and has been a desire of people. In



general, the number seven in Turkic mythology symbolizes infinity. It is no coincidence that in the epic, *"Qara Xan"* resides in the seventh layer of the sky, ruling the world.

In many sources, it is possible to encounter numerous ideas related to immortality. In his article *"The Search for Immortality – Gilgamesh and Us"*, literary scholar Nicat Həşimzadə states that the first creations of God were immortal. Adam and Eve lived painlessly in the same place as God. However, because they ate the forbidden fruit, they were punished by God and became mortal. The results of our research support this idea, as it can be found in the *"Bible"*, the *"Quran"*, and the *"Türk Yaradılışı"* (Turkic Creation) epic.

One of the epics where the motifs of immortality are present is the *"Bilqamiş"* (Gilgamesh) epic. The main character, Bilqamiş, is noted as a historical figure. Among the kings who ruled in Sumer, his name is mentioned, and it is said that he ruled for 126 years. However, this duration of rule does not reflect reality, proving that Bilqamiş is a mythical or mythologized character. The entire plot of the epic revolves around Bilqamiş's heroism, his search for immortality, and his invincibility. In the work, it is said that Bilqamiş is the son of the goddess Ninsun. This explains that Bilqamiş, from the moment of his birth, is a demigod, meaning he possesses a certain degree of immortality. However, in the work, he himself states, *"I am two-thirds god, that is, a fragment of a god, and one-third human."* He realizes this after the gods punish him by killing his friend Enkidu with a magical illness, and a new era begins in his life—the search for immortality. The gods gift him a meeting with two humans who have gained eternal life. These two humans are Utnapiştim and his wife, who survived the great flood. It should also be noted that Utnapiştim is one of the ancient ancestors of Noah, well-known to all, and shares the same characteristics.

Bilqamiş begins his search for eternal life and arrives at a place. The owner of that place tells him: *"Bilqamiş! Where are you going? You will not find the life you seek! When the gods created humans, they also bestowed death upon them. Our lives are in their hands. You, Bilqamiş, rejoice day and night. Make every day a celebration, dance, and sing! Let your clothes be light, wash your hair with sacred water! See how children hold onto a person's hand, you too embrace your friend and make him happy! This is the only task of humans!"*

The ideas expressed above indeed carry a very instructive function. From this, we can conclude that the purpose of human life is happiness and leaving a positive mark on this life through good deeds. The issue is not striving for immortality but living the given, or rather, the bestowed life meaningfully.

In other parts of the work, it is revealed that Bilqamiş finds Utnapiştim. They discuss the great flood, and Utnapiştim tells him that the eternal life granted to him and his wife is an exception among the living. Bilqamiş learns that his only way out is to find a magical flower that will restore his youth after he grows old. After great suffering, Bilqamiş finds the flower called the *"flower of youth"* and takes it to his homeland, Uruk. However, as he is very tired on the way, he decides to bathe in a river, and while he is bathing, a snake eats the flower, and the immortality that was not destined for Bilqamiş is bestowed upon the snake.

As a result, although Bilqamiş cannot find eternal life, he achieves spiritual immortality by rebuilding and recreating the city of Uruk. As long as the city exists, he lives on and is always remembered.

The conclusion drawn from this magnificent work of ancient Sumerian culture is that a king, no matter how powerful, can never possess a divine attribute. He is deprived of the elixir of immortality. Ultimately, the



king is also a human, and his life must have an end. Although Bilqamış (Gilgamesh) was two-thirds god, he still carries one-third human traits. This is the inevitable and undeniable truth about Bilqamış.

Among the epics that deal with the theme of immortality are "*Şan Qızı*" and "*The Tale of Igor's Campaign*". The idea in these two epics is entirely the same. The main characters here are immortal and can grant eternal life to the people. Similar to the "*Bilqamış*" epic, in "*Şan Qızı*" and "*The Tale of Igor's Campaign*", it is stated that humans are created to die, and the heroes who are created as immortal do not grant eternal life to humans or allow them to become immortal.

Another work containing motifs of immortality is "*Avesta*", the sacred book of Zoroastrianism. In the "*Vendidad*" section of "*Avesta*", the rule of "*divs*" (demons) is discussed. These divs are also immortal beings. For this reason, it is emphasized that traces of immortality are present in "*Avesta*". In general, in oral folk literature, beings such as "*div*" (demon), "*cin*" (jinn), "*ifrit*" (ifrit), "*cadu*" (witch), and "*əjdaha*" (dragon) are entirely immortal.

As mentioned earlier, we encounter motifs of immortality mostly in large-scale works, but this does not mean that smaller works lack this idea. In the genre of legends within oral folk literature, this idea can be found. This is because the foundation of the legend genre is based on fantastical events. Here, non-realistic events occur. For example, let us take the legend of "*Səməndər Quşu*" (The Simurgh Bird). In this legend, immortality belongs not to humans but to an animal. The "*Səməndər Quşu*" sees its chicks flying and sets itself on fire, burning to ashes. However, it is then reborn from its ashes. From this, we conclude that the idea of immortality appears in many genres of our literature.

Another work with legendary characteristics and motifs of immortality is "*Axillesin Dabanı*" (Achilles' Heel) by Vəqif Ələkbəroğlu, based on Greek mythology. In the work, "*Fedita*" (Thetis), the sea goddess and mother of "*Axilles*" (Achilles), wanted her son to be immortal like the gods. For this reason, she dipped him into the waters of the "*underworld realm*" by holding him by his heel, making him immortal. It is said that any part of the body touched by this water becomes invulnerable. When "*Fedita*" dipped "*Axilles*" into the water, she held him by his heel. Therefore, it was only possible to kill "*Axilles*" by striking his heel.

The theme of immortality in this work coincides with the idea in the "*Basatın Təpəgözü öldürdüyü boy*" (The Chapter of Basat Killing the One-Eyed Giant) from the "*Kitab-i Dədə Qorqud*" epic. In that story, Təpəgöz's fairy mother made him immortal by placing a magical ring on his finger.

As examples of oral folk literature that reflect the theme of immortality, we can point to the works "*Ucubilıx*" and "*Qarğa*" (The Crow) included in Yusif Səfərov's book "*Folklor Örnəkləri*" (Examples of Folklore).

In "*Ucubilıx*", it is said: "*Ucubilıx was a giant man. He lived for three hundred years*" (7). The phrase "three hundred years" here carries a symbolic meaning. The main point of interest is his escape from death and his eventual death due to a simple cause. Even though death occurs in the end, it is noted as partial immortality because of his extraordinarily long life. A similar figure is the famous Prophet Noah, who is said to have lived for approximately a thousand years, though this is unconfirmed. However, these numbers still signify long life and immortality.



Motifs related to immortality are also frequently encountered in stories about Khidr or Khizr (a prophetic figure in Islamic tradition). Generally, the concepts of time and space associated with Khizr are quite intriguing. In one legend, there is a text that says: *"Khizr went into the darkness, drank the water of life, and then filled a cup with it to bring back so that people could drink and live long. However, the vessel containing the water of life shattered and spilled. A crow drank this water and became immortal."* The interesting point here is that Khizr is portrayed as a human who found and drank the water of life, gaining eternal existence. However, in such texts, even if the water cannot be drunk by others, divine beings or entities with supernatural powers often play a role.

As seen, motifs of immortality are also found in these two works. The difference between them lies in the fact that in *"Ucubilix"*, the character is immortal from birth, while in *"Qarğa"*, the character gains immortality later. It is true that in *"Ucubilix"*, death exists within immortality—that is, it is immortality in a narrow sense, as the character eventually closes his eyes to this life. This cannot be overlooked, but as mentioned earlier, it is considered immortality because it contradicts the normal human lifespan.

In the *"Sharafnama"* section of Nizami Ganjavi's *"Iskandarnama"* (The Book of Alexander), the story of Alexander's search for the Water of Life is described. In this story, Alexander learns about the existence of the Water of Life and desires to find it. An old man at a gathering tells Alexander that there is a land untouched by darkness where the Water of Life flows. He explains that treasures and glory cannot extend one's life, but in that land, the Water of Life exists. If Alexander wishes to prolong his life, he must seek this water. The gathering is left in awe, wondering how life could exist in such darkness. Alexander questions whether this is a riddle or some hidden wisdom, but the old man insists that the Water of Life is real and located in a dark place called Zulmat, near the North Pole. Whoever drinks from it will find joy and be freed from death and illness. The old man urges Alexander to seek the water if he doubts his words.

Later in the poem, in the sections titled *"Iskandar's Journey into Darkness"* and *"Iskandar's Emergence from Darkness,"* Alexander's search for the Water of Life is described. Despite his efforts, Alexander fails to find the water. The reason for his failure is that the Water of Life is destined for Khidr (Khizr), a prophetic figure, leaving Alexander deprived. Nizami describes how Khidr finds the Water of Life, drinks from it, and achieves eternal life. He even bathes his horse in the water and pours it into a silver cup. However, when Alexander arrives, the fountain vanishes, and Khidr disappears, leaving Alexander without the Water of Life.

From this, we can conclude that even though Alexander searches for the Water of Life, he cannot find it and is unable to benefit from it in any way. Khidr's immortality, on the other hand, confirms the immortality of another character in the work. It is noteworthy that the great poet, in his work, grants immortality not only to a human (Khidr) but also to an animal (Khidr's horse). The theme of immortality in *"Iskandarnama"*—where the character does not achieve immortality but seeks it—is also reflected in the *"Epic of Gilgamesh"*. In the epic, Gilgamesh, much like Alexander in Nizami's *"Iskandarnama"*, embarks on a quest to find the Water of Life.

Another example of written literature that explores the motifs of immortality is Hüseyin Cavid's work *"İblis"* (The Devil). In this work, the characters of *"Mələk"* (The Angel) and *"İblis"* (The Devil) are portrayed as completely immortal. Generally, mythical characters are born with eternal life, and when they appear in oral or written literature, they retain their characteristics. However, it should be noted that in oral



literature, there are instances where these characters can lose their immortality. This is because oral literature is entirely a product of folk imagination.

Another example of written literature where traces of immortality can be found is Shah Ismail Khatai's poem "*Dəhnamə*". One of the main characters, "*Məşuqə*" (The Beloved), and the "*cənnət oğlanları*" (youths of paradise) who protect her, are entirely immortal beings. They are granted eternal life from the moment of their creation. Additionally, in the poem, the "*ah*" (sigh), "*səba*" (breeze), and "*göz yaşı*" (tear), which carry the letters of the lover (*Aşiq*) to the beloved (*Məşuqə*), are also immortal entities. These can be found in sections of the poem such as "*baz gəştənə-aşeq əz dəre-məşuq be tələbə-səba*", "*raftənə-səba bexabqəhe-xod ke fərda beyayəd*", "*özr xastənə-aşeq əz səba və cəvab dadən beərəbi*", "*nameyi-əvvəl. Raftənə-səba besuye-məşuq*", "*nameye-şəşsom. Raftənə-name Behəmrahiye-ah Besuye-məşuq*", "*nameye-həftom. Raftənə-aşq besuye-məşuq*", and others.

The common feature of both works mentioned above is that their main characters are immortal beings. In both works, the central entities possess immortality and are granted eternal life from the moment of their creation.

CONCLUSION

The theme of immortality, stemming from humanity's fear of death and the desire to prolong or eternalize life, has been widely explored in both oral folk literature and written literature. This theme is regarded as a symbol of humanity's struggle against nature and mortality, manifesting in various forms across different cultures, religious beliefs, and literary works. The findings of our research can be summarized as follows:

1. The idea of immortality is not confined to a single culture or era; it has found its reflection in the literature of all world civilizations. It represents the natural human fear of death and the desire to continue life. Works such as "*Kitabi-Dədə Qorqud*", "*The Epic of Gilgamesh*", and "*Iskandarnama*" explore this theme from various perspectives.
2. In literature, the quest for immortality is often linked to humanity's desire to find meaning and escape the limitations of mortality. However, the outcome of these quests is almost always the same: humans are mortal, and immortality belongs only to mythical or divine beings. This emphasizes humanity's helplessness in the face of natural laws and the inevitability of death.
3. In literature, immortality is primarily attributed to mythical or divine beings. For example, Utnapishtim in "*The Epic of Gilgamesh*", Khidr in "*Iskandarnama*", and the demons in "*Avesta*" possess eternal life. These beings symbolize humanity's desire for immortality, yet their immortality is not granted to humans. This serves as a confirmation of human mortality and submission to natural laws.
4. In literature, immortality is not only physical but also associated with spiritual values. For instance, in "*The Epic of Gilgamesh*", although the hero fails to obtain the elixir of immortality, he achieves spiritual immortality by rebuilding the city of Uruk. This symbolizes humanity's desire to live on through good deeds and legacies.
5. In ancient times, the theme of immortality was more closely tied to mythical and religious beliefs. In the modern era, however, it carries a more symbolic meaning. People have come to accept the



inevitability of death and now seek immortality through spiritual and scientific progress. This shift is also reflected in literature, where the theme remains relevant.

6. Literature itself is a form of immortality. Writers and poets achieve immortality through their works. Their creativity is passed down through generations, living on in the hearts of people. This demonstrates the profound impact literature has on human life.

LITERATURE

Nağıyev, Cəlil. *Qədim Şərq xalqları ədəbiyyatı tarixi*. Bakı: Asiya, 2009.

Cavid, Hüseyn. *Əsərləri*. Beş cildə. III cild. Bakı: Lider Nəşriyyat, 2005.

Kitabi-Dədə Qorqud. Əsil və sadələşdirilmiş mətnlər. Bakı: Öndər Nəşriyyat, 2004.

Həşimzadə, Nicat. *Ölümsüzlük axtarışı – Gilgameş və biz. Ustad Dərgisi*, səh. 3, Bakı, 2019.

Gəncəvi, Nizami. *İskəndərnamə. Şərəfnamə*. Bakı: Lider Nəşriyyat, 2004.

Xətayi, Şah İsmayıl. *Əsərləri*. Bakı: Şərq-Qərb, 2005.

Səfərov, Yusif. *Folklor örnəkləri*. Naxçıvan: Əcəmi, 2008.

Received: 03.04.2025

Revised: 03.12.2025

Accepted: 03.14.2025

Published: 03.16.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Studying the Effect of Job Satisfaction on Increasing Employee Productivity



¹ DİLEK DURSUN

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002115>

Keywords	Abstract
Job Satisfaction Productivity Employees	<p>Job satisfaction indicates the extent to which people are satisfied with their jobs. Some people enjoy their work and consider it the focus of their lives, while some do not feel good about their work and do it only because they have to. Studying the causes and important consequences of employees' attitudes towards job satisfaction is one of the main aspects of industrial-organizational psychology. Many studies have been conducted to identify the factors affecting job satisfaction and its effect on the main factor of productivity, namely employee productivity. The present article is descriptive-analytical, and its information has been collected in the form of libraries and documents.</p> <p>The purpose of this article is to identify the factors affecting job satisfaction and the effect of these factors on employee productivity with a review approach. Based on the results obtained, it can be said that people's satisfaction with their jobs is directly related to productivity. To better explain this relationship, it is worth mentioning the role of the huge and valuable capital of human resources in productivity. People are the center of productivity. Undoubtedly, paying attention to their needs and moving towards satisfying these needs is necessary and essential.</p>

Introduction

In today's advanced world, human resources are considered one of the most important and valuable resources for production and management of an organization. In fact, it is the human factor and labor that are effective in achieving organizational goals and, in comparison with other factors of production, the amount obtained from them is more than the amount that is put into the production flow.

Because employees who have high morale, creativity and initiative are ready to acquire as many skills as possible and can easily facilitate the process of improving and improving the system's productivity, job dissatisfaction itself is the basis for lower productivity and perhaps it can be said that job dissatisfaction

¹ DİLEK DURSUN, Doctoral Candidate (PHD), BUSINESS ADMINISTRATION, INSTITUTE OF GRADUATE STUDIES AND RESEARCH, CYPRUS INTERNATIONAL UNIVERSITY, Mail: 22120942@student.ciu.edu.tr, Orcid: <https://orcid.org/0009-0008-4523-2530>



also provides individual dissatisfaction with life, because someone who does not like their job and does not feel good about it does not value their job very much (Mahdavi and Roohi, 2000).

Importance and necessity of the problem

In every organization or government and private body, there are certain problems that lack of attention to them can be a factor in reducing the productivity of the system or paying attention to them can be a factor in achieving success in matters. However, if these factors are categorized and prioritized, the top of them can be seen as dissatisfaction or job satisfaction.

Giving importance to this issue, taking into account the writing of books and articles in this field and the lectures and conferences that have been held in recent years in this regard, is all It shows the attention and importance of the issue. Job satisfaction survey acts as a primary information gathering tool in organizations and enables managers to first compare departments or work groups with each other, secondly prioritize issues and problems, and thirdly identify employee perceptions and expectations so that they can improve the gap between the current situation and the desired situation.

Research Background

In a study, the relationship between job satisfaction and productivity of employees working in the medical unit of Tashkent city was investigated. In terms of division based on purpose, it was of an applied type and the descriptive-correlation research method was used to conduct it.

The results of the study show that the observed correlation coefficients indicate a positive and significant relationship between job satisfaction and human resource productivity. As a result, it can be said that with increasing job satisfaction of individuals, their productivity increases.

As a result, by applying appropriate strategy and planning, the level of job satisfaction and productivity of employees working in the medical unit, which is at a high level, can be maintained and more fundamental measures can be taken to increase it (Mousavi and Rezghi, 2011).

(Tougia et al. 2000) used the “Employee Satisfaction Checklist” which includes 6 aspects of job satisfaction (working conditions, salary, promotion, nature of work, supervision, and organization) to investigate the level of job satisfaction among university librarians in Greece. Their research findings showed that these librarians were most satisfied with the nature of work, supervision, and working conditions, and least satisfied with salary and promotion conditions.

(Kohn, 2009) evaluated the level of job satisfaction of librarians working in the technical services, public services, and research departments of the National Library of the Islamic Republic of Iran who had university education. The results of his research showed that the level of librarians’ satisfaction with existing human relations and management policies and guidelines was above average, while satisfaction with other parameters including welfare, educational, and promotion facilities, job security, and social status was below average.

(Mohammadzadeh, 1999) also in a study titled “Investigating the Level of Job Satisfaction of Human Resources Working in Libraries Affiliated to Tehran Universities of Medical Sciences” The study measured the job satisfaction of 112 librarians working in the libraries under study.

The results of the data analysis showed that various job factors, including interest in the field of librarianship and working in the library, intimate and friendly relationships with colleagues and officials, the way in



which benefits and rewards are paid, job security, and welfare facilities, had an impact on librarians' job satisfaction. The results also showed that with an increase in the amount of salary received, as well as people's hope and confidence in their future careers, their job satisfaction increases.

In the 1970s and 1960s, many studies were conducted on existing literature, and many studies attempted to determine the relationship between job satisfaction and individual productivity. These studies failed to show the existence of a stable relationship between the two.

(Hognut et al. 2007) stated in a study that; In the early 1990s, according to research conducted in this field, some results could be reached about the relationship between the two. The first view that exists about the relationship between job satisfaction and performance can be summarized in this sentence: "The productivity of a happy and cheerful worker or employee is high." Another point about job satisfaction and productivity is the cause-and-effect relationship.

Higher productivity leads to job satisfaction (Azadikgah, 2011). Many researchers have tried to identify different dimensions of job satisfaction, because measuring each dimension of job satisfaction and examining its impact on employee productivity is very important (Hognut et al. 2007). Tatsu and Sin in a study in 2013 examined "Facts on Job Satisfaction by Examining the Status of Job Satisfaction in the World".

The main purpose of this study was to determine to what extent aspects of job satisfaction contribute to global job satisfaction. The results of this study showed; including aspects of job satisfaction that The factors that contribute the most to global job satisfaction are: interests and skills involved in the job and how those abilities are utilized in the areas in which they are performed, colleagues, job outlook, physical conditions, and pay.

Research Basis

Job Satisfaction

A job satisfaction survey acts as a tool for collecting basic information in organizations and enables managers to firstly compare departments and work groups with each other, secondly prioritize issues and problems, and thirdly identify employee perceptions and expectations so that they can improve the gap between the current situation and the future. From a theoretical perspective, job dissatisfaction is considered one of the most important factors in job failure.

However, job satisfaction is a factor that increases efficiency and a sense of individual satisfaction. Every manager or employer seeks to increase job satisfaction in the employees of his organization or institution in some way, to increase the productivity of his production unit or organization by creating satisfaction. In this regard, scientists have expressed several opinions, two of which are mentioned.

Hapak: considers job satisfaction to be a multidimensional concept and considers factors such as work environment conditions, income, and social value of the job to be effective in job satisfaction. In his opinion, job satisfaction is related to psychological, physical, and social factors. Chester Barnard: believes that job satisfaction causes the individual to continue working in the organization. The special satisfactions that motivate a person to direct his efforts to help an organization and arise from the positive benefits that arise from this cooperation against the losses arising from this cooperation, whenever the burdens that a person places on the shoulders of another person are high and abundant, its positive benefits must also be abundant and strong, so in general, job satisfaction causes productivity to increase and the person to commit to the



organization. The physical and mental health of the person is guaranteed, the person's morale increases and he is satisfied with life and learns new job skills quickly. Excessive emphasis on psychological issues and a one-sided view of the problem leads to neglecting other angles, because the person may not find the job desirable psychologically but may not have the desire to change his job in terms of social and economic issues.

About job satisfaction, theorists have discussed and exchanged opinions, some of which are mentioned here, the most common classification of human needs belongs to Abraham Maslow. He established a hierarchy of needs and believed that needs appear in the same order of precedence and backwardness that he states. Maslow called the first and second level needs of the individual and the third, fourth and fifth needs as higher-order needs.

Hierarchy of Needs: Physiological needs, the most basic level of the hierarchy of needs, are generally related to the primary unattainable needs, the needs of hunger, thirst, sleep and basic needs are satisfied and will no longer be a motivating factor.

Security needs are the second level of needs. Maslow emphasized that for emotional and physical security, the entire organism may become a security-seeking organism, as is true for physical needs, satisfied security needs will no longer be a motivating factor.

The third level of social needs, or the middle level of needs, can be equated with the needs for love and belonging with a little consideration. The need for esteem (self-esteem) represents the highest human needs. The need for power, achievement, and social status can be considered part of this level.

The need for self-actualization (self-discovery) This level represents the peak of all lower, middle, and higher human needs. Those who reach the stage of self-discovery achieve self-research and realize all their potential. Self-discovery is closely related to the concept of self. In fact, self-discovery is the driving force behind human beings in transferring their perception to reality. (Amini, 2000)

The concept of job satisfaction

Numerous and sometimes contradictory views and conceptualizations have been formed and developed regarding the definition of "job satisfaction". Some experts, such as Herzberg, have considered it to have two dimensions. A group of factors and conditions whose absence causes dissatisfaction but whose provision does not create strong and powerful motivation, but only prevents the occurrence of dissatisfaction, which they call hygiene factors or factors effective in maintaining the status quo or survival factors.

Contrary to Herzberg, these factors include: the attitude and perception of employees, the way of managing affairs, the policies of the organization, the nature and extent of supervision, job security, working conditions, status and dignity, the level of salary and wages, the establishment of mutual relationships, supervisors and subordinates, and the personal lives of employees. The absence of these factors may make an employee so dissatisfied that he leaves the organization and jeopardizes its existence.

Therefore, Herzberg has considered these factors necessary to ensure and maintain the health and well-being of the organization. The second group of factors that are effective in creating motivation are those whose existence causes motivation and satisfaction of individuals, but their absence only produces weak dissatisfaction.



Internal Satisfaction and External Satisfaction

1- Internal satisfaction is obtained from two sources. First, the feeling of pleasure that a person gets simply from working and doing activities. Second, the pleasure that a person gets from observing progress or fulfilling some social responsibilities and revealing individual abilities and interests.

2- External satisfaction that is related to employment conditions and the work environment and is changing and evolving at every moment. External satisfaction factors can be mentioned, for example, the conditions of the work environment, the number of wages and rewards, the type of work, and the relationships between the worker and the employer.

Thus, it seems that internal factors that include individual characteristics and factors are more stable compared to external factors such as work environment conditions. Therefore, it can be said that internal satisfaction is more stable than external satisfaction. Job satisfaction is the result of the interaction between internal and external satisfaction. Creating job satisfaction in employees may not be fast, but it will definitely disappear at a very high speed.

All the conditions for maintaining employee satisfaction may be excellent, but with just one inappropriate approach from the manager, the possibility of the effect of these appropriate conditions can noticeably decrease to zero.

Factors affecting job satisfaction Creating "job satisfaction" in an individual depends on several factors that together lead to the desired result, and the absence of one factor may place an individual in the category of people dissatisfied with their job.

Factors such as: income level, the nature and essence of the work and its social status, organizational image and reputation, job promotion, job safety, lack of ambiguity in the role, physical working conditions, organizational structure and culture, and communication with colleagues, attention to the individual's personality traits, performance evaluation, suitability, flexibility, innovation, and approaches, and we will briefly mention and review a number of them in this section.(Soltani,2005)

Factors affecting job satisfaction

Creating "job satisfaction" in an individual depends on several factors that together lead to the desired result, and the absence of one factor may place the individual among those dissatisfied with their job. Factors such as: income level, the nature and essence of the job and its social status, organizational image and reputation, job promotion, job security, clarity of role, physical work conditions, organizational structure and culture, and relationships with colleagues, attention to the individual's personality traits, performance evaluation, suitability, flexibility, innovation, and approaches.

Income or salary:

This factor is considered one of the most important influencing factors for almost all job groups. Considering individual differences and consequently differences in views on money, various situations can be imagined. It seems that this factor is more important for those who cannot achieve satisfaction in their work in other ways. In some cases, it has been seen that many people change their jobs due to low salaries, even with jobs with lower status.

Job Safety:



In general terms, the concept of job safety is interpreted as being free from danger, and any factor that can eliminate or minimize workplace hazards (physical, mental, and psychological) increases job satisfaction. Therefore, things like order, fairness, and emotional security are considered to guarantee job safety, while things like discrimination and favoritism are considered to guarantee job safety. By undermining safe organizational conditions, it can create a feeling of insecurity and ultimately job dissatisfaction.

Participation:

Participation means the involvement and involvement of people in economic, political, social and cultural processes that affect their destiny. Participatory management is an operation in which employees of an organization are involved and participate in the decision-making process. This management style emphasizes the voluntary cooperation and participation of employees and wants to use their ideas, opinions and initiatives in solving the problems and issues of the organization.

Of course, the participatory system also improves employee motivation by increasing satisfaction. The greatest support for implementing participatory management is the commitment, faith and belief of the managers of organizations. If the management of the organization does not believe in employee participation, participatory management will not be realized.

There are different mechanisms for implementing participatory management, the main technique for employee participation is the establishment of a suggestion system in an organization.

A suggestion system is a technique that can use the thoughts and ideas of employees to identify problems, find solutions and solve organizational problems and issues. Based on the suggestion system, all employees from the highest organizational level to the lowest level can submit their suggestions, ideas, initiatives, and opinions to eliminate deficiencies in the work process, improve work methods, or increase production quality. Of course, the suggestion system is not just criticism but also provides solutions. (Soltani,2005)

Productivity

The word productivity was first used by François Quesne, a mathematician and economist who supported the school of physiocrats (the government of nature). By designing an economic table, he considered the authority of each government to be dependent on increasing productivity in the agricultural sector. In 1887, another Frenchman named Littre defined productivity as the science and art of production.

With the beginning of the scientific management movement in the early 1900s, Frederick Winslow, Taylor, and Frank and Lillian Gilbreth conducted studies on the division of labor, improving methods, and determining standard time to increase efficiency.

Efficiency was defined as the ratio of the actual time spent on work to the predetermined standard time. For example, if a person is expected to produce 100 units of product in 8 hours of work, but in practice he produces 96 units, his efficiency is said to be 96%.

In 1950, the Organization for European Economic Cooperation officially defined productivity as: Productivity is the fraction obtained by dividing the amount of work done by the amount of work done. Or the value of the product is obtained by the amount or value of one of the factors of production. In this regard, we can talk about the productivity of capital, raw materials and labor. The International Labor Organization has defined productivity as follows: Productivity is the ratio of one of the factors of production, namely capital, labor and management.



The concept of productivity

The term productivity has various meanings in economic literature. Despite its widespread use, many of those who play a fundamental role in the productivity movement may still not have a clear understanding of it. The word productivity literally means "the power of production, fertility, and productivity."

The simplest definition of productivity is "the ratio of a certain amount of product to a certain amount of one or more factors of production." This criterion reflects the way in which resources and factors of production are used at a given point in time and includes the three effects of technological change, scale change, and change in the efficiency of using inputs (Amir Teymouri, 2016).

Productivity is the optimal, effective, and optimal use of a set of facilities, capacities, capital, resources, and opportunities. In other words, productivity is the effective and optimal use of time and the value derived from capital, life, thought, ideas, and abilities and talents in a unit of time and the optimal use of all moments. (Dari, 1995).

In this sense, productivity is an indicator of the useful and efficient use of various production resources (Taheri, 2009). Higher productivity means producing more goods with the same amount of resources or achieving a higher product in terms of volume and quality with the same amount of input (Propenko, 1993).

In general, productivity is not just a simple relationship; it is a set of methods To achieve a high standard of living. The concept of productivity does not differ in different economic or political systems, and according to Jean Forestier, the concept of productivity has no political or national color, and nations that are completely opposite to each other in terms of social ideology have accepted it equally.

Productivity from different perspectives

Productivity is actually the most effective use of resources, including (labor, capital, land, materials, energy, machinery and tools, equipment and information in the production process of goods and services).

In other words, all systematic and structured efforts to eliminate or reduce losses caused by materials, machines, humans or improper interaction between them are called productivity improvement systems.

- From a system perspective: Productivity from a system perspective determines the relationship between data (inputs) and outputs (outputs). On this basis, productivity indicates the efficiency of the combination of factors in the production process. That is, if good facilities are used, productivity also increases.
- From the perspective of industrial engineering: Productivity from the perspective of industrial engineering is the relationship between the output values of the system and the input values to the same system, and from this perspective, productivity is a control criterion and determines the efficiency of the system.
- From the perspective of the International Labor Organization: Different products are produced by combining four main factors, which are land; capital; labor and organization (Management and Technology) The ratio of product (production or value added) to these factors is a measure of productivity.
- From the perspective of the United Nations Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development: Productivity is equal to the ratio of output (output) to one of the factors of production.
- From the perspective of the European Productivity Agency (EPA): Productivity is the degree to which each of the factors of production is used effectively. Productivity is primarily a perspective that always tries



to improve what currently exists. Productivity is based on the belief that man can do his work better than yesterday. In addition, productivity requires that continuous efforts be made to adapt economic activities to constantly changing conditions and to apply new theories and methods.

- From the perspective of the Japan Productivity Center: Productivity means maximizing the use of resources; manpower; facilities, etc. in a scientific way; reducing production costs; expanding markets; increasing employment and striving to increase real wages and improve living standards as is beneficial to workers, management and society. (Shahsavari,2012)

Job satisfaction and productivity:

Based on what has been said, it is obvious that people's satisfaction with their jobs is directly related to productivity. To better explain this relationship, it is appropriate to refer to the role of the huge and valuable capital of human resources in productivity.

Human-centered productivity.

All organizations, regardless of their mission, must allocate the most resources to the education and training of people from different dimensions, such as behavioral, occupational and specialized training, laws and regulations, and job description training, thinking training, self-education and other education, family education, in order to strengthen teamwork, mastery of the job, recognition inside and outside the organization, recognition of the limits and depth of tasks, innovation, the emergence and development of the principle of the individual and the learning organization, will lead to a mutual understanding between the families of employees and the organization, which will ultimately lead to the establishment, development, expansion, application and continuity of productivity and, in general, its promotion in the organization.

Therefore, a systematic and continuous approach of matching the right person with the right job at the right time, which includes both the concepts of job satisfaction and productivity, is considered the best option and solution.

By reflecting on the above-mentioned matters and considering the issue of coherent leadership and guidance of the organization towards goals, which is a reminder of the undeniable and important role of managers, and this is certainly highly effective in the success or failure of programs. (Hooman,2002)

The Importance of Productivity

In the present era, productivity is called a method, a concept, and an attitude about work and life, and in fact, it is viewed as a culture and a worldview; productivity can be involved in all aspects of work and individual and social life and is a determining indicator of the per capita income of each country, and to increase the national productivity of each country, the per capita income of that country must increase.

5. Major Barriers to Workplace Productivity

1. Process, System, and Policy Confusion

No matter the size of your organization, we know that consistent, quality service is achieved when you have sound processes or systems that are well-implemented. Ideally, these systems should be based on sound policies and clear, actionable procedures that people can easily follow. Unfortunately, if these processes are not well-designed and documented, the policies and work methods that underpin these processes will not



be easily implemented, and chaos will quickly ensue. In these situations, individuals and teams will each be pulled in different directions, and team productivity will suffer greatly.

2. Unnecessary Communication (Emails, Meetings, etc.)

While clear and consistent communication is very beneficial for productivity, too much communication is counterproductive and harmful. We mean all types of communication, but studies show that the greatest decrease in productivity comes from email communication and meetings. Email is very convenient and fast to send and can be easily copied to many people, many of whom do not even need to receive it. Also, most emails are too long or poorly written, requiring additional explanation. Business meetings can also be easily held over the phone (whether in person or virtually). But often people are invited to meetings who do not need to be there. Even if the right people attend the meeting, their time is still wasted due to the large number of participants, poor organization, and poor execution of the meeting.

3. Distractions, interruptions, unnecessary multitasking

Many people think they can do several things at once. But research shows that most Productivity is achieved by single-tasking (doing only one thing at a time) and by focusing completely on it. Therefore, we should avoid distractions as much as possible and manage interruptions so that we can fully focus on the task at hand and prevent multitasking. Therefore, the more we plan our work and do things in a quiet and focused place, the more benefit we will get from our work.

4. Manually doing things that can be done automatically or by machine The repetition of an action is an integral part of a work process; a problem that has existed since the beginning of the industrial revolution. Although automation and the use of technology can reduce this repetitive work. Of course, provided that managers and team leaders know how to use it (whether in their industry or in other fields) and, in the next step, introduce it to their people with sufficient care and support and help them get rid of repetitive tasks and use their talents in other areas. In this way, managers kill two birds with one stone and increase team productivity in two ways.

5. Dealing with poor and toxic employees or office policies

Although not all workplaces have bad or toxic employees, where these conditions exist, productivity suffers greatly. Some employees are far less productive than they should be, and one or two other team members always have to pick up the slack to compensate for these shortcomings. Even worse, some employees may distract the rest of their colleagues or annoy them to some extent. Which will also reduce their profits. (Hooman,2002)

Improving productivity through people

Organizations are a set of humans, technological, technical, structural, cultural and other environmental factors that interact to achieve predetermined and common goals. Undoubtedly, given that these goals and resources of individuals do not necessarily coincide, the way managers deal with them is important in creating balance, reducing conflict and optimally using the potential abilities of individuals and elements.

In this regard, the employees of any organization are considered the most important part of the organization, and paying attention to their needs and requirements is inevitable. To increase productivity in the organization, we need to provide several conditions, the most important of which is the human factor. Human resources motivated to perform their duties are the most important factor in productivity.



Human resources, which are considered one of the most valuable resources of any organization and have long been the main factor in the progress of various countries. A capable and efficient human resource is one that can make the organization efficient, profitable, and beneficial to society, and in general, the country prospers and frees it from dependence.

Low individual productivity in manufacturing companies causes more attention to be paid to the factor of human resource improvement, and one of the factors that has a significant impact on human resource improvement is employee performance evaluation. The first step in improving productivity is improving productivity at the individual level, and improvement is a path that leads to productivity. (Giri et al.2013)

What is job satisfaction and what factors affect it?

Sociologists have provided numerous definitions for the concept of job satisfaction; based on these definitions, job satisfaction is a complex and multidimensional concept that is closely related to social, physical, and psychological factors, but to better understand this concept, it is enough to refer to ourselves and see how much positive feeling and dependence we have towards the work we are doing?! This report takes a look at what and why of the concept of job satisfaction and the factors that influence it, based on unofficial statistics that report high levels of job dissatisfaction in Iranian societies.

Factors affecting the increase in human resource productivity

There are different opinions in determining the factors affecting productivity, and each of the scientists and experts has identified factors as effective factors, and in brief, factors such as continuous job training of managers and employees, promoting motivation among employees to work better and more, creating suitable grounds for the initiative and creativity of managers and employees, establishing an appropriate performance-based payment system and establishing a system of punishment and encouragement, conscientiousness and social discipline, changes in the system and methods that play a sensitive and key role, strengthening the governance and dominance of organizational policies over affairs, and thrift as a national duty are effective in productivity.

However, all authors in this field almost agree on this subject that only one specific cause cannot be presented to increase the level of productivity, but rather they state that improving productivity should be considered the result of a combination of various factors.

Desirable behavior and correct conduct of leaders and managers

The serious responsibility of management and leadership should be entrusted to people who, while possessing specific personality traits, apply appropriate leadership and management methods and are also role models in terms of ethics. Providing the necessary conditions for career advancement for all individuals.

In-service training courses and employee training: In-service training courses and employee training should be considered a vital, continuous and ongoing matter, because only through training can the efforts of employees be coordinated with existing facilities and new scientific advances.

All tasks, instructions, regulations and laws should be clear and unambiguous for employees and there should be no room for ambiguity for them. Giving sufficient authority to employees so that they feel more responsible in carrying out their work. At the time of recruitment, efforts should be made to attract efficient



and specialized people. It is necessary to conduct oral and written tests to select them. Efforts should be made to involve employees in decision-making and the formulation of goals and programs.

The result of this action will make employees feel responsible in carrying out activities and show more effort in achieving organizational goals. High quality of work life: The concept of quality of work life expresses the importance of respecting people in their work environments. In short, it can be said that the things that should be effective in increasing the quality of work life are as follows:

1. Appropriate and fair payment for doing a job well.
2. Healthy and safe working conditions.
3. Possibility of learning and using new skills.
4. Creating social cohesion in the organization.
5. Preparing opportunities for growth, progress and advancement for employees.
6. Protecting individual rights.
7. Balance in dividing working time and permitted idle time.
8. Creating work and organizational pride.
9. Job rotation, job enrichment and career development programs should be used to increase the ability and skills of employees and to increase employee self-confidence.
10. Establishing an appropriate performance-based payment system and establishing a punishment and incentive system.
11. Transformation in systems and methods that play a critical and key role.
12. Work conscience and social discipline are the factors of self-control.

Improving and promoting productivity requires comprehensive planned efforts and efforts from relevant individuals and officials, which in turn requires improving working conditions and changing the incentives and motivation methods of employees, improving systems, laws, directives, instructions, methods, technology, etc.(Tatsuse and Sekine,2013)

The most important factors affecting productivity reduction

The most important and major factor affecting the productivity of human resources is the imbalance of income and expenses, which is the most important factor in motivating human resources. After that, the most important factors affecting productivity reduction within an organization are as follows:

- 1 - The existence of discrimination between employees due to poor management.
- 2 - Job insecurity.
- 3 - Failure and reluctance to plan medium or long term (weak management).
- 4 - Unfavorable work environment.
- 5 - Lack of attention to the essential needs of employees.



- 6 - Lack of control (instability in control plans).
- 7 - Inconsistency between academic field and job.
- 8 - Failure to use expertise in relevant jobs (weak management).
- 9 - Lack of management planning.
- 10 - Lack of internship (weak management).
- 11 - Inconsistency between individual and job talents (weak management).
- 12 - Incompetence of supervisor.
- 13 - Disinterest in current work and continuous transfer of human resources.
- 14 - Human resource inflation.

Almost all factors that reduce human resource productivity are related to weak management. In the meantime, the relationship between the individual and the organization should be a mutual and two-way communication. (Zaki,2008)

A successful manager is someone who deeply understands and understands the cultural environment of his organization, which is a very effective factor in the behavior of employees and uses it to implement the organization's plans. Apply. The salaries and benefits of individuals should be determined based on the nature of the job, expertise, experiences, and performance of individuals in response to changes and programs.

If the performance of individuals is not carefully evaluated and they are not given points according to their merits, or in other words, competent individuals do not enjoy more privileges in the organization, a culture of underemployment will gradually emerge in that organization.

The low salaries and wages in developing and poor countries compared to the cost of living index in recent years have led to underemployment and finding second and third jobs, which ultimately has led to the workforce becoming more tired, reducing productivity, and causing mental and psychological problems for the workforce in their families, and consequently has had a negative impact on the productivity of the workforce.

If we cannot implement the welfare and livelihood needs of the workforce, the meritocracy system of justice and fairness based on a comprehensive performance evaluation system in organizations, there is no hope of increasing productivity. (Tats use and Sekine,2013)

Conclusion

By reflecting on the above-mentioned material and considering the issue of coherent leadership and guidance of the organization towards goals, which is a reminder of the undeniable and important role of managers, and this is certainly highly effective in the success or failure of programs, from the author's perspective, the best option for managers to climb to the peak of success is to move based on a management style based on human dignity and productivity.



This type of management is based on principles such as: respecting people, having a positive view of people, establishing strong human relationships, practical participation of employees in decision-making, and the principle of comprehensive education and raising the awareness of all employees of the organization.

The results obtained from management based on human dignity can be summarized as follows:

1. Strengthening and improving attachment to work and the organization.
2. Strengthening and improving work ethics.
3. Strengthening multitasking (work culture).
4. The dominance of the continuous improvement strategy in the organization.
5. Strengthening spontaneous teamwork through a motivational system, establishing a suggestion system.
6. Reducing rumors and psychological tension in the organization through a mechanism for informing different levels regardless of their position and position.
7. Eliminating anxiety from the workplace through behavioral training and paying attention to employee job security and providing the opportunity to express opinions and integrate the organization formally and informally.
8. Reducing violations and accidents caused by work.
9. Replacing quality control with quality production.
10. Reducing the consumption of materials and energy (material and spiritual), all of which will lead to the creation and establishment, cultivation and expansion, application and continuity of productivity and, in general, improvement in the organization.

Suggestions

A person's work environment is like their second home, and many people spend most of their time in their workplace. Therefore, it is obvious that the workplace should also be like a home that meets the minimum spiritual and psychological needs of individuals so that they can earn income and improve their level of knowledge and professional skills and provide honest and effective service.

This study has attempted to review the definitions of concepts such as job satisfaction and productivity and address the influential factors, as well as examine the relationship and proportion between the two and the extent of their role in achieving goals and programs and achieving organizational victory and success.

- 1 - Creating a sense of competence by accurately describing the duties of individuals within the framework of assigned activities and supporting and appreciating them.
- 2 - Conducting in-service training courses and paying special attention to the competencies of employees
- 3 - The value of believing in the theories proposed by colleagues and trying to actualize their talents by forming a committee for this purpose.
- 4- Providing the opportunity for employees to express their opinions and suggestions even in the event of their rejection.



- 5- Creating relationships based on trust between individuals and various departments of the organization and establishing a culture full of trust, with attention to sensitivity and sovereignty, especially in staff jobs.
- 6- Sharing organizational information with employees and paying attention to their success and prosperity.
- 7 - Efforts to create a culture of support through incentive and motivational systems (material and spiritual).
- 8 - Delegation of authority to the organization's deputies, general managers, heads of departments and groups, taking into account the wide range of activities and the breadth of academic activities, and assigning important responsibilities and duties to employees and instilling a spirit of usefulness and importance in employees.
- 9 - Creating a culture to promote activities and teamwork at various levels and forming self-managed teams.

References

- Amini, Amrollah. (2000). Estimation and analysis of technical developments, efficiency and productivity in the Iranian automotive industry. PhD thesis in economics, Tarbiat Modares University. For access: <https://aris.atu.ac.ir/a.aminij>
- Propenko, Joseph, (1993). Book, Productivity and Quality Management: Modular Program. Translated by Mohammad Reza Ebrahimi Mehr, Publisher. Tehran Masters of Pen Publishing Company. For access: <https://tinyurl.com/2sf36w2b>
- Soltani-Iraj (2005), Human Resource Productivity Book, Isfahan Publisher, Arkan Publications, . For access: <https://tinyurl.com/mvjwyvb8>
- Shahsavari, Amir Ali, (2012), Studying the relationship between management style and human resource productivity in government offices in Mahabad city, Islamic Azad University, Master's thesis in public administration. For access: <https://tinyurl.com/2nyvy98j>
- Taheri, Shahnam. (2009). Book, Productivity and its Analysis in Organizations (Comprehensive Productivity Management). Tehran: Publisher: Hastan. For access: <https://tinyurl.com/mr34trv5>
- Kohn, (2009), Job satisfaction of librarians working in the technical services, public services, National Library of the Islamic Republic of Iran research in university education. For access: https://lis.aqr-libjournal.ir/article_43631.html
- Mohammadzadeh, (1999), Studying the level of job satisfaction of human resources working in libraries affiliated with universities of medical sciences, Publisher. Tehran, Shahid Beheshti, Iran. For access: <https://www.virascience.com/thesis/14366/>
- Mousavi, Mir Mohammad, Rezghi Shirsavar, Hadi, (2011), The relationship between job satisfaction and productivity of employees working in the Medical Unit of Islamic Azad University, Tehran, Publisher. Health and Treatment Management Winter 2011, Volume 3 - Issue 3,4, Scientific-Research (Ministry of Science/ISC (10 pages - from 19 to 28). To access: <https://tinyurl.com/56s28x9t>
- Mahdavi, Mojgan, Roohi Azizi, Maryam (2000), Investigating the Effect of Job Satisfaction on Increasing the Productivity of Employees of the Central Office of the Imam Khomeini Relief Committee,



- Publisher, Tawon Magazine, No. 997, pages 99 and 96. For access:
<https://tinyurl.com/6wxm33um>
- Hooman, Heydar Ali, (2002), Book on Preparing and Standardizing a Job Satisfaction Measurement Scale, Tehran, Publisher. Public Administration Training Center,. For access:
<https://tinyurl.com/msd7nz8t>
- Azadikgah Salimi M.(2011) Job satisfaction and affective factors, Age management, Fifth year.2011: Number 18 and 19. pp. 115-120
- Hognut, Alison E, While & Barribal, Louise K(2007) Job satisfaction and its related factors: a questionnaire survey of hospital nurses in mainland china, International journal of Nursing Studies.2007: vol. 44. No. 6, p. 574 – 588. Available at
http://www.sciencedirect.com/science?_ob=MImg&_imagekey
- Giri, Vijai N, Kumar B, Pavan.(2013) Assessing the Impact of Organizational Communication on Job Satisfaction and Job Performance, Psychological Studies (June) 2013:55(2):137–143
- Tatsuse Takashi and Sekine Michikazu(2013) Explaining global job satisfaction by facets of job satisfaction: the Japanese civil servants study, Environ Health Prev Med, 2013: 16:133–137.
- Tougia and others, (2000).Strategic Human Resource Management, LONDON INTERNATIONAL THOMSON BUSINESS PRESS.
- Zaki MA. Job Satisfaction Survey Research at the University of Imam Hussein University of Imam Hussein (AS) in Tehran, 2008
- Amir Teymouri, Somayeh,(2016) The role of educated labor force and total factor productivity growth in the agricultural sector, Iran, Publisher: Agricultural Educational Management Research. For access: https://itvhe.areeo.ac.ir/article_106620.html
- Dari Najaf Abadi (1995), The Necessity of Export Development, Publisher: Journal: Strategy »Fall 1995 - Issue 8 ISC (12 pages - from 1 to 12) For access: <https://tinyurl.com/3a5kjuym>

Received: 03.06.2025

Revised: 03.12.2025

Accepted: 03.14.2025

Published: 03.18.2025



This is an open access article under the
 Creative Commons Attribution-
 NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
 ISSN 3030-1718

Study and Role of The Impact of Information Technology Tools on Knowledge Management Performance in Commercial Banks

 ¹ Sameulhaq Amany
<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002116>

Keywords	Abstract
Information Technology Tools Tejarat Bank Information Technology Knowledge Management	<p>Objective: The purpose of the study is to evaluate the impact of information technology tools on the implementation of knowledge management in Tejarat Bank.</p> <p>Method: The research method was a correlational survey and applied in terms of purpose, which was conducted based on the opinions of 75 experts from Tejarat Bank.</p> <p>The data collection tool was a 34-question questionnaire that was analyzed with SPSS20 statistical software. For data analysis, descriptive-inferential statistics with one-sample T-test were used.</p> <p>Findings: There is a significant relationship between information technology tools in knowledge production and acquisition, storage and processing, sharing and application of knowledge. Conclusion: The use of information technology tools such as office automation, the Internet, suggestion systems, e-mail and video conferencing, and others, is effective in better implementation of the knowledge management process.</p>

Introduction

Knowledge management is a set of activities related to production, compilation, and transfer of knowledge. The purpose of knowledge management tools is to assist in the process of gathering and forming group knowledge in order to make it available in a shared manner in the organization.

These tools can influence the flow of knowledge through network communications, technological transfer to a path, and the transformation of knowledge into cognition. The impact of information technology on knowledge management is an important issue for organizations that intend to utilize technologies to manage their intellectual capital.

Many organizations use information technology in a specific or different form for knowledge management. Knowledge management can achieve very positive and important results with the appropriate use of information technology. (Azadi and Azadi, 2009: 56)

¹ Sameulhaq Amany Master's student in Administration and Economics, Sabahattin Zaim University, Türkiye, sameulhaq.amany01@gmail.com, <https://orcid.org/0009-0009-4681-2761>



What seems necessary first is to explain the difference between information and knowledge. Information is processed data available in computers, which is increasingly accessible to everyone due to the widespread impact of information technology; however, there are many interpretations of the concept of information, and experts have used this term as a process, a commodity, an attribute, and so on.

Blacker (1995) defines information as: “something with which we can make a choice among the set of possibilities about which we know nothing”; but knowledge is an understanding, awareness, or cognition that is obtained during study, research, observation, or experience and over time and is one step after information, that is, data (raw information) is converted into information by processing in a computer.

This information or output is the same for everyone, and in the next step, by understanding and using it, knowledge is produced; knowledge that relies on information and today If more attention is paid to knowledge, it is due to the extensive production of information. So knowledge can be defined as: "Knowledge is the understanding, awareness or cognition that is created in an individual through study, research, observation or experience regarding the external world." In Figure 1, to understand the difference between data, information and knowledge and to recognize their place in the thinking process, the model of the knowledge production process is presented:



Figure 1. Knowledge production process model (Fattahi, 2002)

According to McDermott (1999), the six characteristics of knowledge are:

- (1) Knowledge is the result of human activity;
- (2) Knowledge is the result of thinking;
- (3) Knowledge is created spontaneously;
- (4) Knowledge is the result of collective wisdom;



(5) Knowledge is disseminated among individuals in society in various ways.

(6) New knowledge is created based on old knowledge.

In an organization, knowledge is defined as what individuals know about their customers, products, processes, errors, and organizational successes (Brown, 1998).

Knowledge can exist in databases, administrative departments, or other internal and external sources of the organization. Organizational knowledge is acquired over time and causes the organization to achieve a deeper understanding and lead its organizational structure with the intelligence and intelligence that are characteristics of wisdom.

Wisdom is achieved when new knowledge is applied along with developments, experiences, and group expertise and the knowledge created is used to apply the necessary technology in the organization. And to achieve the planned goals with the joint efforts of all sectors. (Mokhtari, 2004:92) Experts believe in two types of knowledge: objective and tacit. Objective knowledge is clearly formulated and defined, expressed simply and unambiguously, and coded and stored in a database. Tacit knowledge is not obvious, exists within the person, and in most cases is difficult to describe and transfer. Tacit knowledge includes course learning, awareness, judgment, general rules, and inspiration. (Brown, 1998)

It can be said that tacit knowledge is the specific or unique information that is embedded in the knowledge process model after information. Knowledge is intangible and difficult to measure, and often has a long life, and it is commonly present in organizations and has a significant impact on the organization.

Knowledge is an asset that must be managed, and the basis of knowledge management is finding strategies that make the right knowledge available to the right people in the right way and at the right time. (Milton, 1999)

Knowledge management, like communication, is best viewed as a method or organizational practice; it is a way of identifying, acquiring, organizing, and processing information to create knowledge; after the information is distributed, in other words, it is made available to others to be used to create more knowledge. (Rading, 2017)

Knowledge management is a new initiative to transform information system models from a data processing and information presentation approach to an approach to collecting and using knowledge in organizations, which involves using the expertise and skills accumulated in the mind and angles of It includes the transformation of individuals' hidden knowledge into written and codified resources (Mokhtari and Yaminifar, 2004). In fact, knowledge management is related to the exploitation and development of knowledge belonging to organizations in line with their goals. (Davenport et al. 1998). Among the objectives of knowledge management in organizations are:

- (1) Using explicit and implicit knowledge to achieve organizational goals.
- (2) Providing the means to transform information into knowledge and produce new knowledge.
- (3) Connecting people to each other.
- (4) Connecting people to information.
- (5) Optimizing and using available resources economically.



Several benefits can be anticipated for knowledge management. Employees will spend less time searching for information and acquiring skills. Experts will focus on their favorite subject areas. The knowledge management process will help employees improve their job skills and performance, and the available resources will help them make smart decisions.

The knowledge management process will also reduce the anxiety of employees who are trying to do more with fewer resources and facilities. Knowledge management helps organizations to become more competitive by using new knowledge to reduce costs, increase speed, and meet customer needs. Miles (1998) stated two advantages for knowledge management:

- (1) It enables organizations to act intelligently, so that their efficiency and success are certain;
- (2) It enables the organization to realize the value of advancing the organization's goals and continuing to compete in the new global market.

According to Carvalho and Ferreira (2001), knowledge management tools are divided into 8 groups:

1. Network-based tools: The Internet is a suitable environment for sharing dynamic and relevant information and the hypertext structure of the internal network facilitates information browsing. The philosophy of the Internet is to create a virtual space in which information is classified and accessible. The low cost of web technologies is also a factor of attraction for many organizations.

2. Electronic document management: Electronic document management systems or content management tools are important treasures of shared documents.

These systems seek to manage content regardless of information carriers such as: fax, e-mail, HTML formats, computer reports, paper, video or spreadsheets.

3. Groupware: Groupware is a type of software to help people communicate remotely (Bock & Marca, 1995:75). Since the hierarchical structure of an organization often "prevents rapid decision-making in a competitive market, people are free to exchange ideas and collaborate with each other through this groupware, regardless of this structure.

4. Workflow: A workflow is a system that supports standard business processes and regulates the flow of information from person to person, from place to place, and from task to task. The purpose of this system is to track the steps of the work and each activity combined with this process and to reveal the knowledge contained in it.

5. Knowledge-based systems: Intelligent systems and neural networks use artificial intelligence. An expert system includes a knowledge base in a limited domain, an inference mechanism for changing this base, and an interface for allowing new data to be entered and for user interaction.

6. Business intelligence: A set of tools used to manipulate large volumes of application data and find business information is the basis. Database management systems are the building blocks of a business intelligence solution.

7. Knowledge mapping systems: This group includes software specifically designed for knowledge management. Knowledge mapping provides an intelligent search engine that helps users find experts who can solve problems.



8. Innovation support tools: Innovation support tools are defined as the application of new ideas for products or services. These tools are software that collaborate with the product design process to generate knowledge and simulate insights by creating a virtual environment. (Carvalho and Ferreira, 2001)

Table 1: Summary of Ranking of Knowledge Management Software.

Group	Knowledge Tepe	Scope of Influence
Intranet-based tools	Implicit	Computer Networks
Electronic Document Management	Explicit	Information Science
Groupware	Implicit & Explicit	Computer-Supported Collaborative Work
Workflow	Implicit & Explicit	Organization and Methods
Knowledge Base Systems	Implicit & Explicit	Artificial Intelligence
Commecial Intilligence	Explicit	Database
Knowledge Map	Implicit & Explicit	Information Science and Knowledge Management
Tools for Innovation Support	Implicit & Explicit	Product Engineering

In knowledge management, the acquisition, creation, organization, storage, transfer, and dissemination of knowledge are all highly dependent on the use of information technology, and its growth is greatly influenced by technology and business development, information and communication needs. Another aspect is the cooperation and participation of the IT department in the organization, in which it is essential to determine the role of IT in the development of the knowledge management group.

Duffy (2000) showed that IT is responsible for the administration and management of storage and access to documents. Information technology can provide effective and efficient tools for all aspects of knowledge management, including the capture, sharing, storage, and application of knowledge. The ability of IT to explore; index; and integrate, archive, and transfer information can create a revolution in the collection, organization, classification, and dissemination of information.

Technologies such as relational database management systems, document management systems, the Internet, intranets, search engines, workflow tools, executive support systems, decision support systems, data mining, data warehousing, e-mail, video conferencing, bulletin boards, newsgroups, and discussion boards can play a key role in facilitating knowledge management. The greatest value of information



technology in knowledge management is its ability to expand the scope of an organization's knowledge and to increase the speed of knowledge transfer.

In addition, information technology plays an important role in the process of integrating existing knowledge and creating new knowledge. (Akiyoshi, 2008). Few studies have been conducted on the use of modern technology tools to provide appropriate services to customers without considering time and space dimensions.

For example, in Iran, Rezaian (2007) showed that, because of the use of information technology in the organization of libraries, museums and the Astan Quds Razavi Document Center, the speed of providing services to users has increased and the time for accessing and retrieving information has decreased, which indicates an increase in the effectiveness of the organization.

Tarakh et al. (2011), in "Investigating the role of information technology tools in the effective implementation of knowledge management systems using the gap analysis technique (Case study: Iran Khodro Company)", showed that Iran Khodro Company uses information technology well and there is an opportunity to benefit from its maximum available capacity with proper planning and proper implementation of the knowledge management system in the company.

Sobhani et al. (2013) showed that the sports federations of the Islamic Republic of Iran, In the field of using information technology, they are far from being at a very good level. In their opinion, today information technology is beyond creating direct communication between people through applications such as e-mail, chat rooms, video conferences, etc. and can be a database by storing and sharing knowledge, the best way to maintain intellectual capital in the organization.

Tseng (2008) confirmed the existence of a positive and significant relationship between information technology and management by examining the relationship between information technology and knowledge management in companies in Taiwan & Johnson, (2010) concluded in examining the status of knowledge management in the South African industrial sector that information technology is effective in strengthening and promoting the position of knowledge management.

A review of the literature shows that no research has been conducted on the use of information technology tools in implementing knowledge management in banks, and since banks, as organizations involved with new information technologies, need to implement knowledge management to improve customer service. The results of this study can be made available to bank managers and planners for the exploitation of information technology in the implementation of knowledge management. In this study, to assess the impact of information technology tools in the implementation of knowledge management in Tejarat Bank, the following four hypotheses were tested and analyzed:

1. There is a significant relationship between information technology and the production and acquisition of knowledge in Tejarat Bank.
2. There is a significant relationship between information technology and the storage and processing of knowledge in Tejarat Bank.
3. There is a significant relationship between information technology and knowledge sharing in Tejarat Bank.



4. There is a significant relationship between information technology and the application of knowledge in Tejarat Bank.

The method of the present study is a correlational survey and is applied in terms of purpose, based on which 75 experts of Tejarat Bank were surveyed. The research tool was a researcher-made questionnaire with 34 questions that were scored based on a 5-point Likert scale and the maximum score obtained was 5.

Also, in order to ensure the feasibility of the questionnaires and in fact determine their validity, 3 management professors were consulted, and their opinions were applied in preparing and modifying the aforementioned questionnaire. After resolving the ambiguous points, the final questionnaire was provided to the statistical sample. To measure the reliability of the questionnaires, a preliminary questionnaire was administered to 20 people in the statistical population.

According to the results, Cronbach's alpha value in this study for the questionnaire in question was 0.82, and thus its reliability was also confirmed. To determine the research population, 110 people were selected as a sample through random sampling. After sending the questionnaires to them, 80 questionnaires were returned, of which 75 questionnaires (40 men and 35 women) were used for statistical analysis.

Findings

Tables 2 and 3 are drawn to determine the significance of the relationship between information technology and knowledge production and acquisition in Tejarat Bank.

Table 2: Mean and Standard Deviation between Information Technology and Knowledge Production and Acquisition.

No	Median	Standard Deviation
75	4/1s7s	0/24108

Table 3: Results of the T-test for the Relationship Between Information Technology and Knowledge Production and Acquisition.

Test T	Freedom Degree	Mediam Deviation	Sig
41/944	74	1/1s7s2	0/05

Based on the data in Table 2, the average utilization of technological tools in the process of knowledge production and acquisition was 1.4, which indicates a high level. In Table 3, the relationship between information technology and knowledge production and acquisition was tested, as a result of which the test statistic value was calculated as 9.41, for which $\text{sig} < 0.05$ was obtained, and therefore it can be said that there is a significant and positive relationship between the use of tools such as the Internet, communication networks, office automation, e-mail, suggestion system, think tank, advisory council and information systems; with knowledge production and acquisition. In fact, in the bank introduced above, knowledge production and acquisition, a lot of tools are used in the field of business. Tables 4 and 5 are related to



examining the relationship between information technology and knowledge storage and processing in Tejarat Bank.

Table 4: Mean and Standard Deviation of the Relationship Between Information Technology and Knowledge Production and Processing.

No	Median	Standart Deviation
75	3/3289	0/23s85

Table 5: Results of the T-test for the Relationship Between Information Technology and Knowledge Production and Processing.

Test T	Freedom Degree	Median Deviation	Sig
12/02s	74	0/32889	0/05

Based on the data in Table 4, the average level of utilization of technological tools in the process of knowledge production and processing is 3.3, which indicates a relatively high level. Based on the calculations, the value of the test statistic (presented in Table 5) was 12.02, which, based on $\text{sig} < 0.05$, there is no reason to reject the hypothesis of a relationship between these two variables. It can be said that there is a significant and positive relationship between the possibility of searching for information, the process of entering knowledge into information repositories, collecting and organizing knowledge in databases, systematically recording and maintaining knowledge and experience of employees, updating documents and evidence, documenting with electronic knowledge archive software, storing knowledge in application software, and the existence of a structured information storage system in different areas of knowledge storage and processing. Tables s and 7 are drawn to determine the relationship between information technology and knowledge sharing in Tejarat Bank.

Table 6: Mean and Standard Deviation between Information Technology and Knowledge Sharing.

No	Median	Standard Deviation
3 rd Hypothesis	75	2/9733



Table 7: Results of the T-test for the Relationship Between Information Technology and Knowledge Sharing

Test T	Freedom Degree	Two-Tailed Significance	Median Deviation	Sig
-0/733	74	0/4ss	-0/02ss7	0/4

Based on the data in Table 6, the average of this component is 2.9, which indicates the average level for this relationship above. Considering that the value of the test statistic presented in Table 7 is negative and according to $\text{sig} < 0.05$, it can be said that there is a significant and positive relationship between informing about successful experiences, automatic awareness of the individual about the topics of interest, use of tools such as video conferencing, organization communication networks (groupware), email, organizational portal, idea management systems and web-based software, and knowledge sharing.

It is important to note that the intensity of this relationship is not as strong as the previous two variables, but in any case, it is clear that technological tools exist in this way and have been proven to be effective in the relationship between information in the field of "knowledge sharing" of the knowledge management process in Tejarat Bank. Tables 8 and 9 are related to the existence of a relationship between information technology and knowledge application in Tejarat Bank.

Table 8: Mean and Standard Deviation between Information Technology and Knowledge Application.

	No	Median	Standard Deviation
4th Hypothesis	75	0/3981	0/3179s

Table 9: Results of the T-test for the Relationship Between Information Technology and Knowledge Application

Test T	Freedom Degree	Median Deviation	Sig
10/843	74	0/39810	0/05

Based on the data in Table 8, the average level of utilization of technological tools in the process of "knowledge application" is 3.3, which indicates a high level. Considering the value of the test statistic (10.84) performed with the T-test and shown in Table 9 and based on $\text{sig} < 0.05$, it can be claimed that: There is a significant and positive relationship between improving employee efficiency, using documented knowledge in future work, confidence in information technology tools, using experts in the field of information technology, easy access to information at the right time, the ability to search and evaluate information, and knowledge application. In fact, technological tools have been effective in the "knowledge application" section of the knowledge management process in Tejarat Bank. (Jafari, 2007)



Discussion and Conclusion

Today, in the transition from an industrial society to a knowledge-based society, there is a great focus on knowledge as one of the most important resources of organizations. This has led to increasing attention to information technology as one of the most important sources of competitive advantage. (Mirzaei et al., 2009)

Information technology plays a key role in the success or failure of a knowledge management system. Because each of the knowledge management processes is dependent on information technology. Knowledge is a valuable and strategic resource for organizations, including banks.

If knowledge can be produced, acquired, recorded, and maintained with proper and efficient management and by using the Internet, communication networks, office automation, information systems, and by updating it in electronic archives, documents and records can be stored and shared through groupware, organizational portals, and proposal management systems; it will improve employee efficiency and the application of documented knowledge in future work.

In this way, the tacit knowledge in the bank becomes a valuable asset through collaboration and social relations, and an effective step will be taken in confronting competitors and approaching the bank's goals. This research was conducted with the aim of evaluating the impact of information technology tools on the implementation of knowledge management in Tejarat Bank. The results indicated that the average The obtained score for the level of utilization of technological tools in the process of "knowledge production and acquisition" was 1.4, a high score.

The level of utilization of technological tools in the field of "knowledge production and processing" was 3.3 on average; the level of utilization of technological tools in the "knowledge sharing" section was 2.9 on average, and the level of utilization of technological tools in the "knowledge application" section was 3.3. Thus, the highest level of utilization of tools related to information technology occurred in the "knowledge production and acquisition" section, then jointly in the areas of "knowledge application" and "knowledge production and processing" and finally in the "knowledge sharing" section. In general, the status of the use of information technology in the application of knowledge management in Tejarat Bank can be assessed as appropriate and positive.

The research conducted is consistent with the findings of Taghizadeh's (2006) study, which showed that the use of information technology in the organization of libraries, museums, and the Astan Quds Razavi Document Center has increased the effectiveness of the organization; Tseng's (2008) study, which confirmed the relationship between information technology and knowledge management in companies in Taiwan, and the existence of a positive and significant relationship between information technology and management; and Neels ' (2010) study, which concluded that information technology was effective in strengthening and promoting the position of knowledge management in the South African industrial sector. This is inconsistent with the research of Sobhani et al. (2013), which stated that Afghan sports federations are far from using information technology to a very good level.

According to the findings of this study, it is recommended that: a combination of existing information technology tools be used to improve the flow of knowledge management in Tejarat Bank; appropriate planning be carried out to adapt information technology tools in accordance with the expected knowledge management processes; and technology infrastructure be strengthened to play a more effective role of information technology tools in the "knowledge sharing" section of the knowledge management process. It



is also suggested that research be conducted on this topic, with an emphasis on the differences in the tools used and the performance of knowledge management in different units of this bank.(Rviz and Merono,2006)

References

- Akiyoshi, M. (2008). Knowledge sharing over the network, thin solid film. Proceedings of 2nd International symposium on the manipulation of advanced smart Materials, 517(4) pp. 1512-1514.
- Azadi Ahmadabadi Qasem; Azadi Ahmadabadi, Akram. (2009) Information Technology in Knowledge Management: Applications and Effects. Publisher. Tadbir Monthly, No. 211, 55-60. For access: <https://tinyurl.com/3azepdtd>
- Blacker, F. (1995). Knowledge, Knowledge work and organization. Organization studies, 16, pp.1021-1046.
- Bock, G. & Marca, D. (1995). Designing Groupware. New York: McGraw- Hill.
- Brown, J.S. (1998). Organizing knowledge. California management review. 40(3), pp. 90- 111.
- Carvalho, Rodrigo Baroni de & Ferreira, Marta Ara 'jo Tavares. (2001). A Proposal of Taxonomy for Knowledge Management Tools. Online available in:
- Davenport, T.H. DeLong, D.W. Beers, M.C. (1998). Successful knowledge management projects. Sloan knowledge review, winter, 32(2), pp. 43-57.
- Fattahi, Rahmatullah. (2002) From Information to Knowledge: A New Approach to Library Functions in the Age of New Technology. In the collection of papers of the Sixth Conference of Librarians of the National Management and Planning Organization (Yazd Publisher: February 18, 2002). 342-15 . Tehran: Management and Planning Organization. For access: <https://tinyurl.com/2p9we5vr>
- Jafari Moghadam, (2007) Book, Documenting Managers' Experiences (From a Knowledge Management Perspective). Publisher: Tehran: Institute for Management Research and Education, Second Edition. For access: <https://tinyurl.com/ycx6f66x>
- McDermott, R. (1999). Why Information Technology inspired. California Management Review. 41, pp. 103-117.
- Miles, G. (1998). Some Conceptual and Research Barriers to the Utilization of knowledge. California management Review. 4(3), pp. 281-288.
- Milton, N. et al. (1999). Towards a knowledge technology for knowledge management. International Journal of Human-Computer Studies, 51, pp. 615-641.
- Mirzaei, R. et al. (2009). Information Technology as a Critical Factor in Knowledge Management system. 4th international e-commerce conference in developing countries.
- Mokhtari, Haidar; Yaminifar, Musa. (2004), From Data to Knowledge and from Data Management to Knowledge Management: A Review of the Literature. Publisher of Library Studies and



- Information Organization, Fall 2004 - Issue 59, Scientific-Promotional (Ministry of Science/ISC (13 pages - from 11 to 23). For access: <https://tinyurl.com/48bjcyry>
- Neels, C.J. & Johnson, D. (2010). Information management as an enabler of knowledge management maturity: a south African perspective. *International journal of information management*. 30, PP. 57-67.
- Rading, Ellen. (2017) Book, Knowledge Management: Success in the Global Information Economy. Translated by Mohammad Hossein Latifi, Publisher. Tehran: Samt. For access: <https://tinyurl.com/2p9we5vr>
- Rezaian, Ali; Taghizadeh, Ebrahim; (2007) Investigating the impact of information technology system on the effectiveness of the organization of libraries, museums and the document center of Astan Quds Razavi. Publisher: Library and Information Science, Winter 2007 - No. 40, Ministry of Science/ISC (13 pages - from 170 to 182). For access: <https://tinyurl.com/n5e86xyd>
- Rviz, J. Merono, A. (2006). Information Technology and Learning: Their Relationship and Impact on Organizational performance in small Business. *International Journal of information management*, 26(1), pp. 16-29.
- Sobhani, Yazdan; Henry, Habib; Shahlaei, Javad; Ahmadi, Alireza. (2013) The relationship between information technology and knowledge management in a sports federation. Publisher. *Sports Quarterly*, 55, 17 -.73. For access: <https://tinyurl.com/y4b4j2e6>
- Tarakh, Mohammad Jafar; Mirzaei, Rahmat; Alvandi, Naghmeh. (2011) Investigating the role of information technology tools in the effective implementation of knowledge management systems using gap analysis technique (Case study: Iran Khodro Company). (Publisher. *International Journal of Industrial Engineering and Production Management*, 22. (4). For access: <https://civilica.com/doc/281095/>
- Tseng, S. M. (2008). The effects of information technology on knowledge management systems. *Expert systems with applications*, 35, PP. 150-160.
- www.iamot.org/conference/index.php/ocs/7/paper/viewFile/860/309

Received: 03.06.2025

Revised: 03.12.2025

Accepted: 03.14.2025

Published: 03.18.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Strategic Management of E-Commerce

 ¹ Sameulhaq Amany,  ² Abdul Jamil Sharify

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002117>

Keywords	Abstract
Strategic Management E-Commerce Economics	<p>The wave of e-commerce has affected almost all companies in all economies, and these companies are inevitable of entering the field of e-commerce. The initial and fundamental step in formulating a strategy is undoubtedly the formulation and design of strategic goals of e-commerce.</p> <p>Strategic goals of e-commerce, like a guiding light, facilitate all efforts and actions towards the proper establishment of e-commerce and gaining a competitive advantage in the field of the electronic world. Without a proper e-commerce strategy, all efforts of the company towards the establishment of e-commerce may fail and, in addition to wasting financial, human and time resources, even the survival of the organization may be threatened. Strategic management is not a box of monuments or a set of techniques. Strategic management is analytical thinking to achieve commitments.</p> <p>The present study is of a descriptive-analytical type and from the perspective of an applied objective. This research has examined strategic management and its various dimensions in e-commerce and marketing, and studies show that strong strategic management causes the prosperity of e-commerce and increases the productivity of organizations. Market reality demands an effective business strategy for e-commerce, which responds to customer expectations and competitive pressures.</p>

Introduction

Strategic management is the planning and implementation of the main objectives that are determined by senior managers. These objectives are determined by considering the resources and evaluating the internal and external environment that organizations and companies compete in.

One of the most important tasks of senior managers in charge of developing an e-commerce strategy is to determine the organization's e-commerce vision. Superior and excellent e-commerce visions reflect something more than business or revenue goals. Strong and appropriate visions coordinate employees and

¹ Sameulhaq Amany Master's student in Administration and Economics, Sabahattin Zaim University, Türkiye, sameulhaq.amany01@gmail.com, <https://orcid.org/0009-0009-4681-2761>

² Lec. Abdul Jamil Sharify, Head of Department of Management Information Systems, International Science and Technology University, Warsaw, Poland jamil.sharify@istu.edu.pl, <https://orcid.org/0009-0001-0727-6726>



encourage investors to invest more. The existence of a strong, effective and appropriate vision sends signals to the market indicating the organization's ability to gain market leadership and dominate the market. (Jaworski,2002).

E-commerce strategy acts as a means and tool to achieve the strategic objectives of e-commerce, including the realization of the e-commerce vision. The organization must identify the resources and skills that create a competitive advantage in the electronic market.

If the organization has sufficient financial resources to cover the costs of establishing and maintaining e-commerce, has employees familiar with the concepts and principles of e-commerce, has a strong, well-known and reputable brand, and its products can be digitally transformed and have high digital capabilities, the organization can achieve a competitive advantage in the e-market. It is important to note that the e-market and the Internet are not considered competitive advantages in and of themselves.

Research Background

Badri and Andrews (2017), in an article titled Strategic Management in the Global E-Commerce Arena, found that the most important and obvious difference between today's and yesterday's economy is globalization.

Globalization is prescribed for the world's economic diseases and it is claimed that the free flow of capital, labor, goods, and information without government intervention and other forms of intervention is the only way to achieve global prosperity.

Nikbakht and Nasser Asadi (2016), in an article titled Examining the Challenges of Strategic E-Commerce Management, found that the successful implementation and deployment of e-commerce depends on the existence of specific strategies and without these strategies, all the efforts of the organization may fail. Therefore, success in the deployment and implementation of e-commerce lies in the use of appropriate strategic management.

Ashrafzadeh Farsangi and Nasser Asadi (2016), in an article titled Critical Success Factors and Their Impact on E-Commerce Strategy, found that critical success factors are an essential tool for identifying the set of activities that must be performed in order to achieve the goals and missions of your business or project, which a project manager must identify and control. Identifying critical factors as accurately as possible is the most important factor in measuring success.

Research Basis

Definition of e-commerce

If the definition of e-commerce could be summarized in one sentence, it would be:

“E-commerce refers to all processes of buying and selling, warehousing, product exchange, product delivery services, and the information process using social networks and the Internet.” Research on the definition of e-commerce shows that the process-oriented definition of e-commerce provides a broader view of what it is.

In this view, all internal business processes (production, warehousing, financial management, companies, operations), types of e-commerce, business-to-business (B2B) processes, supply chain management (SCM),



auctions and business-to-consumer (B2C) processes have also been influenced by e-commerce and network technology. (Sarafizadeh,2004)

What is meant by e-commerce market?

E-commerce is not limited to buying and selling products over the network. Rather, like a local store, it can create an Internet store on the Web and look for customers worldwide. In addition, the owner of this store can search for suppliers of store materials, accounting, banking services, government agencies and competitors on the Internet. (Weill,1995)

E-markets are usually referred to as transactions and auctions on the network, such as stock markets and auctions over the Internet, but the electronic market space refers to an economic phenomenon in which products, intermediaries and customers communicate and exchange electronically. The electronic market space is a virtual representation of physical markets. In general, economic activity under this electronic economy space Electronic. The electronic market space includes the following sectors:

*Market players: namely factories, merchants, wholesalers, intermediaries, stores and customers.

*Goods and services.

*Processes of supply, production, marketing, competition, distribution, consumption, etc.

*Disadvantages of e-commerce for customers.

*Possibility of compromising the security and privacy of users.

*Delay in receiving the goods.

*Lack of direct interaction with the seller.

*Lack of information about the quality of the product.

*Definite need for the Internet.

*Possibility of paying an additional fee after ordering the goods.

*Disadvantages of e-commerce for customers.

*Possibility of compromising the security and privacy of users.

*Delay in receiving the goods.

*Lack of direct interaction with the seller.

*Lack of information about the quality of the product.

*Definite need for the Internet.

*Possibility of paying an additional fee after ordering the goods.

*Advantages of e-commerce for business owners.

*Increase in sales.

*Availability of business services to customers 24 hours a day.



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Access to a larger number of customers.

*Convenience in expanding the business.

*Instant receipt of customer payments (Poursahibi, Faraji, 2009)

Strategic Management

Strategic management or strategic management is an analysis of important issues of the organization and is taken by the senior leaders of the organization on behalf of the owners, to control resources in environments outside the organization. This process includes specifying the mission, vision, and assets of the organization and developing the organization's plans and policies that will be needed to achieve it.

Another definition given about strategic management is the strategies and decisions that are supposed to help us and our organization move towards success and achieving goals or in a simpler definition where we are and where we are going to go. In this path, strategic management will help us determine the long-term performance of a company.

Strategic management includes environmental monitoring (external and internal), formulating long-term goals, implementing, evaluating and controlling the strategy. Therefore, the study of strategic management emphasizes monitoring and evaluating external opportunities and threats in light of a company's internal strengths and weaknesses. Strategic management was initially called business policy. Topics covered in strategic management include strategic planning, environmental monitoring and industry analysis. (Pour Sahebi, Faraji, 2009). As can be inferred from this definition, strategic management emphasizes several factors to achieve organizational success:

- Coordination of management
- Marketing
- Finance
- Production (operations)
- Research and development
- Computer information systems (Pour Sahebi and Faraji, 2009).

The process of designing strategy management In general, strategic management has a three-stage process, which are:

Strategy formulation

In strategy formulation, the organization's current goals, missions and mission should first be examined about internal strengths and weaknesses, and with a precise understanding of the current situation explain the organization.

Strategy Implementation



In this stage, it allocates the required human resources and equipment, and it is natural that a strategy can be implemented when the necessary resources are available to implement it, so the strategy becomes operational based on the available resources and capabilities. (Thompson & Strickland, 2003)

Strategy Evaluation

In strategic management, strategy evaluation is considered the last stage. Managers have a strong need to know when their specific and desired strategies are not working; basically, strategy evaluation means that information should be collected in this regard. Three major activities are carried out to evaluate the strategy as follows: Strategic Management

Strategic management or strategic management is an analysis of important issues of the organization and is taken by the senior leaders of the organization on behalf of the owners, in order to control resources in environments outside the organization. This process includes specifying the mission, vision, assets of the organization and developing the organization's plans and policies that will be needed to achieve it.

Another definition given about strategic management is the strategies and decisions that are supposed to help us and our organization move towards success and achieving goals or in a simpler definition where we are and where we are going to go.

In this path, strategic management will help us determine the long-term performance of a company. Strategic management includes environmental monitoring (external and internal), formulating long-term goals, implementing, evaluating and controlling the strategy. Therefore, the study of strategic management emphasizes monitoring and evaluating external opportunities and threats considering a company's internal strengths and weaknesses.

- Review of internal and external factors that form the basis of current strategies.
- Performance measurement
- Corrective actions

The reason is that strategies should be evaluated is that today's success cannot guarantee tomorrow's success, and success always gives rise to new and diverse issues; An organization that is not satisfied with its status or becomes arrogant and conceited will be doomed to destruction. (Pour Sahebi and Faraji, 2009).

Electronic commerce and investors Information and communication technology may affect investment in various ways. This may be done through the way information is transmitted to investors and the methods of information processing by investors.

In all these methods, the final and fixed cost of financial services is reduced. With the introduction of new technology, services related to buying and selling stocks and the brokerage industry, which were previously done traditionally, are now done with computers. (Anahid, 2010)

The role of electronic commerce in the economies of countries

Electronic commerce and technology and communications in recent decades and their increasing speed in recent years have been factors affecting economic integration and global dependence of national economies.

In other words, electronic commerce and the resulting developments have been able to play a broad role in the integration of global markets and the creation of new markets, and on the other hand, support the



international production process, and in this way, producers enter the global arena. link each other and become a suitable criterion for creating a competitive advantage.(Thompson &.Strickland,2003)

One of the most important aspects of distinguishing the economy of today and yesterday is globalization. Globalization is the free flow of capital, labor, goods, and information without government intervention. In view of this, McGraw defines globalization as follows:

Globalization is the establishment of diverse and reciprocal relationships between states and societies that have led to the creation of the current world system and through which events based on decisions and activities in one part of the world can have consequences for other individuals and societies in other parts of the world (Malek, 2005).

Electronic commerce and economic development

Electronic commerce can be the origin of the emergence or production of new goods and, by increasing production and, consequently, consumption, provide an increase in welfare. Therefore, at the microeconomic level, electronic commerce can have two major effects:

- It increases the transparency of markets and reaches conditions of perfect competition.
- It paves the way to produce new goods

More transparency, along with higher efficiency and more production and consumption, means positive welfare effects. In addition, electronic commerce reduces inefficiency by strengthening competition in the goods and services market and reducing the number of intermediaries between producers and final consumers and consequently reducing margins. Increase efficiency through reduced procurement costs, warehousing costs, better management of the production chain, better supply of goods and services, and ultimately, reduced transaction costs are other consequences of using electronic commerce. Electronic commerce brings the economies of countries to conditions of full competition, resulting in market transparency. (Mohammed et al, 2002).)

The Internet-based electronic commerce environment allows customers to search for information and purchase goods and services directly from online stores. Online shopping is not based on the actual experience of shopping. Rather, it is based on appearances such as images, shapes, qualitative information, and advertisements of goods. (Lohse &Spiller,1998) One of the most important tasks of the organization's top managers and those in charge of developing an electronic commerce strategy is to determine the organization's electronic commerce vision. Superior and excellent electronic commerce visions reflect something beyond business or revenue goals. (Comprehensive Site of Creativity, Innovation and Entrepreneurship (2009), Stages of Strategic Management in Electronic Businesses)

Appropriate visions coordinate employees and encourage investors to invest more in the organization. The existence of a strong, efficient and appropriate vision sends signals to the market that indicate the organization's ability to gain market leadership and dominance. (Azizi, 2006).

More than ever, managers of organizations need information and communication tools in the field of business competition, because the reduction of competitive advantage is one of the most important consequences of incompatibility with information technology.



Information and communication technology is the most important human achievement over the past few centuries, to the point that the most important commercial commodity of the current century has been introduced as information.

The direct and indirect impact of information and communication technology on all structures and levels of people's normal lives and the influence of the tools of this new era phenomenon has been the most effective factor in the technological development of humanity. (Daei, 2006) Strategic management was initially called business policy. Topics covered in strategic management include strategic planning, environmental monitoring and industry analysis. (Pour Sahebi, Faraji, 2009). As can be inferred from this definition, strategic management emphasizes several factors to achieve organizational success:

- Coordination of management
- Marketing
- Finance
- Production (operations)
- Research and development
- Computer information systems (Pour Sahebi and Faraji, 2009).

The process of designing strategy management In general, strategic management has a three-stage process, which are:

Strategy formulation

In strategy formulation, the organization's current goals, missions and mission should first be examined with regard to internal strengths and weaknesses, and with a precise understanding of the current situation explain the organization.

Strategy Implementation

In this stage, it allocates the required human resources and equipment, and it is natural that a strategy can be implemented when the necessary resources are available to implement it, so the strategy becomes operational based on the available resources and capabilities.

Strategy Evaluation

In strategic management, strategy evaluation is considered the last stage. Managers have a strong need to know when their specific and desired strategies are not working; basically, strategy evaluation means that information should be collected in this regard. (DAN.S, 2000)

Conclusion

International interactions and the strong economic dependence that is observed today between different countries of the world have been able to connect national economies based on economic parameters and components such as financial markets and foreign investment - size of the economy - size of the foreign trade market - international production and provide the basis for economic integration and integration.



In the meantime, the role of international trade and information and communication technology is important, so that the mutual influence of these two economic parameters has facilitated the process of economic globalization and led to an increase in world trade. E-commerce is a complex process that involves intense coordination between different organizations.

Given the increasing speed of changes in the world of electronic business and the consequent increase in the complexity of organizational decision-making, the need to apply and use a comprehensive plan, which is a strategic plan, has become much more tangible. Strategic management is based on a dynamic, forward-looking and comprehensive thinking of organizational managers, which is a suitable solution for many organizations in the field of e-commerce. To face the challenges of globalization, organizational managers must be able to provide effective strategic management with high quality. Therefore, success in establishing and implementing e-commerce lies in the application of appropriate strategic management.

References

- Anahid, Mohammad;(2010) The Impact of Electronic Commerce on the Economy, Publisher. University of Hormozgan
- Ashrafzadeh Farsangi, Samira; Naser Asadi, Ali (2016), Critical Success Factors and Their Impact on Electronic Commerce Strategy, Publisher. Proceedings of the First National Conference on Computer Engineering and Information Technology.
- Badri, Hossein; Androwage, Leila (2016), Strategic Management in the Global Electronic Commerce Arena, Proceedings of the Second International Congress on Community Empowerment in the Field of Management, Economics, Entrepreneurship and Cultural Engineering.
- Pour Sahebi,, Mohammad Reza; Faraji, Ebrahim,(2009) Strategic Management Book. Publisher. (Information Technology-Electronic Commerce)
- Daei, Habibollah,(2006) Globalization of Management and Electronic Commerce, Publisher. Tadbir Monthly, No. 165, 2006
- Comprehensive Site of Creativity, Innovation and Entrepreneurship (2009), Stages of Strategic Management in Electronic Businesses
- Sarafizadeh, Ahmad;(2004) Information Technology in Organization, Publisher/Amir Publications, Spring 2004
- Azizi, Shahriar;(2006) Strategic Goals in Electronic Commerce, Publisher. Tadbir Monthly, No. 175, 2006
- Malek, Mohammad Reza; Globalization of Economy from Dream to Reality, Publisher. Andisheeh Javan Center, May 2005.
- DAN.S, DAN.S (2000) "STRATEGIC INTERNET MARKETING". 1 ST EDITION, JOHN WILEY & SONS, MILTON.
- Hunger J.D, Wheelen T.L (2000)"Essential of strategic management", 2rd edition, prentice hall new jersey.
- Mohammed R.A, and Fisher R.J&Jaworski .B.J&Cahil A.M (2002)"Internet Marketing: Building advantage in a network economy", international edition, McGraw hill. NEW YORK.



- Rayport, J.F.&Jaworski, B.J. (2002)” Introduction to e- commerce “international edition, McGraw hill, new york.
- Thompson R.J&.Strickland. A.J (2003)” Strategic Management: concepts &case”, McGraw hill, New York.
- Weill, peter. (1995)” The Relationship Between Investment in information technology and firm performance: A study of the valve manufacturing sector, information study research, vol 3, issue 4, p 307.
- Nikbakht and Nasser Asadi (2016), Examining the challenges of strategic management of e-commerce. Place of publication: Second International Conference on Information and Communication Technology and Management. <https://civilica.com/doc/528438/>
- Lohse, G.L. and Spiller, P. (1998) Electronic Shopping. Communications of the ACM, 41, 81-87.<http://dx.doi.org/10.1145/278476.278491>

Received: 03.06.2025

Revised: 03.12.2025

Accepted: 03.14.2025

Published: 03.18.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

The Presumption of Innocence in the Context of International Legal Instruments on Human Rights

 ¹ Khalilov Yunis Farman oglu,  ² Mirzazade Yusif Emin oglu

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002118>

Keywords	Abstract
The presumption of innocence crime human rights United Nations International legal documents proof	<p>The article was dedicated to the identification of the presumption of innocence in international law on human rights.</p> <p>The article analyzes the text of the presumption of innocence in several international legal acts adopted in the continents of Europe, American and Africa.</p> <p>In the end, it is concluded that the presumption of innocence established in the international legal documents on human rights is one of the important human rights, and the text of the presumption of innocence reflected in many international legal acts adopted in Europe, America and Africa has an almost similar content.</p>

The idea of human rights, as ancient as humanity itself, has consistently been one of the key issues driving the process of societal development throughout history. It is no coincidence that the issue of human rights remains at the forefront today, serving as the subject of significant scientific research, the focus of pressing debates in both domestic and foreign policy, the foundational principle of nearly all democratic constitutions (*Article 12 of the Constitution of the Republic of Azerbaijan enshrines a progressive provision, stating that ensuring the rights and freedoms of individuals and citizens is the supreme objective of the state*), and the central essence of international documents on peace and security.

Regrettably, it must be acknowledged that various misunderstandings, complex and contradictory issues, as well as diverse forms of discontent within certain countries and international tensions related to human rights, persist in our contemporary era.

By analyzing significant socio-political and legal processes in society, one can conclude that the systematic development of the philosophical foundations of the idea of human rights—an idea arguably as old as humanity itself—and the effective struggle for its realization are achievements primarily of the last three centuries.

¹ Khalilov, Y. F. Lecturer, Department of General Law, Nakhchivan State University. Address: Nakhchivan City, University Campus. Email: yunisxeliyov@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0009-0004-3521-1913>.

² Mirzazade, Y. E. Law Student, Nakhchivan State University. Address: Nakhchivan City, University Campus. Email: yusifmirzazade@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0009-0008-7818-1805>



This is an open access article under the
 Creative Commons Attribution-
 NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
 ISSN 3030-1718

In the 18th century, as a result of revolutions in Europe, achieved at the cost of great human sacrifice, inalienable rights such as the right to life, liberty, and others were secured, along with fundamental civil rights. A century later, in the 19th century, we witness the emergence of political rights, including the right to vote, the right to participate in the political life of society and the state, and the right to partake in governance. In the 20th century, these rights were further expanded to include social rights, such as the right to social security, the right to work, and the right to education. However, during the same century, the challenges surrounding the procedures for implementing these rights in practice and the extent to which they were guaranteed began to manifest more prominently.

Thus, the modern level of the human rights idea, which aligns with contemporary international standards, began to take shape during the years of the Second World War and in the early years following the war—an era that not only caused global upheaval and major disasters but also left a dark stain on the history of humanity.

For instance, in 1945, the United Nations Charter reflected that one of the primary objectives of the UN is to assist in the protection of human rights. A little later, more specifically in 1948, the majority of human rights began to be enshrined in the UN's Universal Declaration of Human Rights and in a number of other international treaties and agreements (International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, International Covenant on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, etc.) derived from this declaration.

Since that time, the idea of human rights and the issue of its realization in practice have gradually spread to nearly all countries of the world, becoming an integral part of the constitutions of civil, democratic states, as well as their domestic legal frameworks.

Among human rights, the presumption of innocence holds significant legal importance, and this right is enshrined in several international legal instruments on human rights.

The first written provision regarding the presumption of innocence in Europe is found in Article 39 of the famous document known as the “Magna Carta” (It means “Great Charter” in Latin.) or “Magna Carta Libertatum” (It means “Great Charter of Freedoms” in Latin), which was signed in England on June 19, 1215: “No free man shall be seized or imprisoned, or stripped of his rights or possessions, or outlawed or exiled, or deprived of his standing in any way, nor will we proceed with force against him, or send others to do so, except by the lawful judgment of his equals or by the law of the land” (8).

It can be stated that the idea of the presumption of innocence gained official recognition for the first time in England, through the aforementioned document, which held significant importance for the masses at that time.

The principle of the presumption of innocence was officially declared as a right during the French Revolution (6, pg. 95).

Article 9 of the Declaration of the Rights of Man and of the Citizen, adopted during that period, stated that: “As all persons are held innocent until they shall have been declared guilty, if arrest shall be deemed



indispensable, all harshness not essential to the securing of the prisoner's person shall be severely repressed by law" (1, pg. 80).

Later, this principle was incorporated into the texts of several international legal instruments and the legislation of most civil and democratic states as an essential attribute of the rule of law.

Provisions related to the presumption of innocence have been included in international legal documents adopted by the Council of Europe and the European Union.

Thus, Article 6.2 (Right to a fair trial) of the "European Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms", signed on November 4, 1950, and entering into force on September 3, 1953, states: "Everyone charged with a criminal offence shall be presumed innocent until proved guilty according to law" (9).

In Article 48.1 of the "Charter of Fundamental Rights of the European Union", adopted in 2000, under the section titled "Justice", the provision regarding the presumption of innocence is stated as follows: "Everyone who has been charged shall be presumed innocent until proved guilty according to law" (10).

The presumption of innocence is also addressed in Article 31 § 1 of the Corpus Juris draft text, prepared by the European Commission in 2000. This text, which envisions the establishment of the European Public Prosecutor's Office with extensive powers, aims to protect the financial interests of the European Union through criminal law.

This includes references to the right to remain silent, limitations on the obligation to produce documents, and protection from being compelled to accuse one's close relatives (5, pg.113-114).

In the United States, this principle was first enshrined at the constitutional level as a separate article in the Constitution of Rhode Island.

Rhode Island, the first colony to declare its independence (1776), joined the United States in 1790, becoming one of the 13 founding colonies of the U.S. Its first constitution was adopted in 1842 and came into force in 1843. Article 14 of its current constitution, in effect since 1987, is dedicated to the presumption of innocence (4, pg. 42).

Article 8 of the Virginia Declaration of Rights, dated June 12, 1776, stated: "That in all capital or criminal prosecutions a man has a right to demand the cause and nature of his accusation, to be confronted with the accusers and witnesses, to call for evidence in his favor, and to a speedy trial by an impartial jury of twelve men of his vicinage, without whose unanimous consent he cannot be found guilty; nor can he be compelled to give evidence against himself; that no man be deprived of his liberty except by the law of the land or the judgment of his peers" (7).

As can be seen, this article, which encompasses several procedural rights, also refers to elements of the presumption of innocence, such as "not being considered guilty until convicted" and "not being compelled to provide evidence against oneself".



Article 26 of the American Declaration of the Rights and Duties of Man, dated May 2, 1948, stipulates that “Every person accused of an offense is presumed innocent until proven guilty”.

Additionally, Article 8.2 of the American Convention on Human Rights, dated November 22, 1969, establishes that “Every person accused of a criminal offense has the right to be presumed innocent until legally proven guilty.”

As for the African continent, it is worth noting that Article 7.1(b) of the African Charter on Human and Peoples' Rights, adopted by the Organization of African Unity on June 27, 1981, and entering into force on October 21, 1986, states: “Every individual shall have the right to be presumed innocent until proven guilty by a competent court.”

According to Article 17.2(c) of the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child, adopted by the Organization of African Unity in 1990 and entering into force on November 29, 1999, “Any child who is alleged to have violated the criminal law shall be presumed innocent until proven guilty according to the law”.

The presumption of innocence is also included in several other international legal documents adopted by the United Nations. For example, Article 11.1 of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights, dated December 10, 1948, states: “Everyone charged with a penal offense has the right to be presumed innocent until proven guilty according to law in a public trial with all guarantees necessary for his defense”.

According to Article 14.2 of the International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights, adopted by the United Nations on December 16, 1966, and entering into force on March 23, 1976, “Everyone charged with a criminal offense shall have the right to be presumed innocent until proven guilty according to law” (*II*).

In the Body of Principles for the Protection of All Persons under Any Form of Detention or Imprisonment adopted by the United Nations on December 9, 1988, it is stated: “Any person who is suspected of or charged with a criminal offense... shall be presumed innocent until proven guilty, and shall be treated accordingly”.

Furthermore, Article 40 (2) (b) (i) of the Convention on the Rights of the Child, adopted by the United Nations on November 20, 1989, and entering into force on September 2, 1990, establishes the child's right to be presumed innocent until proven guilty in accordance with the law (*12*).

The presumption of innocence has also been established in other international instruments. For instance, this principle was the subject of discussion at the 1953 VI Vienna Congress of the International Association of Penal Law (*2, pg. 26*).

Provisions regarding the presumption of innocence have also been incorporated into Article 20(3) of the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda and Article 66 (1) of the Statute of the International Criminal Court. Furthermore, this principle has been included in numerous international legal instruments adopted by international organizations (*3, pg. 21*).



Thus, to summarize what has been discussed, it can be concluded that the presumption of innocence, enshrined in international legal documents concerning human rights, is one of the fundamental human rights. The text of the presumption of innocence, reflected in a number of international legal acts adopted in Europe, the Americas, and Africa, is almost identical in nature.

References

- Abortion: In the Context of the Legislation of Foreign Countries and the Republic of Azerbaijan. *Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum*: Vol. 2, No.1 (Veris 2025)
<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.02500101>
- Khalilov Yunis Farman, & Mirzazade Yusif Emin. (2024). THE IMPACT OF DETENTION AND ARREST ON THE PRESUMPTION OF INNOCENCE IN THE CONTEXT OF EUROPEAN COURT JUDGMENTS. *World Scientific Reports*, (8). Retrieved from
<https://ojs.scipub.de/index.php/WSR/article/view/4803>
- Khalilov Yunis Farman, & Mirzazade Yusif Emin. (2025).
- Khalilov Yunis Farman. (2024) THE PROHIBITION OF THE USE OF ILLEGAL EVIDENCE AT THE LEVEL OF DECISIONS OF THE EUROPEAN COURT AND THE PRESUMPTION OF INNOCENCE. *German International Journal of Modern Science*. 10.5281/zenodo.10673819
- Khalilov Yunus Farman. (2024). CONSIDERATIONS ON THE POSITION OF THE EUROPEAN COURT OF HUMAN RIGHTS ON THE PRESUMPTION OF INNOCENCE. *Slovak international scientific journal*.
- Mumcu, A. (1994) *İnsan hakları kamu özgürlükleri Savaş Yayınları*
- Şahinkaya, Y. (2008) *İnsan hakları Avrupa Mahkemesi kararlarında ve Türk hukukunda suçsuzluk karinesi Seçkin*
- Uluslararası Af Örgütü (2000) *Adil yargılanma hakkı* (F. A. Tamer & E. Kaplan, Çev.) İletişim Yayıncılık
- Üzülmez, İ. (2005) Türk hukukunda suçsuzluk karinesi ve sonuçları *Türkiye Barolar Birliği Dergisi*, 18(58), Mayıs-Haziran
- Weigend, T. (2004) Avrupa iki ağızlı mı danışır (V. Ö. Özbek, Çev.)
- Yusif Emin Mirzazade. (2024). LEGAL REGULATION OF ANIMAL ORGAN TRANSPLANTATION INTO HUMAN ORGANISM: LEGAL-THEORETICAL APPROACHES AND RISKS. *Academics and Science Reviews Materials*, (8). Retrieved from
<https://ojs.scipub.de/index.php/ASCRM/article/view/4783>
- Орлов, Ю. К. (2001) *Основы теории доказательств в уголовном процессе* Проспект



Internet Resources

European Court of Human Rights (n.d.) *Convention for the Protection of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms* Retrieved from https://www.echr.coe.int/documents/d/echr/convention_ENG

European Parliament (n.d.) *Charter of Fundamental Rights of the European Union* Retrieved from https://www.europarl.europa.eu/charter/pdf/text_en.pdf

Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights (n.d.) *Convention on the Rights of the Child* Retrieved from <http://www.ohchr.org/en/professionalinterest/pages/crc.aspx>

Office of the High Commissioner for Human Rights (n.d.) *International Covenant on Civil and Political Rights* Retrieved from <http://www.ohchr.org/en/professionalinterest/pages/ccpr.aspx>

Wikipedia (n.d.) *Constitution of Virginia* Retrieved from http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Constitution_of_Virginia

Wikisource (n.d.) *Magna Carta Libertatum* Retrieved from http://tr.wikisource.org/wiki/Magna_Carta_Libertatum

Received: 03.07.2025

Revised: 03.12.2025

Accepted: 03.15.2025

Published: 03.18.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

The Impact of Integrating Rhyming Poetry into Vocabulary Instruction Among Primary School Pupils in Ido Local Government, Nigeria.

 ¹ Okunola Olusola Olufunmilayo,  ² Abioye Jemimah Anuoluwapo Iyabode,  ³ Ogunyemi

Funmilayo Elizabeth,  ⁴ Olatunji Saheed Olawale

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002120>

Keywords	Abstract
Rhyming poetry vocabulary development primary education phonological awareness language instruction	This study investigates the impact of integrating rhyming poetry into vocabulary instruction among primary school pupils in Ido Local Government, Nigeria. Employing a quasi-experimental design, the research involved an experimental group receiving poetry-based instruction and a control group following traditional teaching methods. Quantitative data were collected through standardized pre-tests and post-tests measuring vocabulary acquisition, retention, and reading comprehension. Qualitative insights were gathered via classroom observations, structured interviews, and focus group discussions to assess pupil engagement and perceptions of the poetry-based approach. Findings revealed that the experimental group exhibited significant improvements in vocabulary development, phonological awareness, and reading comprehension compared to the control group. Additionally, pupils reported increased motivation and enjoyment during poetry sessions. However, challenges such as selecting culturally appropriate poems and time constraints within the curriculum were identified. It was recommended among others that educational authorities should incorporate rhyming poetry into the language curriculum to enhance vocabulary development and phonological awareness. Teachers should receive training on effective methods for selecting and utilizing poetry in the classroom to maximize its benefits for vocabulary instruction. The study concludes that incorporating rhyming poetry into language

¹ Okunola, O. O. Department of Early Childhood Care and Education, School of Early Childhood Care, Primary, Adult and Non-Formal Education (ECPAE). Email: olusolafunmigrace@gmail.com

² Abioye, J. A. I. Department of Early Childhood Care and Education, School of Early Childhood Care, Primary, Adult and Non-Formal Education (ECPAE). Email: abioye.jemimah1795@fcesoyo.edu.ng

³ Ogunyemi, F. E. Department of English Language, School of Secondary Education (Language Programmes), Federal College of Education (Special), Oyo. Email: ogunyemifunmilayo013@gmail.com

⁴ Olatunji, S. O. Department of Early Childhood Care and Education, School of Early Childhood Care, Primary, Adult and Non-Formal Education (ECPAE). Email: olatanji.saheed1714@fcesoyo.edu.ng



instruction can effectively enhance vocabulary development and overall language proficiency among primary school pupils.

Introduction

Rhyming poetry has long been recognized as a powerful tool in language acquisition, particularly for young learners in the formative stages of their education. The rhythmic and repetitive nature of rhyming poetry makes it engaging and memorable, fostering an enjoyable learning experience for lower primary school pupils. By presenting new words in a structured and predictable manner, rhymes enable children to recognize patterns in language, improve phonemic awareness, and enhance their ability to decode unfamiliar words. Through repetition and rhythm, rhyming poetry aids in embedding new vocabulary into the long-term memory, enabling children to recall and use these words in both spoken and written communication.

Additionally, rhyming poetry encourages active participation, as pupils often recite or chant verses aloud, reinforcing their learning through auditory, visual, and kinesthetic modes. The multisensory nature of this learning approach appeals to a wide range of learners, making it an effective tool in diverse classrooms. Moreover, rhymes introduce pupils to the nuances of word sounds, syllables, and phonetic combinations, which are fundamental building blocks of language development. As children engage with rhymes, they also acquire contextual understanding of words, as the narrative or thematic flow of poetry provides meaningful contexts for new vocabulary.

The impact of rhyming poetry extends beyond mere word recognition to fostering creativity and imagination in pupils, as they are encouraged to explore the meanings of words and their applications in various contexts. When integrated into the curriculum, rhyming poetry becomes a playful yet impactful strategy to support literacy and language development. Ultimately, this approach contributes significantly to vocabulary development by equipping pupils with the tools to understand, internalize, and apply new words effectively in their academic and social interactions.

Vocabulary development is the process of acquiring and expanding the words an individual understands (receptive vocabulary) and actively uses (expressive vocabulary) in both spoken and written communication, and as Van Gemert (2024) explains, it plays a vital role in language acquisition and literacy, particularly during the early years of education. A robust vocabulary not only enables children to communicate effectively and comprehend texts but also equips them to

interacting meaningfully with their environment by understanding the appropriate use of words in various contexts—a foundation that strongly influences reading comprehension and overall academic success. Engaging strategies such as interactive games, group discussions, and visual aids have been shown to enhance vocabulary retention and practical application *Handig, Gabriel, García & Domingo, (2023)*, while regular practice and reinforcement are especially critical for bridging vocabulary gaps among English Language Learners (Krishnasamy & Abdul Aziz, 2024)). Moreover, shared reading experiences and diverse instructional techniques have been found to broaden both the depth and breadth of vocabulary knowledge (*Arslan, 2024*), with a solid vocabulary foundation closely linked to improved reading and writing performance (Green & McLachlan, 2024) and the development of cognitive and social skills that facilitate effective communication (Narayan & Goundar, 2024). Despite these benefits, vocabulary development



faces challenges in meeting the diverse needs of students from multilingual and varied socio-economic backgrounds, necessitating flexible and tailored teaching strategies. Among the most powerful tools to enrich vocabulary is the art of poetry, which, through its rhythmic patterns, creative language, and memorable expressions, transforms learning into an enchanting journey that ultimately culminates in poetry.

Palmer (2023) described poetry as a unique form of literature that utilizes figurative language to uncover deeper meanings within a subject. Defining poetry can be complex, as it encompasses a wide range of styles and structures, some of which may follow specific patterns, rhyme schemes, or stanza lengths, while others may not adhere to any set rules. Unlike novels and short stories, which are typically written in straightforward prose, poetry is often composed in verse, incorporating rhythm and meter to enhance its expressive quality.

Goepel (2024) further explained that poetry serves as a powerful literary medium, using rhythmic and figurative language to evoke emotion and convey profound ideas. Though generally more concise than other literary forms, poetry allows for creative and abstract exploration of themes, engaging readers through its distinctive use of sound and structure. One of the most captivating aspects of poetry is its rhythmic and melodic quality, particularly in rhyming poetry, which enhances linguistic appeal and memorability.

Rhyming poetry has long been recognized as a powerful tool for enhancing language and literacy skills in young children, with extensive research demonstrating a strong relationship between vocabulary knowledge and reading comprehension (Elleman et al., 2009). Given the considerable individual differences in vocabulary size early in schooling, educators have increasingly turned to innovative methods such as rhyming poetry to provide repeated exposure to words and their sounds, thereby facilitating phonological awareness and word recognition. Preliminary evidence suggests that active recitation of rhyming verses—not just passive listening—leads to improved reading and spelling outcomes. This approach is particularly beneficial in diglossic languages like Arabic, where the significant gap between spoken and formal varieties can be bridged by transferring oral language proficiency into literacy skills. Moreover, poetry plays a crucial role in second language acquisition by enhancing pronunciation accuracy (Reilly, 2012), promoting motivation, creativity, and self-expression, and fostering multi-skill development and learner interaction (Gönen, 2018). It has been shown to develop meaningful literacy (Hanauer, 2012) and even produce measurable improvements in test scores (Özen & Mohammadzadeh, 2012). Integrating poetry into language instruction enables learners to create strong connections between language and its usage, encourages interaction with the language, and heightens their eagerness to learn. Studies indicate that reciting poetry enhances pronunciation and expands vocabulary (Lazar, 1996; Khatib, 2011; Özen, 2012; Mittal, 2014), while its rhythmic structure and memorable patterns improve phonemic awareness and word retention (Dixit, 2023). Poetry not only introduces diverse vocabulary in meaningful contexts, enriching comprehension and language skills (Bush, 2020), but also stimulates creativity and critical thinking as learners experiment with new words, thereby boosting their expressive vocabulary (Friday, 2024). In classrooms, research has demonstrated that poetry reinforces effective reading and writing by fostering a profound connection with the language, with studies such as those by Ruba Jamal "Mohammed Hilmi" AL-Bakri (2019) highlighting its positive impact on vocabulary and pronunciation. All these findings underscore the significant potential of using rhyming poetry as an instructional tool, which some studies had worked in relation to this.



Empirical review highlights the significant role of poetry in enhancing children's vocabulary development and overall language proficiency. Al-Jarf (2015) demonstrated that incorporating poetry into English language instruction can markedly improve students' vocabulary acquisition and retention. In a similar vein, Kadioglu (2005) investigated poetry-oriented, learner-centered activities and found that such approaches not only enriched the vocabulary repertoire of elementary students but also bolstered their overall communicative abilities. Complementing these findings, Atay (2007) revealed that analyzing poetry through a language-based approach positively influenced students' language awareness and critical thinking skills.

Further empirical evidence supports the use of poetry in fostering communicative competence in diverse language learning environments. Gültekin (2006) showed that incorporating poetry in EFL speaking classes created meaningful interaction opportunities, thereby enhancing second language communication. Ozen and Mohammadzadeh (2012) found that poetry-based vocabulary teaching activities led to a broader and more extensive vocabulary knowledge among learners. Ahmad (2014) provided additional support by demonstrating that a stylistic, communicative approach to teaching poetry could significantly improve grammar, vocabulary, and integrated language skills in Saudi ESL learners compared to more traditional methods.

Moreover, Reilly (2012) argued that poetry plays a crucial role in developing pronunciation and vocabulary, while also expanding learners' understanding of semantics, syntax, and pragmatics, as well as enhancing cultural awareness, self-expression, and motivation. In a practical classroom setting, Yusuf and Ahmed (2019) observed that integrating rhymes into literacy instruction in primary schools significantly boosted pupils' phonological awareness, vocabulary, and reading comprehension. Most recently, Rajan and Saadat (2024) found that engaging children with rhymes not only aids in learning vocabulary, spelling, and pronunciation but also builds oral confidence as learners describe objects and ideas. This indicates that collective findings of these studies provide robust empirical evidence that poetry—through its engaging and rhythmic nature—serves as an effective tool for enhancing vocabulary development and overall communicative competence in young learners.

Statement of the Problem

Vocabulary development is a critical component of language acquisition and literacy, forming the foundation for effective communication and academic success. Globally, educators grapple with significant individual differences in vocabulary knowledge among young learners, and innovative teaching methods are continually being explored to address these challenges. One promising approach that has emerged is the use of poetry—particularly rhyming poetry—which offers repeated exposure to language through engaging rhythms and patterns, thereby enhancing phonological awareness and word recognition skills.

Worldwide, numerous studies have shown that poetry can significantly boost vocabulary acquisition, improve reading comprehension, and foster creativity and critical thinking. These investigations suggest that when children actively recite and interact with poetry, they not only expand their vocabulary but also develop stronger language skills overall. However, while the existing literature underscores the benefits of poetry-based interventions, much of the research has concentrated on short-term gains and specific cultural contexts, leaving several key areas underexplored.



In Nigeria, the challenge of effective vocabulary development is compounded by limited instructional resources and a diverse pupil population with varying linguistic backgrounds. Nigerian educators often struggle to implement engaging and innovative teaching strategies that can meet the needs of all pupils. Although research from other regions indicates that poetry can be a valuable tool for language development, there is a noticeable gap in empirical studies examining its long-term impact and effectiveness within the Nigerian educational context.

The gaps in the literature include a limited understanding of the sustained effects of poetry-based learning on vocabulary retention, insufficient comparative analyses between different poetic forms, and a lack of integration with modern digital teaching tools. This study aims to fill these gaps by investigating the impact of rhyming poetry on vocabulary development among primary school pupils in Nigeria. By employing a culturally relevant framework and exploring both immediate and long-term outcomes, the study seeks to contribute empirical evidence that not only supports the global discourse on innovative language teaching methods but also offers practical solutions for enhancing vocabulary acquisition in Nigerian classrooms.

Purpose of the Study

The main purpose of this study is to investigate the impact of rhyming poetry on the vocabulary development of primary school pupils in Nigeria. This research aims to explore how integrating poetry into language instruction can enhance vocabulary acquisition, retention, and effective use in both spoken and written communication. Specifically, the study seeks to:

examine the impact of integrating rhyming poetry on vocabulary acquisition and retention among primary school pupils.

evaluate the extent to which rhythmic and interactive aspects of reciting poetry influence the development of phonological awareness and reading comprehension compared to traditional vocabulary instruction

investigate the perceptions of primary school pupils regarding the effectiveness of rhyming poetry as an instructional tool for vocabulary development.

Investigate the challenges and opportunities do teachers encounter when incorporating rhyming poetry into vocabulary instruction in the Nigerian educational context.

Research Questions

What is the impact of integrating rhyming poetry on vocabulary acquisition and retention among primary school pupils?

How does the use of rhyming poetry influence the development of phonological awareness and reading comprehension compared to traditional vocabulary instruction?

What are the perceptions of primary school pupils regarding the effectiveness of rhyming poetry as an instructional tool for vocabulary development?

What challenges and opportunities do teachers encounter when incorporating rhyming poetry into vocabulary instruction in the Nigerian educational context?



Results

Quantitative Data Analysis

Table 1: Comparison of Pre-Test and Post-Test Scores Between Experimental and Control Groups

Group	Mean Pre-Test Score	Mean Post-Test Score	Mean Difference	Standard Deviation	t-Value	p-Value
Experimental	65.4	85.7	20.3	5.2	7.81	<0.001
Control	64.8	70.2	5.4	4.9	1.98	0.056

Method of Data Analysis

Descriptive statistics were used to calculate the mean scores and standard deviations for both groups. An independent samples t-test was conducted to compare the mean differences between the pre-test and post-test scores within each group.

Interpretation of Findings

The experimental group, which received poetry-based instruction, showed a significant improvement in vocabulary acquisition, with a mean increase of 20.3 points from pre-test to post-test ($t = 7.81$, $p < 0.001$). In contrast, the control group exhibited a smaller, non-significant gain of 5.4 points ($t = 1.98$, $p = 0.056$). This suggests that integrating rhyming poetry into vocabulary instruction is more effective than traditional methods.

Table 2: Phonological Awareness and Reading Comprehension Scores Post-Intervention

Group	Phonological Awareness (Mean Score)	Reading Comprehension (Mean Score)
Experimental	88.2	84.5
Control	75.6	78.3

Method of Data Analysis

Descriptive statistics were utilized to determine the mean scores for phonological awareness and reading comprehension in both groups. An independent samples t-test was performed to assess the differences between the experimental and control groups.

Interpretation of Findings

The experimental group outperformed the control group in both phonological awareness and reading comprehension, with mean scores of 88.2 and 84.5, respectively, compared to 75.6 and 78.3 in the control group. These results indicate that the use of rhyming poetry enhance not only vocabulary acquisition but also related language skills.

Qualitative Data Analysis

Theme 1: Enhanced Engagement and Motivation



Findings

Teachers reported that pupils in the experimental group displayed increased enthusiasm during poetry sessions. Pupils expressed enjoyment and actively participated in reciting and creating rhymes, which fostered a positive learning environment.

Interpretation

The engaging nature of rhyming poetry appears to boost motivation and participation among pupils, potentially leading to more effective vocabulary learning.

Theme 2: Improved Pronunciation and Phonological Awareness

Findings

Both teachers and pupils noted improvements in pronunciation and the ability to recognize sound patterns. Pupils became more adept at identifying rhyming words and syllable structures.

Interpretation

The rhythmic and repetitive elements of rhyming poetry contribute to enhanced phonological awareness, facilitating better pronunciation and listening skills.

Theme 3: Challenges in Implementation

Findings

Some teachers faced difficulties in selecting appropriate poems that matched the pupils' proficiency levels and cultural context. Additionally, time constraints within the curriculum posed challenges for incorporating poetry-based activities.

Interpretation

While beneficial, the integration of rhyming poetry into vocabulary instruction requires careful selection of materials and consideration of curriculum scheduling to address potential challenges effectively.

Theme 4: Positive Perception of Poetry as a Learning Tool

Findings

Pupils expressed that learning through poetry was enjoyable and helped them remember new words more easily. Teachers observed that pupils were more willing to engage with complex vocabulary when presented in a poetic format.

Interpretation

The positive reception of poetry-based learning suggests that it is an effective medium for introducing and reinforcing new vocabulary, making the learning process both enjoyable and memorable for pupils.

Discussion of Findings

The study's findings underscore the significant impact of integrating rhyming poetry into vocabulary instruction for primary school pupils. The experimental group, which received poetry-based instruction, demonstrated a substantial improvement in vocabulary acquisition and retention compared to the control group. This aligns with Matthew (2024) indicating that the rhythmic and repetitive nature of rhyming poetry enhances phonological awareness, thereby facilitating better vocabulary learning.



Furthermore, the experimental group outperformed the control group in both phonological awareness and reading comprehension assessments. This suggests that rhyming poetry not only aids in vocabulary development but also strengthens overall language proficiency. Collins (2020) found that the use of rhyme and rhythm in poetry has been shown to support the development of phonemic awareness, which is crucial for reading success.

Qualitative data revealed that pupils found poetry-based learning enjoyable and engaging, leading to increased motivation and participation. Teachers observed that pupils were more enthusiastic during poetry sessions and demonstrated greater willingness to experiment with language. This heightened engagement is consistent with Matthew (2024) findings that suggest poetry's playful use of language can make learning more appealing to young learners.

However, some challenges were noted in the implementation of poetry-based instruction. Teachers reported difficulties in selecting appropriate poems that matched pupils' proficiency levels and cultural contexts. Additionally, time constraints within the curriculum posed challenges for incorporating poetry-based activities. These challenges highlight the need for careful planning and resource allocation when integrating poetry into language instruction.

Summary of Findings

The study investigated the impact of integrating rhyming poetry into vocabulary instruction among primary school pupils in Ido Local Government, Nigeria. The experimental group, which received poetry-based instruction, demonstrated a significant improvement in vocabulary acquisition and retention compared to the control group. Additionally, pupils exposed to rhyming poetry showed enhanced phonological awareness and reading comprehension. Qualitative data revealed that both teachers and pupils perceived poetry-based learning as enjoyable and engaging, leading to increased motivation and participation. However, challenges such as selecting appropriate poems and time constraints within the curriculum were noted.

Conclusion

Integrating rhyming poetry into vocabulary instruction effectively enhances vocabulary development, phonological awareness, and reading comprehension among primary school pupils. The engaging nature of poetry fosters a positive learning environment, increasing pupil motivation and participation. Despite implementation challenges, the benefits of poetry-based instruction suggest it is a valuable tool in language education.

Recommendations

Educational authorities should incorporate rhyming poetry into the language curriculum to enhance vocabulary development and phonological awareness.

Teachers should receive training on effective methods for selecting and utilizing poetry in the classroom to maximize its benefits for vocabulary instruction.

Schools should allocate sufficient time and resources for poetry-based activities, ensuring that time constraints do not hinder the implementation of this effective instructional strategy.



Future studies should explore the long-term effects of poetry-based instruction on vocabulary retention and examine its applicability across different cultural and linguistic contexts.

References

- Al-Jarf, R. (2015). The Effectiveness of Teaching English Poetry on EFL Students' Vocabulary Development. *International Journal of English Language Teaching*, 3(1), 1-14.
- Arslan, K. (2024). Teaching English Vocabulary: Innovative Methods. <https://doi.org/10.62601/crll.v2i1.26>
- Atay, Ö. (2007). Poetry in primary school EFL classroom: A language based approach. Unpublished MA Thesis, Çukurova Üniversitesi, Sosyal Bilimler Üniversitesi,
- Bush, A (2020). How Poetry can help kids develop reading skills. <https://readingpartners.org/blog/poetry-can-help-kids-develop-reading-skills/>
- Collins, K. (2020). Importance of Poetry, Rhyming, and Music When Learning to Read. https://journal.imse.com/importance-of-poetry-rhyming-and-music/?utm_source=chatgpt.com
- Dixit, D (2024). Building Literacy Skills through Poetry: A Comprehensive Guide. <https://brightchamps.com/blog/poem-for-kids/>
- Elleman, A. M., Lindo, E. J., Morphy, P., & Compton, D. L. (2009). The Impact of Vocabulary Instruction on Passage-Level Comprehension of School-Age Children: A Meta-Analysis. *Journal of Research on Educational Effectiveness*, 2(1), 1–44. <https://doi.org/10.1080/19345740802539200>
- Friday, M.J (2024). Teaching Kindergartners to Write Poetic Sentences. <https://www.edutopia.org/article/poetic-writing-kindergarten/>
- Goepel, J. (2024). What Is a Poem? Poetry Definition, Elements, & Examples. <https://www.papertrue.com/blog/what-is-a-poem/>
- Gönen, SIK (.2018). Implementing Poetry in the Language Class: A Poetry-Teaching Framework for Prospective English Language Teachers, *Advances in Language and Literary Studies*, v9 n5 p28-42
- Hanauer, DI (2012). Meaningful literacy: Writing poetry in the language classroom, *Language Teaching* 45(01):105 – 115
- Handig, J. E. R., Gabriel, A. H., García, R., & Domingo, M. S. (2023). Enhancing vocabulary learning in elementary language education: exploring effective strategies and interactive approaches. *EPRA International Journal of Multidisciplinary Research*, 392–397. <https://doi.org/10.36713/epra14166>
- <https://vocabularyluau.com/using-cinquain-poems-to-teach-vocabulary/>
- KRISHNASAMY, K & ABDUL AZIZ, A.(2024) Effectiveness of Using Fun Minds Flash in Improving Vocabulary Retention Among Year 5 Remedial Pupils. *International Journal of Advanced Research in Education and Society*, [S.l.], v. 6, n. 3, p. 40-54, ISSN 2682-8138.



- Matthew J.F (2024). Using Rhyming to Promote Phonemic Awareness in Elementary School. <https://www.edutopia.org/article/rhyming-supports-phonemic-awareness>
- Nordin, N., Kamaludin, P. N. H., Md Sharif, N. F., Chumari, M. Z., & Zabidin, N. (2024). The effectiveness of vocabulary games on vocabulary acquisition: a literature review. *INTERNATIONAL JOURNAL OF MODERN EDUCATION (IJMOE)*, 6(21), 540–547. <https://doi.org/10.35631/ijmoe.621039>
- Ozen, B & Mohammadzadeh, B (2012). TEACHING VOCABULARY THROUGH POETRY IN AN EFL CLASSROOM. *International Online Journal of Primary Education*, 1(1), 58-72
- Palmer, R. (2023). Poetry Definition, Types & Examples. <https://study.com/academy/lesson/poetry-definition-types-examples.html>
- Rajan, S.K & Saadat, U. (2024) An Experimental Study on Using Rhymes to Build English Vocabulary Among Kindergarten Pupils in Bousher, Oman. *International Journal of Emerging Issues in Social Science, Arts, and Humanities*, 2(2), 91-104
- Reilly, N. (2012). What is the Role of Poetry in Second Language Learning and Teaching? The Role of Poetry in Teaching Second Language. (slideshare.net)
- Ruba Jamal "Mohammed Hilmi" AL-Bakri (2019). The Effectiveness of Using Poetry in Developing English Vocabulary, Language Proficiency and Motivation of EFL Palestinian Students A thesis is submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the Degree of Master of Applied Linguistics and the Teaching of English Language, Faculty of Graduate Studies & Academic Research, Hebron University, Palestine.
- Van Gemert, L. (2024). Using Cinquain Poems to Teach Vocabulary

Received: 03.07.2025

Revised: 03.12.2025

Accepted: 03.15.2025

Published: 03.18.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

The Language That Rules the World: What's Behind English's Global Power?

 ¹ Ilaha Ashrafova

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002122>

Keywords	Abstract
English as a global language Linguistic imperialism Multilingualism and equity Language and globalization	English has attained unparalleled global prominence, functioning as the primary medium for international communication in diplomacy, education, science, and digital platforms. This article explores the historical, political, economic, and technological forces that have contributed to the global dominance of English, beginning with British colonial expansion and extending through American geopolitical influence and the rise of global digital culture. While English offers undeniable advantages in terms of access to knowledge and international mobility, its spread has also reinforced linguistic hierarchies, marginalized indigenous and minority languages, and raised concerns about linguistic imperialism. Drawing on perspectives from sociolinguistics, language policy, and digital communication, the article interrogates the tension between English as a tool of global empowerment and as a symbol of cultural and ideological dominance. It concludes by arguing for a more balanced linguistic environment in which multilingualism and linguistic justice are prioritized alongside global communication. The article offers insights relevant to educators, policymakers, and scholars seeking to understand and navigate the complex implications of English's global role.

1. Introduction

In the twenty-first century, the English language has emerged as the dominant medium of international communication, shaping global interactions across politics, business, education, technology, and culture. Often referred to as the "global lingua franca," English is no longer merely the language of its native speakers but a widespread tool adopted by millions for cross-border discourse (Crystal, 2020; Jenkins, 2019). Its rise is not solely a linguistic phenomenon but a result of complex historical, political, and ideological forces that have unfolded over several centuries—from British colonial expansion to American post-war influence and the spread of digital technology (Du, 2020; Hagve, 2020; Catala et al., 2022).

¹ Əşrəfova, İ. English Language Teacher, Nakhchivan State University. Email: ilahaashrafova@ndu.edu.az. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0009-0000-2127-3487>.



The global adoption of English has undeniably transformed language teaching, learning, and policy-making across diverse contexts (Al-Jarf, 2022; Ibrahim et al., 2019). In educational systems worldwide, English often functions as a gatekeeper to social mobility and international opportunity. At the same time, this dominance raises critical concerns about linguistic inequality, cultural homogenization, and the marginalization of local languages (Phillipson, 2020; Wang & Hatoss, 2022; Davis & Phyak, 2017). These concerns have led to growing discussions around linguistic imperialism, raciolinguistic ideologies, and the need to re-evaluate global language hierarchies (Flores & Rosa, 2015; Guilherme, 2020; Lai, 2021).

Moreover, in the multilingual spaces of contemporary workplaces and digital platforms, English operates as a bridge among speakers of different native languages—often at the cost of linguistic diversity (Angouri & Miglbauer, 2022; Berdimurotovna, 2020). While this role facilitates global collaboration, it also introduces tensions between communicative efficiency and cultural authenticity. As such, understanding the global power of English requires not only a historical and sociopolitical lens but also a critical examination of how language practices are shaped by ideology, identity, and policy.

This article aims to explore the foundations and implications of English's global power, tracing its historical roots, current manifestations, and future trajectories. It also interrogates whether English's dominance should be viewed as a neutral phenomenon or as a product of power dynamics that continue to influence language practices worldwide.

2. Historical Foundations

The global dominance of English cannot be understood without examining its historical underpinnings, particularly the role of the British Empire in disseminating the language across continents. During the height of British colonialism, English was imposed as the language of administration, education, and governance in Africa, South Asia, the Caribbean, and parts of Southeast Asia. Colonized societies were systematically introduced to English through missionary schools, colonial institutions, and legal systems, effectively embedding the language in elite and official domains (Crystal, 2020; Du, 2020). In many of these countries, English remained a vital part of the national fabric even after independence, due to its association with socioeconomic advancement and global connectivity (Ibrahim et al., 2019).

The retention and institutionalization of English in post-colonial nations were not merely practical decisions but also reflections of internalized linguistic hierarchies. Local languages were often relegated to informal or domestic spheres, while English maintained prestige and official status (Phillipson, 2020; Lai, 2021). This phenomenon contributed to what Phillipson (2020) terms “linguistic imperialism,” wherein English was promoted as inherently superior and necessary for progress, often at the expense of indigenous languages and cultural identities.

In parallel, the spread of English was closely tied to economic structures. Trade, shipping, and global commerce during and after the colonial period were increasingly conducted in English, reinforcing its practicality as a tool for international transactions (Crystal, 2020). By the early 20th century, English had already gained a solid foothold in academia, diplomacy, and business, setting the stage for its continued expansion in the post-war era. These historical dynamics laid the groundwork for the next major phase of English's global rise: the cultural and political dominance of the United States.

3. American Influence in the 20th and 21st Centuries



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Following the decline of British imperial power in the early 20th century, the United States emerged as the principal agent in sustaining and expanding the global influence of the English language. With its ascent as a political and economic superpower after World War II, the U.S. used its strategic international position to promote English through diplomacy, foreign aid, global alliances, and military presence. Institutions such as the United Nations, the International Monetary Fund, the World Bank, and NATO often adopted English as one of their primary working languages, reinforcing its institutional dominance across continents (Guilherme, 2020; Hagve, 2020). American leadership in science, technology, and higher education further solidified the necessity of English for participation in global academic and research communities. As Hagve (2020) notes, English-language academic publishing has come to dominate scholarly communication, marginalizing non-English outputs and creating a monolingual knowledge economy that privileges native and near-native users of English.

Parallel to its geopolitical influence, the United States leveraged its cultural industries to advance the global reach of English through soft power. American films, music, television series, and popular literature have long captivated international audiences, projecting not only language but also lifestyles, ideologies, and values associated with American culture. From Hollywood blockbusters to global pop icons and bestselling English-language novels, these cultural exports have played a crucial role in embedding English into the everyday experiences and aspirations of people around the world (Catala et al., 2022). The advent of global streaming platforms, social media, and YouTube has further accelerated this process, especially among younger generations. In many countries, English-language media is not merely consumed but emulated—shaping everything from slang and humor to fashion and digital identities (Angouri & Miglbauer, 2022).

Moreover, the dominance of English in international diplomacy and transnational governance reinforces its function as the preferred medium for global negotiations and decision-making. English is the working language of the European Union, ASEAN, OPEC, and countless bilateral and multilateral agreements. Even in regions where English is not a native or majority language, it is often the default language for regional communication and external representation (Jenkins, 2019; Crystal, 2020). This institutionalization of English as the *de facto* language of global governance contributes to its perceived neutrality and indispensability. However, it also creates linguistic asymmetries, where non-native speakers may experience communicative disadvantage, particularly in high-stakes political or legal negotiations (Flores & Rosa, 2015; Wang & Hatoss, 2022). Thus, while American economic and cultural dominance has undoubtedly propelled English to its current global status, it has also reinforced linguistic inequalities that continue to shape global power dynamics.

4. Technological and Scientific Expansion

In the digital era, the technological revolution has played a decisive role in solidifying English's dominance as the language of global communication. From the birth of the internet to the ongoing evolution of artificial intelligence and machine learning, English has consistently been the primary linguistic code embedded in digital infrastructures (Catala et al., 2022). An overwhelming majority of online content is created, distributed, and consumed in English, especially on global platforms such as Google, Facebook, X (formerly Twitter), and YouTube. Although internet penetration is increasing in non-English-speaking regions, English remains the dominant language in coding, web development, digital marketing, and user interface design (Al-Jarf, 2022). This has significant implications: digital literacy often equates to English proficiency, placing non-native speakers at a disadvantage when engaging with global networks. The internet, originally hailed as a democratizing force, has inadvertently reinforced English-centric information hierarchies.



In scientific communication and academia, English has also achieved near-monopoly status. The majority of peer-reviewed journals, academic conferences, and international research collaborations use English as the sole or primary language of discourse (Hagve, 2020). Scholars from non-English-speaking backgrounds often face the dual burden of mastering content and language simultaneously. As noted by Guilherme (2020), this monolingual academic norm systematically marginalizes alternative epistemologies and linguistic frameworks, reinforcing Western-centric models of knowledge production. Furthermore, the pressure to publish in prestigious English-language journals affects not only the accessibility of research but also academic careers and funding opportunities worldwide. English becomes a linguistic gatekeeper to scientific recognition, perpetuating unequal power relations in the global knowledge economy (Phillipson, 2020; Lai, 2021).

Central to this linguistic shift is the influence of Silicon Valley and the dominance of American tech companies that shape digital behavior worldwide. Tech giants such as Apple, Microsoft, Amazon, Meta, and Google have not only exported their technologies globally but have also normalized English as the language of innovation and software development. The programming languages used to build digital systems—Python, JavaScript, HTML, and others—are fundamentally based on English syntax and terminology (Catala et al., 2022). Even user support, software documentation, and coding tutorials are predominantly written in English, making it a necessary tool for participation in tech-related fields (Ibrahim et al., 2019). While this has encouraged millions to learn English for career development, it also raises concerns about linguistic homogenization and the marginalization of local knowledge systems in digital spaces. As the digital world continues to expand, the relationship between English and technological advancement grows increasingly intertwined—beneficial for some, exclusionary for others.

5. English in Education and Employment

In the realm of education, English has increasingly functioned as a gatekeeper—especially in higher education—determining who gains access to academic resources, global opportunities, and professional networks. Prestigious universities around the world, including those in non-English-speaking countries, have adopted English-medium instruction (EMI) for academic programs to attract international students and enhance institutional ranking (Guilherme, 2020; Du, 2020). Entrance exams, scholarly articles, reference materials, and postgraduate theses are often expected to be in English, placing immense pressure on non-native speakers to achieve high levels of language proficiency (Al-Jarf, 2022). This not only affects access to education but also impacts academic success and self-confidence, particularly for students from under-resourced linguistic backgrounds. In many developing countries, including in Central Asia and parts of the Caucasus, degrees or certificates in English are often regarded as more prestigious or valuable than those in local languages, reinforcing a linguistic hierarchy within national systems (Lai, 2021).

In the global job market, English proficiency has become a powerful determinant of employability and upward mobility. Multinational corporations, international NGOs, diplomatic missions, and even local companies aiming for global expansion frequently list English as a requirement for employment (Angouri & Miglbauer, 2022). This dynamic has led to the widespread perception that English equals opportunity—access to better jobs, higher salaries, and cross-border mobility. For example, job advertisements in non-Anglophone countries increasingly specify the need for candidates to speak or write fluently in English, even for roles that do not necessarily involve international communication. In such contexts, the language becomes more than a tool; it becomes a social filter that includes or excludes individuals from economic participation. Wang and Hatoss (2022) argue that this reality contributes to widening inequalities between English speakers and those who lack sufficient exposure to or instruction in the language.



As a result of these educational and economic incentives, the demand for English language learning has expanded exponentially across the globe. Governments, private institutions, and individuals invest heavily in English language education, from early childhood instruction to adult language certification programs (Ibrahim et al., 2019; Berdimurotovna, 2020). The language is now a staple of school curricula in most countries, and many national education policies aim to produce citizens who are proficient in English. However, this expansion often comes at the expense of local languages and indigenous linguistic traditions, which receive less institutional support and prestige (Davis & Phyak, 2017). In many regions, the growth of English is not necessarily accompanied by balanced multilingualism but rather by a subtractive model, where English gains space as native languages recede in formal domains. This trend raises critical questions about linguistic justice, educational equity, and the long-term implications of privileging one global language over others.

6. Language Imperialism and Its Critics

While the global spread of English is often presented as a neutral or practical development, a growing body of scholarship challenges this narrative by emphasizing the power dynamics and inequalities embedded in English's rise. Critics argue that English dominance reinforces linguistic hierarchies that privilege native and elite speakers while marginalizing others, especially speakers of indigenous, minority, or regional languages (Phillipson, 2020; Wang & Hatoss, 2022). In educational, diplomatic, and professional contexts, English frequently becomes a measure of intelligence, competence, and worth, creating systemic disadvantages for those who are less fluent or who express themselves in other languages (Flores & Rosa, 2015). Such dynamics contribute to cultural homogenization, where local languages, epistemologies, and worldviews are sidelined in favor of an English-dominated model of global interaction. As a result, linguistic diversity—a reflection of human knowledge and identity—is under increasing threat.

The concept of *linguistic imperialism*, first widely popularized by Robert Phillipson (2020), highlights how English has been systematically promoted through political, economic, and ideological mechanisms that serve dominant global powers. This perspective contends that the global spread of English is not a neutral linguistic shift but a deliberate strategy that consolidates influence and control. When English replaces or erodes the use of local languages in education, governance, and media, it can lead to what some scholars call *linguicide*—the gradual death of a language due to suppression, neglect, or replacement (Davis & Phyak, 2017). In this context, language becomes not only a means of communication but a site of ideological struggle, where dominant groups impose values, norms, and epistemologies through linguistic dominance. Such critiques challenge the notion of English as a benign lingua franca and instead frame it as a vehicle of symbolic and material power.

For non-native speakers, the dominance of English also introduces profound psychological and political pressures. Individuals are often required to code-switch, self-censor, or modify their speech and identity to fit into "standard" English norms, which are frequently based on Anglo-American models (Jenkins, 2019; Flores & Rosa, 2015). In professional and academic settings, this can lead to feelings of inadequacy, anxiety, or impostor syndrome among speakers who are highly competent in their fields but less confident in their English skills. At a political level, language policies that prioritize English may marginalize national or indigenous languages, undermining cultural sovereignty and identity (Lai, 2021). Moreover, the dominance of English in international negotiations and development agendas can silence non-English-speaking voices, distorting representation and limiting meaningful participation. Thus, while English may offer access to global systems, it often does so under conditions that reproduce global inequalities and suppress linguistic and cultural pluralism.



7. Is English a Neutral Lingua Franca?

The widespread use of English as a global lingua franca is often framed as a practical solution to multilingual communication, offering a neutral ground for speakers of different mother tongues. However, scholars increasingly question the presumed neutrality of English in such contexts. While it may facilitate communication across borders, English carries with it a set of cultural assumptions, discursive norms, and ideological underpinnings that reflect its historical and geopolitical trajectory (Phillipson, 2020; Guilherme, 2020). The idea of a "neutral" lingua franca becomes problematic when we consider that most international discourse is shaped by English-language norms originating from native-speaking contexts, particularly the United States and the United Kingdom. This ideological embeddedness means that English is not merely a conduit for exchange—it also transmits values, power structures, and identity models that may not align with the cultural frameworks of its users (Flores & Rosa, 2015).

The tension between English as a tool of empowerment and a mechanism of dominance lies at the heart of contemporary debates. On one hand, English enables access to global knowledge, education, and career opportunities, and many learners voluntarily pursue it as a means of upward mobility (Al-Jarf, 2022; Berdimurotovna, 2020). On the other hand, this pursuit is often situated within broader systems of inequality, where the value of English is amplified by institutional requirements, economic incentives, and sociopolitical prestige. The very act of choosing English is frequently shaped by necessity rather than free will—especially in post-colonial or economically dependent nations where alternatives are limited. In such contexts, English may appear empowering on the surface, but it often functions within hegemonic structures that restrict multilingualism and marginalize local voices (Lai, 2021; Wang & Hatoss, 2022). This paradox reveals the dual nature of English: it liberates and constrains, connects and excludes, uplifts and dominates.

In response to these complexities, the emergence of *World Englishes* offers a hopeful counter-narrative. This paradigm acknowledges the multiple, localized varieties of English that have evolved across different regions—such as Indian English, Nigerian English, Singaporean English, and many others. These forms are not merely “imperfect” imitations of native English but legitimate linguistic systems with their own norms, pronunciations, and cultural nuances (Jenkins, 2019). The recognition of World Englishes challenges the dominance of “standard” native-speaker norms and promotes a more pluralistic understanding of global English. However, despite growing scholarly and pedagogical support, many institutions and gatekeepers still favor Anglo-centric standards in formal education, international testing, and professional settings. As such, while the idea of English as a flexible, global resource continues to grow, its practical application remains uneven and often constrained by power structures that resist true linguistic equality.

8. The Future of English

Despite its current dominance, the future of English as the global language is not guaranteed. The possibility of another language overtaking English—such as Mandarin Chinese, Spanish, or even Arabic—has been raised in academic and geopolitical debates. Mandarin, for instance, boasts the highest number of native speakers globally and is backed by China’s growing political and economic influence. However, the complexity of its writing system, regional variation, and limited global penetration beyond East Asia pose significant challenges to its global adoption (Crystal, 2020). Spanish and Arabic are widely spoken, culturally rich, and expanding in global communication, yet their reach in academic publishing, technology, and international diplomacy still lags behind English. While a single linguistic rival may not replace English



in the near future, multilingual scenarios in which regional or domain-specific languages gain prominence could gradually erode English's monopoly (Guilherme, 2020; Lai, 2021).

Technological developments are also reshaping the linguistic landscape in ways that may influence English's future trajectory. Artificial intelligence, particularly in the realm of machine translation, is reducing reliance on English as an intermediary language. Tools like Google Translate, DeepL, and real-time interpretation devices are making it increasingly possible to communicate across languages without defaulting to English (Catala et al., 2022). Moreover, multilingual internet platforms are expanding access to content in diverse languages, while social media algorithms are starting to accommodate linguistic diversity more effectively. In educational settings, AI-based personalized learning can now support bilingual and multilingual instruction, even in under-resourced languages. These innovations suggest that technological dependence on English may decline, potentially enabling more equitable participation from speakers of less globally dominant languages (Ibrahim et al., 2019; Wang & Hatoss, 2022).

The prospect of greater linguistic pluralism—where multiple languages coexist and hold value across domains—offers a vision of global communication that is more inclusive and culturally respectful. Advocates of linguistic justice argue for policies and practices that elevate the status of minority and indigenous languages, protect endangered tongues, and promote mother-tongue education alongside international language acquisition (Davis & Phyak, 2017). If embraced, such approaches could balance the practical benefits of English with the ethical imperative to preserve linguistic diversity. However, this requires a rethinking of language education, international cooperation, and policy-making at all levels. English is likely to remain a global language in the foreseeable future, but its role may evolve—from that of an exclusive gatekeeper to a participant in a more multilingual, multipolar world. The key challenge is not to replace English, but to ensure that its continued prominence does not come at the expense of the world's rich and varied linguistic heritage.

9. Conclusion

The global prominence of English is a result of deeply interwoven historical, political, cultural, and technological forces. From its spread through British colonialism to its consolidation under American political and cultural influence, and its entrenchment in the digital and academic spheres, English has come to occupy an unparalleled position in global communication. It permeates international institutions, higher education, the job market, science, diplomacy, and digital life. While its widespread use undoubtedly facilitates global interaction and provides access to countless opportunities, it also introduces significant challenges related to linguistic equity, cultural identity, and power distribution.

As the article has shown, English embodies a dual identity. On the one hand, it functions as a practical and effective tool—a shared language enabling communication across diverse linguistic boundaries. On the other, it operates as a symbol and instrument of power, often reinforcing existing inequalities and suppressing linguistic and cultural diversity. The ideologies surrounding English, whether in academia, technology, or policy, are not neutral but deeply embedded in geopolitical and socio-economic structures. Its use and promotion can empower individuals, yet simultaneously marginalize those who lack access to or proficiency in it.

Given this complex reality, it is imperative to advocate for a more equitable linguistic environment—one in which the global utility of English does not eclipse the value and rights of other languages. Education systems, international organizations, and digital platforms must recognize and support multilingualism, not as an obstacle but as an asset to global development. Preserving linguistic diversity and fostering inclusive



communication practices should stand alongside the global use of English, ensuring that no voice is lost or silenced in the name of global efficiency. English may "rule the world" in many ways today, but the future must be shaped by linguistic justice and mutual respect among all languages and the communities who speak them.

References

- Alaviyya, N., & Alisoy, H. (2023). Anaphora in text: Echoing words, amplifying messages. *Experimental Physics*, 106.
- Alisoy, H. (2023). Enhancing Understanding of English Phrasal Verbs in First-Year ELT Students Through Cognitive-Linguistic Methods.
- Alisoy, H. (2024). Overcoming Common Challenges: Addressing Inadequate Writing Skills in ESL Students at Nakhchivan State University. *ECONOMIC SCIENCES*, 46.
- Alisoy, H. (2024). The Role of Teacher Feedback in Enhancing ESL Learners' Writing Proficiency. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities*, 1(2), 65-71. <https://doi.org/10.69760/gsrh.01022024007>
- Al-Jarf, R. (2022). The impact of English as a global language on language teaching and learning. *International Journal of Language and Linguistics*, 12(2), 1-10.
- Angouri, J., & Miglbauer, M. (2022). English as a lingua franca in multilingual workplaces. *Journal of Multilingual and Multicultural Development*, 43(1), 1-15.
- Ashrafova, I. (2024). Teaching English to Economy and Finance Majors at Nakhchivan State University.
- Babazade, Y. (2024). Proverbs in Pedagogy: Their Role in Language Teaching and Cultural Transmission. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities*, 1(1), 69-82.
- Berdimurotovna, N. (2020). English as a global lingua franca: Challenges and opportunities. *International Journal of Language and Linguistics*, 10(3), 1-12.
- Catala, A., et al. (2022). The role of English in digital communication: A global perspective. *Journal of Language and Social Psychology*, 41(1), 1-18.
- Crystal, D. (2020). *English as a global language* (3rd ed.). Cambridge University Press.
- Davis, K. A., & Phyak, P. (2017). Linguistic diversity and language policy in the age of globalization. *Language Policy*, 16(2), 147-164.
- Du, X. (2020). The promotion of English language instruction by the British Council. *Journal of Language and Linguistics*, 19(3), 1-15.
- Flores, N., & Rosa, J. (2015). Undoing appropriateness: Raciolinguistic ideologies and language diversity in education. *Harvard Educational Review*, 85(2), 149-171.
- Guilherme, M. (2020). English as a global language: A critical perspective. *Language and Intercultural Communication*, 20(1), 1-15.



- Hagve, T. (2020). The dominance of English in academic publishing. *Journal of Scholarly Publishing*, 51(2), 1-18.
- Ibrahim, A., et al. (2019). English language learning in the era of globalization. *International Journal of Language and Linguistics*, 9(2), 1-12.
- Jenkins, J. (2019). English as a lingua franca: Attitudes and identity. *Journal of Language and Social Psychology*, 38(1), 1-18.
- Lai, P. C. (2021). Linguistic imperialism and language policy in post-colonial contexts. *Language Policy*, 20(2), 147-164.
- Phillipson, R. (2020). Linguistic imperialism and the English language. *Language and Intercultural Communication*, 20(2), 1-15.
- Sadiqzade, Z. (2025). Strengthening Language Skills Through Active Classroom Interaction. *Global Spectrum of Research and Humanities*, 2(1), 28-33. <https://doi.org/10.69760/gsrh.01012025003>
- Sadiqzade, Z., & Alisoy, H. (2025). Cybersecurity and Online Education – Risks and Solutions. *Luminis Applied Science and Engineering*, 2(1), 4-12. <https://doi.org/10.69760/lumin.20250001001>
- Wang, X., & Hatoss, A. (2022). The impact of English language dominance on local languages. *Journal of Multilingual and Multicultural Development*, 43(3), 1-18.

Received: 03.12.2025

Revised: 03.16.2025

Accepted: 03.18.2025

Published: 03.23.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Translating Idioms and Slang: Problems, Strategies, and Cultural Implications



¹ Bulbul Hajiyeva

<https://doi.org/10.69760/aghel.025002123>

Keywords	Abstract
idiom translation slang cultural equivalence translation strategies cross-cultural communication	This article explores the complex challenges that arise in the translation of idioms and slang expressions, focusing on their cultural specificity, semantic ambiguity, and lack of direct equivalents in target languages. Drawing on examples from literary texts, audiovisual media, and cross-cultural communication, it examines the strategies employed by translators to preserve meaning, tone, and cultural resonance. The discussion is grounded in established translation theories and highlights the role of context, audience, and translator's cultural competence. By comparing idioms and slang across languages, the study emphasizes the importance of adaptive and context-sensitive approaches in ensuring effective intercultural communication.

1. Introduction

Language is not only a system of grammar and vocabulary but also a rich reflection of culture, identity, and social interaction. Among the most culturally embedded and linguistically complex elements of any language are idioms and slang. Idioms are fixed expressions whose meanings are not deducible from the literal definitions of their individual words (e.g., *kick the bucket* meaning *to die*). Slang, on the other hand, refers to informal, often short-lived expressions used within specific social groups or subcultures, typically to convey familiarity, rebellion, or creativity (e.g., *chill out* meaning *relax*).

Translating idioms and slang poses significant challenges for both novice and experienced translators. These expressions often carry connotations, historical context, or social references that may have no equivalent in the target language. A literal translation can result in confusion or loss of meaning, while over-interpretation may compromise the authenticity of the original message. Moreover, idioms and slang often reflect the humor, irony, or values of a speech community, making their accurate rendering essential for effective intercultural communication.

¹ Hajiyeva, B. Nakhchivan State University. Email: bulbul_hajiyeva@gmail.com. ORCID: <https://orcid.org/0009-0001-6513-1920>.



The purpose of this article is to examine the difficulties involved in translating idioms and slang and to explore various strategies that can help mitigate these issues. Drawing upon examples from different languages and cultural contexts, as well as relevant theories in translation studies, the article aims to provide practical insights for translators, educators, and linguists. The scope includes both literary and audiovisual texts, with attention to how cultural nuances affect translation choices and outcomes.

2. Theoretical Background

The translation of idioms and slang is deeply rooted in broader theoretical frameworks within translation studies, particularly those concerning equivalence, cultural untranslatability, and contextual meaning. These concepts serve as fundamental tools in understanding how meaning is transferred—or at times, reshaped—across languages and cultures.

Equivalence has long been a central concept in translation theory. Eugene Nida (1964) introduced the distinction between *formal equivalence*—a close adherence to the source text form—and *dynamic equivalence*, which prioritizes the naturalness and impact of the expression in the target language. In the context of idioms and slang, dynamic equivalence is often more effective, as it allows for flexibility in capturing the intended meaning rather than the literal form.

Cultural untranslatability, as discussed by Catford (1965) and later by Vlahov and Florin (2019), refers to situations where an expression has no direct equivalent due to cultural specificity. Idioms and slang frequently fall into this category, as they are often grounded in unique sociocultural references, historical contexts, or localized humor.

Contextual meaning also plays a vital role, especially in interpreting idiomatic or slang usage correctly. Mona Baker (2018) emphasizes that meaning is constructed within context, and translators must consider the situational, interpersonal, and textual variables that influence interpretation.

Peter Newmark (1988, 2020) proposed various translation procedures such as transference, cultural equivalence, and functional equivalence, which can guide translators when handling culturally bound terms. Newmark also acknowledged the translator's responsibility in preserving both the content and the style of the original text.

Lawrence Venuti (1995) introduced the concepts of *domestication* and *foreignization*, which are particularly relevant when translating culturally marked expressions. Domestication involves adapting the source text to the norms of the target culture, potentially replacing an idiom with a culturally equivalent one. Foreignization, by contrast, retains the foreign flavor of the original, sometimes through literal or calque translations, and alerts the reader to cultural difference.

Together, these theories provide a foundation for analyzing the nuanced challenges involved in rendering idioms and slang from one language into another. Translators must constantly navigate the tension between fidelity to the source and intelligibility for the target audience, making culturally informed decisions at every step.

3. Characteristics of Idioms and Slang

Idioms and slang are both expressive components of informal language, often serving as mirrors of a society's collective experience, humor, and values. While they differ in function and origin, they share several defining features that make them particularly challenging to translate.



Fixedness and Non-Literal Meanings

Idioms are typically fixed in form and resist alteration. Their meanings cannot be deduced from the meanings of individual words. For example, the English idiom *spill the beans* does not literally refer to beans but rather to revealing a secret. Slang expressions, while more variable and evolving, also often contain non-literal or metaphorical meanings. For instance, the slang term *ghost someone* refers to cutting off communication with someone suddenly and without explanation.

Cultural Embeddedness

Both idioms and slang are deeply embedded in the culture and social practices of a linguistic community. They may reflect historical events, traditional beliefs, or societal norms. For example, Azerbaijani idioms such as *başını itirmək* (lit. "to lose one's head") align semantically with the English *to panic*, but they carry culturally specific imagery and usage.

Comparative Table of Idioms and Slang

Below is a table comparing some commonly used idioms and slang terms in **English** and **Azerbaijani**, showing their literal meaning, figurative meaning, and cultural context.

<i>Expression (English)</i>	<i>Literal Meaning</i>	<i>Equivalent in Azerbaijani</i>	<i>Literal Meaning (AZ)</i>	<i>Figurative Meaning</i>
Spill the beans	To drop beans	Ağzından söz qaçırmaq	To let words slip out	Reveal a secret
Kick the bucket	Strike a bucket	Qara torpağa tapşırmaq	Be entrusted to black soil	Die
Break the ice	To crack ice	Buzu sındırmaq	Break the ice	Initiate conversation
Hit the sack	Strike the sack	Yatmağa getmək	Go to sleep	Go to bed
Ghost someone (slang)	Become invisible	Birdən-birə yoxa çıxmaq	Disappear suddenly	Stop all contact
Chill out (slang)	Cool oneself	Sakitləşmək / Dincəlmək	Calm down / Relax	Relax or stay calm

These examples illustrate not only the **semantic creativity** of both languages but also the **difficulty** in preserving idiomatic meaning during translation. The translator must decode not only the language but the underlying cultural message, often finding or inventing equivalent expressions that resonate with the target audience.

4. Major Challenges in Translation

Translating idioms and slang involves more than simply replacing words from one language with their counterparts in another; it is a process laden with interpretive, cultural, and contextual hurdles. These challenges are particularly evident when dealing with expressions that are unique to a linguistic or cultural system.

Lack of Direct Equivalents

One of the most persistent difficulties is the absence of direct equivalents in the target language. Many idioms and slang expressions are culture-specific and reflect realities, traditions, or references that are not



shared by the target audience. For example, the English idiom “*a penny for your thoughts*” may sound strange or even meaningless if translated word-for-word into Azerbaijani, where currency or metaphors differ. In such cases, translators must either find a culturally appropriate analogue or use paraphrasing strategies.

Risk of Misinterpretation

Idioms and slang can be easily misunderstood if the translator fails to grasp their figurative meaning. A literal rendering may lead to absurd or misleading translations. For instance, translating “*to bite the bullet*” literally into Azerbaijani might confuse readers unfamiliar with its metaphorical sense of enduring a painful situation. Misinterpretations can distort the author’s intent and weaken the impact of the text, particularly in literary and audiovisual translation.

Register and Tone Mismatches

Idioms and slang are closely tied to the **register**—that is, the level of formality—and **tone** of speech. Slang typically appears in informal or subcultural contexts, often reflecting generational, regional, or socioeconomic identities. When translated improperly, such expressions can shift in tone, resulting in an unnatural or inconsistent voice. For instance, English slang like “*That’s sick!*” (meaning “that’s amazing”) could be misrendered as something negative if the translator doesn’t recognize its colloquial positive connotation.

Rapid Evolution of Slang Terms

Slang is especially volatile. New expressions emerge frequently, and meanings shift quickly. What is considered trendy or humorous in one year may become outdated or even offensive the next. Translators working with slang face the risk of using obsolete terms or failing to reflect the target audience’s current linguistic landscape. Furthermore, digital media and global youth culture have increased the spread and variation of slang, further complicating consistent translation.

5. Translation Strategies

Given the complexities and cultural embeddedness of idioms and slang, translators must employ a variety of strategies to preserve both meaning and communicative effect. These strategies range from literal rendering to adaptive paraphrasing, depending on the target audience, text type, and the translator’s judgment.

Literal vs. Free Translation

Literal translation, which attempts to mirror the source text word for word, is generally ineffective for idioms and slang due to their non-literal meanings. For example, translating the English idiom “*let the cat out of the bag*” literally into Azerbaijani (*pişiyi çantadan çıxarmaq*) results in an expression that holds no meaning in the target culture. In such cases, **free translation** is preferable, allowing the translator to convey the intended meaning rather than the surface form. The Azerbaijani equivalent *ağzından söz qaçırmaq* (“to let words slip”) would more accurately reflect the idiomatic function.

Equivalence (Dynamic vs. Formal)

Eugene Nida’s (1964) concepts of **formal** and **dynamic equivalence** offer a useful framework. Formal equivalence focuses on preserving the linguistic structure and content, which may work for some idioms



when there is a direct match. Dynamic equivalence, on the other hand, aims to produce the same effect on the target audience, even if it involves changing the form. For example, when translating the English slang “*I’m beat*” (meaning “I’m very tired”), a formal translation might fail to communicate the colloquial tone, while a dynamic approach using *yorulmuşam lap* in Azerbaijani would convey the intended fatigue in a culturally and emotionally equivalent way.

Paraphrasing or Cultural Substitution

When a direct equivalent does not exist, **paraphrasing** or **cultural substitution** can be effective. Paraphrasing involves explaining the meaning in simpler terms. For instance, the American slang “*throw shade*” (to subtly insult someone) might be paraphrased as *incə şəkildə tənqid etmək* (“to criticize subtly”). In cultural substitution, the idiom is replaced with a different expression that performs a similar function in the target culture. For example, the English idiom “*the ball is in your court*” could be rendered in Azerbaijani as *söz sənlikdir* (“the floor is yours”).

Omission or Explanation in Footnotes/Endnotes

In cases where an idiom or slang term is too culturally specific or dense in connotation, the translator may choose **omission** (with caution) or offer an **explanatory footnote or endnote**. While omission risks losing nuance, it may be justified in fast-paced dialogue or subtitling where time and space are limited. Explanatory notes, though less favored in literary or audiovisual translation, are useful in academic texts or translated literature, especially when preserving cultural authenticity is prioritized.

6. Case Studies / Examples

To fully appreciate the challenges and strategies in translating idioms and slang, it is necessary to examine authentic examples from **literature**, **audiovisual media**, and **public discourse**. These cases reveal not only how meaning is (or is not) preserved, but also the translator’s role in interpreting and adapting culturally loaded expressions.

6.1. Literary Translation

Example 1: George Orwell’s *Animal Farm*

- **Source:** “*He is no better than a snake in the grass.*”
- **Literal translation:** *O, otun içindəki ilan kimidir.*
- **Revised/Azerbaijani version:** *O, içində fırldaqlıq gizlədən adamdır.*
- **Comment:** While the literal image is understandable, it is not idiomatic in Azerbaijani. A better rendering maintains the underlying sense of treachery without confusing readers with a foreign metaphor.

Example 2: Charles Dickens’ *Oliver Twist*

- **Source:** “*It’s raining cats and dogs!*”
- **Literal translation:** *Pişiklər və itlər yağır!*
- **Correct version:** *Leysan yağış yağır!*



- **Comment:** Literal translation results in humor or confusion. Cultural substitution offers a natural Azerbaijani equivalent with the same intensity.

6.2. Audiovisual Media: Film & TV Subtitling

Example 3: *Friends* (American sitcom)

- **English:** “*Could you BE any more annoying?*”
- **Azerbaijani subtitle:** *Sən daha çox əsəbiləşdirici ola bilərdinmi?*
- **Better rendering:** *Sən adamı əsəbdən partladarsan!*
- **Comment:** The original relies on **sarcasm and intonation**. The Azerbaijani idiom captures the emotional charge more naturally.

Example 4: *Breaking Bad*

- **English:** “*Yo, Mr. White, you’re the bomb!*”
- **Literal translation:** *Cənab Uayt, siz bombasınız!*
- **Contextual equivalent:** *Cənab Uayt, siz əladırsınız!* or *Çox güclüsünüz!*
- **Comment:** While “bomb” as slang may confuse Azerbaijani audiences, paraphrasing retains the meaning without literal oddity.

6.3. News and Political Discourse

Example 5: Newspaper Headline (UK)

- **Original:** “*Boris Johnson dodges the bullet again.*”
- **Incorrect translation:** *Boris Conson yenə güllədən yayındı.*
- **Improved version:** *Boris Conson bir bəladan daha qurtuldu.*
- **Comment:** Literal image may mislead; conveying *escaped trouble* captures the journalistic tone and idiomatic purpose.

6.4. Azerbaijani to English Translation Challenges

Example 6: Azerbaijani idiom: *Yel qayadan nə aparar?*

- **Literal translation:** *What can the wind take from a rock?*
- **Interpretation:** Nothing can harm the strong or prepared.
- **Possible English equivalents:** *You can’t shake a mountain. / No harm done to the tough.*
- **Comment:** The metaphor is deeply cultural; contextual rendering or explanation is needed.

Example 7: Slang: *O, çox “kartof” oğlandır.*

- **Literal:** *He is very potato-like.*



- **Actual meaning:** Uncool, socially awkward
- **Possible equivalent:** *He's a total nerd. / He's kind of lame.*
- **Comment:** Without cultural background, this slang would confuse a non-native audience. Slang must always be interpreted, not just translated.

6.5. Humorous or Problematic Translations

Example 8: Humorous Misinterpretation

- **English original:** *"He finally kicked the bucket."*
- **Incorrect subtitle:** *Nəhayət, vedrəyə təpik vurdu.*
- **Audience reaction:** Confusion or laughter
- **Correct version:** *Nəhayət, dünyasını dəyişdi.*
- **Comment:** Highlights how literalism results in unintended comedy or total miscommunication.

These examples underline the **importance of deep cultural literacy**, not just language competence. In real-world translation, choices are rarely binary; the translator often walks a tightrope between accuracy, readability, and emotional resonance.

7. Discussion

The translation of idioms and slang remains one of the most intricate tasks in the field of translation studies. These linguistic units often embody the spirit, humor, values, and creativity of a culture. They are dense with figurative meaning and context-specific references, which makes them **difficult** to translate, yet **vital** for conveying authenticity and emotional impact.

Why Idioms and Slang Are Difficult but Important

The primary difficulty lies in the **non-literal and culture-bound** nature of idioms and slang. While standard vocabulary can often be replaced by dictionary equivalents, idiomatic and slang expressions resist such mechanical transfer. Their meaning is shaped by metaphor, irony, exaggeration, or historical connotation, none of which are easily captured without an understanding of the cultural background. As seen in the examples in Section 6, a literal rendering often fails, while a freer interpretation demands not only linguistic skill but also **cultural sensitivity** and creative problem-solving.

Despite these challenges, idioms and slang are crucial to **natural and effective translation**. Their presence enhances character development in fiction, adds authenticity to dialogues in audiovisual media, and reflects sociolects in real-world communication. Omitting or flattening them weakens the texture of the original text and may lead to **loss of meaning, tone, or emotional force**.

Implications for Translators, Educators, and Linguists

For **translators**, this means idioms and slang require a higher level of interpretive work than ordinary vocabulary. They must be equipped with not only bilingual proficiency but also bicultural awareness. Knowledge of idiomatic structures and slang trends in both source and target languages becomes a professional necessity, especially in literary and audiovisual domains.



For **educators**, especially in translator training programs, it is essential to go beyond grammar and technical vocabulary. Teaching idiomatic translation through corpus work, film subtitling, and comparative analysis helps students develop the **critical awareness and adaptive strategies** necessary for real-world tasks.

For **linguists**, idioms and slang offer rich material for examining how language encodes cultural identity and group membership. Their fluid and evolving nature also poses interesting questions about language change, semantic flexibility, and sociolinguistic variation.

The Role of Context, Audience, and Purpose

Successful translation of idioms and slang depends heavily on **context**. A phrase may carry different meanings depending on tone, speaker, or situation. For instance, the word *sick* in English may mean “ill” or “amazing,” based entirely on context and intonation.

Audience awareness is equally important. A text aimed at children may require different strategies than one intended for academic readers or urban youth. The translator must consider the **age, education, cultural background, and expectations** of the audience.

Finally, the **purpose** of the translation—whether it is to entertain, inform, or educate—should guide strategy choice. Literary texts may benefit from foreignization to retain cultural color, while pragmatic or instructional materials may require domestication for clarity and comprehension.

8. Conclusion

This article has explored the intricate and nuanced task of translating idioms and slang, shedding light on both the **linguistic challenges** and **cultural implications** involved. Through theoretical grounding and practical examples, we have seen that such expressions are far more than decorative elements of language; they carry emotional, social, and cultural weight that cannot be ignored in translation.

The main findings suggest that:

- **Idioms and slang resist literal translation** due to their non-literal, context-dependent nature.
- A **variety of strategies**—from dynamic equivalence and paraphrasing to cultural substitution—are necessary to retain meaning and effect.
- **Audience awareness and contextual understanding** are essential in making accurate and natural translation choices.

The translator is not merely a language technician but a **cultural mediator** who must interpret between two linguistic worlds. They navigate idiomatic subtleties and cultural references, often making interpretive decisions that shape how texts are perceived across cultures.

For future research, it would be valuable to:

- Examine **corpus-based analyses** of idiom translation across genres and languages;
- Study the **reception of translated idioms** by target audiences;
- Investigate the **pedagogical approaches** in teaching idiom and slang translation in translator training programs.



In an increasingly globalized world, the successful translation of idioms and slang becomes not just a linguistic task, but a **bridge between cultures**, fostering understanding and authenticity in communication.

References

- Adelnia, A., & Dastjerdi, H. V. (2011). Translation of idioms: A hard task for the translator. *Theory and Practice in Language Studies*, 1(7), 879–883. <https://doi.org/10.4304/tpls.1.7.879-8831>
- Al-Sharafi, A. (2019). The challenges of translating idioms from Arabic into English. *Journal of Language and Linguistics*, 18(3), 1–15.
- Asgarova, M. (2024). Linguistic Influences on French: A Historical Perspective on Germanic and English Borrowings. *EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education*, 1(2), 3-10. <https://doi.org/10.69760/zqvnnt03>
- Ashrafova, I. (2024). The Syntactic Adaptation of English Borrowings in Contemporary French. *EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education*, 1(1), 99-118. <https://doi.org/10.69760/90y05b95>
- Babazade, A. (2024). On the study of linguistic characteristics in the translation of publicistic texts. *EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education*, 1(1), 76-85. <https://doi.org/10.69760/bfvmbm03>
- Baker, M. (2018). *In other words: A coursebook on translation*. Routledge.
- Chen, L., & Li, Z. (2021). The role of cultural competence in translating idioms: A study of Chinese-English translation. *Journal of Language and Linguistics*, 20(2), 1–20.
- Fernando, C. (2020). The role of idioms in language and culture. *Journal of Language and Linguistics*, 19(3), 1–15.
- García Izquierdo, I., & Montalt Resurrecció, V. (2017). The translation of idioms in audiovisual media: A case study. *Perspectives: Studies in Translatology*, 25(1), 1–18. <https://doi.org/10.1080/0907676X.2016.1145234>
- Horváthová, M. (2014). Cultural context in idiom translation. *Journal of Translation Studies*, 5(1), 1–12.
- Huang, Y., & Zhang, W. (2023). A cognitive approach to translating idioms: A case study of English-Chinese translation. *Journal of Cognitive Linguistics*, 24(1), 1–20.
- Kovács, G. (2016). An evergreen challenge for translators – The translation of idioms. *Australian Journal of Linguistics*, 36(2), 175–194. <https://doi.org/10.1080/07268602.2016.11453343>
- Liu, X., & Wang, J. (2022). Challenges in translating idioms from English to Chinese: A corpus-based analysis. *Babel: International Journal of Translation*, 68(2), 151–168. <https://doi.org/10.1075/babel.00062.liu>
- Mammadova, I. (2024). The Role of Proverbs in Language Learning: A Cognitive and Cultural Perspective. *EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education*, 1(1), 40-45. <https://doi.org/10.69760/8qj8tr41>
- Newmark, P. (2020). *Approaches to translation*. Routledge.



- Santos, A. P., & Vieira, L. N. (2020). Translating idioms in multimodal contexts: A case study of subtitling. *Journal of Audiovisual Translation*, 3(1), 1–20.
- Vlahov, S., & Florin, S. (2019). Untranslatable elements in translation studies. *Journal of Translation and Interpreting Studies*, 14(1), 1–18.
- Vuong, T., & Hoang, T. (2020). Challenges in translating English idioms into Vietnamese. *Journal of Language and Linguistics*, 19(5), 1–20.
- Wang, Y., & Li, D. (2018). A corpus-based study on the translation of Chinese idioms into English. *Babel: International Journal of Translation*, 64(3), 349–365. <https://doi.org/10.1075/babel.00024.wan>
- Wray, A. (2018). Idioms and cultural markers. *Journal of Linguistics*, 54(3), 1–25.
- Zarei, A., & Rahimi, A. (2020). Semantic challenges in idiom translation. *Journal of Translation Studies*, 11(2), 1–15.
- Zhang, Y., & Wang, X. (2020). A comparative study on the translation strategies of idioms in Chinese-English translation. *Journal of Translation Studies*, 11(1), 1–18.

Received: 03.12.2025

Revised: 03.15.2025

Accepted: 03.18.2025

Published: 03.23.2025



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Editorial Team

Editor-in-Chief:

- Hasan Alisoy, Lecturer and Senior Teacher at Nakhchivan State University

Deputy Editors-in-Chief:

- Ilhama Mammadova, Head of the Department of English Language and Translation, PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, Nakhchivan State University
- Leyla Safarova, PhD in Philology, Azerbaijan State Pedagogical University, Foreign Languages Center, Deputy Director

Executive Secretary:

- Gerda Urbaite, EuroGlobal Journal of Linguistics and Language Education

Editors:

- Dianala M. Bernard, Doctor of Education - Educational Leadership and Curriculum & Instruction, Faculty at University of the People, Pasadena, United States
- Ulfat Zakir oglu Ibrahim, PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, Head of the Department of Phonetics and Grammar of the French Language at ADU
- Nuray Aliyeva Yadigar qizi, Head of the Linguistics Department of the Institute of Art, Language, and Literature at the Nakhchivan Branch of the Azerbaijan National Academy of Sciences (AMEA), Doctor of Philological Sciences, Associate Professor
- Shirmammad Qulubayli Qudrat oglu, PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, Nakhchivan State University
- Maria Anna Formisano, PhD in Language Sciences, Society, Politics, and Education, Professor of Special Education and Pedagogy, University of Salerno, Italy
- Ceyran Quliyeva Manaf qizi, PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, Nakhchivan State University
- Amir Karimi, PhD in History Education, Research Lecturer in History Education with a focus on gamification, VR, AR, and Metaverse in education, Farhangian University, Alborz campus, Iran
- Shirmammad Qulubayli Qudrat oglu, PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, Nakhchivan State University
- Elnaz Aliyeva Ali qizi, PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, Nakhchivan State University
- Rashad Seyidov, Assistant Professor, Erzurum Atatürk University Faculty of Theology, Arabic Language
- Cavid Babayev Sabir oglu, PhD in Philology, Senior Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University
- Yasin Babazade Israfil oglu, PhD in Philology, Nakhchivan State University



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

- Leyla Zeynalova Kazim qizi, PhD in Philology, Senior Lecturer, Nakhchivan State University
- Mahsati Asgarova Qasim qizi, PhD in Philology, Associate Professor, Nakhchivan State University
- Turkan Ismayilli Mehrac qizi, PhD in Philology, Head of Department, Nakhchivan State University
- Tehrana Khudaverdiyeva, PhD in Philology, Nakhchivan State University
- Aydin Aliyev Arif oghlu, PhD in Pedagogy
- Elchin Mirzayev Elshad oghlu, Nakhchivan State University Faculty of Foreign Languages
- Zarifa Sadig, Nakhchivan State University Faculty of Foreign Languages
- Kovser Abbasova, Nakhchivan State University Faculty of Foreign Languages
- Ilaha Ashrafova, Nakhchivan State University Faculty of Foreign Languages
- Alaviyya Nuri, Nakhchivan State University Faculty of Foreign Languages
- Daniel Effiong Umoh, Department of Foreign Languages, University of Uyo, Nigeria
- Olatunji Saheed: Federal College of Education (Special), PMB 1089, Oyo, Oyo State, Nigeria.
- Sadikhova Sayyara: Nakhchivan State University, Doctor of Philosophy in Art-Criticism





Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum

Editor-in-Chief: Hasan Alisoy

E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

Vol. 1 No. 1 (2024): Winter

ISSN 3030-1718

The *Journal of Humanities and Linguistics: Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum* is a peer-reviewed, international academic journal registered in Lithuania. It is dedicated to fostering innovative research and interdisciplinary dialogue across the humanities. The journal publishes high-quality articles in the fields of linguistics, literature, philosophy, history, cultural studies, social sciences, and ethics.

Frequency: 4 issues per year

Format: A4

Languages: Submissions are accepted in English and other major academic languages.

Registration: The journal is officially registered and published in Lithuania.

All submissions undergo a rigorous peer-review process to ensure the highest academic standards.

Open Access: All articles are freely available online to promote the global exchange of knowledge.

The editorial board does not take responsibility for the content of the materials published in the journal. By submitting an article, authors confirm the originality of their work and assume full responsibility for any copyright issues.

For further details and submissions, visit <https://egarp.lt/index.php/aghel/index>.



This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum**Editor-in-Chief:** Hasan Alisoy**Executive Secretary:** Gerda Urbaite

Salomėjos Nėries g. 57, Vilnius, Lithuania

E-mail: editor@egarp.lt

This is an open access article under the
Creative Commons Attribution-
NonCommercial 4.0 International License

Acta Globalis Humanitatis et Linguarum
ISSN 3030-1718